# Table of Contents

- **What Is AWS Storage Gateway?** ................................................................. 1
- **Are You a First-Time AWS Storage Gateway User?** .................................... 2
- **How AWS Storage Gateway Works** .......................................................... 2
  - File Gateways ......................................................................................... 3
  - Volume Gateways .................................................................................. 3
  - Tape Gateways ...................................................................................... 6
- **Pricing** ........................................................................................................ 7
- **Plan Your Gateway Deployment** .............................................................. 8
- **Getting Started** ......................................................................................... 9
  - Sign Up for AWS Storage Gateway .......................................................... 9
  - Regions .................................................................................................... 9
  - Requirements .......................................................................................... 10
    - Hardware and Storage Requirements ..................................................... 10
    - Network and Firewall Requirements ...................................................... 12
    - Supported Hypervisors and Host Requirements ...................................... 16
    - Supported NFS Clients for a File Gateway ............................................ 16
    - Supported File System Operations for a File Gateway ....................... 16
    - Supported iSCSI Initiators .................................................................. 16
    - Supported Third-Party Backup Applications for a Tape Gateway ........... 17
- **Accessing AWS Storage Gateway** ............................................................ 18
  - Creating Your Gateway ......................................................................... 19
    - Creating a File Gateway .................................................................... 19
    - Creating a Gateway ........................................................................... 24
    - Using Your File Share ...................................................................... 26
    - Creating a Volume Gateway ............................................................... 28
    - Creating a Gateway ........................................................................... 29
    - Creating a Volume ........................................................................... 34
    - Using Your Volume ........................................................................... 36
    - Creating a Tape Gateway ................................................................... 42
    - Creating a Gateway ........................................................................... 42
    - Creating Tapes .................................................................................. 48
    - Using Your Tape Gateway ................................................................. 49
  - Managing Your Gateway ......................................................................... 91
    - Managing Your File Gateway ............................................................. 91
      - Adding a File Share ....................................................................... 91
      - Deleting a File Share .................................................................... 93
      - Updating a File Share ................................................................... 95
      - Refreshing Objects in Your Amazon S3 Bucket ............................. 97
      - Understanding File Share Status ................................................... 97
      - File Share Best Practices ............................................................... 98
    - Managing Your Volume Gateway ......................................................... 99
      - Adding a Volume .......................................................................... 100
      - Expanding the Size of a Volume ..................................................... 100
      - Cloning a Volume .......................................................................... 100
      - Viewing Volume Usage ................................................................. 103
      - Deleting a Volume .......................................................................... 103
      - Creating a One-Time Snapshot ...................................................... 104
      - Editing a Snapshot Schedule ......................................................... 104
      - Deleting Snapshots ...................................................................... 105
      - Understanding Volume Status ....................................................... 114
  - Managing Your Tape Gateway ................................................................. 120
    - Adding Tapes ..................................................................................... 120
    - Retrieving Archived Tapes ............................................................... 121
# Troubleshooting Your Gateway

- Additional Resources ....................................................................................................................... 243
- Troubleshooting Your Gateway ........................................................................................................ 220
  - Troubleshooting On-Premises Gateway Issues ............................................................................. 220
  - Enabling AWS Support To Help Troubleshoot Your Gateway .................................................. 222
  - Troubleshooting Your Microsoft Hyper-V Setup ......................................................................... 224
  - Troubleshooting Amazon EC2 Gateway Issues ........................................................................... 226
    - Your Gateway Activation Hasn't Occurred After a Few Moments ............................................. 227
    - You Can't Find Your EC2 Gateway Instance in the Instance List ........................................... 227
    - You Created an Amazon EBS Volume But Can't Attach it to Your EC2 Gateway Instance ...... 227
    - You Can't Attach an Initiator to a Volume Target of Your EC2 Gateway ............................... 228
    - You Get a Message That You Have No Disks Available When You Try to Add Storage Volumes 228
    - You Want to Remove a Disk Allocated as Upload Buffer Space to Reduce Upload Buffer Space 228
    - Throughput to or from Your EC2 Gateway Drops to Zero ..................................................... 228
    - You Want Your File Gateway to Use a C5 or M5 EC2 Instance Type Instead of C4 or M4 ...... 228
    - Get AWS Support to Help Troubleshoot Your Gateway .......................................................... 229
  - Troubleshooting File Share Issues ............................................................................................... 230
    - Your File Share Is Stuck in CREATING Status ......................................................................... 230
    - You Can't Create a File Share .................................................................................................. 231
    - Multiple File Shares Can't Write to the Mapped Amazon S3 Bucket ...................................... 231
    - You Can't Upload Files into Your S3 Bucket .............................................................................. 231
  - Troubleshooting Volume Issues .................................................................................................. 231
    - The Console Says That Your Volume Is Not Configured ............................................................ 232
    - The Console Says That Your Volume Is Irrecoverable ............................................................... 232
    - Your Cached Gateway is Unreachable And You Want to Recover Your Data ............................ 232
    - The Console Says That Your Volume Has PASS THROUGH Status ........................................... 232
    - You Want to Verify Volume Integrity and Fix Possible Errors .................................................. 233
    - Your Volume's iSCSI Target Doesn't Appear in Windows Disk Management Console .......... 233
    - You Want to Change Your Volume's iSCSI Target Name ........................................................... 233
    - Your Scheduled Volume Snapshot Did Not Occur .................................................................... 233
    - You Need to Remove or Replace a Disk That Has Failed ........................................................... 234
    - Throughput from Your Application to a Volume Has Dropped to Zero ..................................... 234
    - A Cache Disk in Your Gateway Encounters a Failure ............................................................... 234
    - A Volume Snapshot Has PENDING Status Longer Than Expected .......................................... 235
  - Troubleshooting Virtual Tape Issues .......................................................................................... 235
    - Recovering a Virtual Tape From An Unrecoverable Gateway .................................................... 235
    - Troubleshooting Irrecoverable Tapes ....................................................................................... 237
  - Recovering Your Data: Best Practices ......................................................................................... 238
    - Recovering from an Unexpected Virtual Machine Shutdown .................................................... 239
    - Recovering Your Data from a Malfunctioning Gateway or VM ................................................ 239
    - Retrieving Your Data from an Irrecoverable Volume .............................................................. 240
    - Recovering Your Data from an Irrecoverable Tape ................................................................. 240
    - Recovering Your Data from a Malfunctioning Cache Disk ....................................................... 240
    - Recovering Your Data from a Corrupted File System ............................................................... 241
    - Recovering Your Data From An Inaccessible Data Center ....................................................... 241
- Additional Resources ....................................................................................................................... 243
  - Host Setup ............................................................................................................................ 243
    - Configuring VMware for Storage Gateway .............................................................................. 243
    - Volume or Tape Gateway on Amazon EC2 Host ...................................................................... 248
    - File Gateway on EC2 Host ........................................................................................................ 249
  - Volume Gateway ......................................................................................................................... 251
    - Adding and Removing Gateway Disks ....................................................................................... 251
    - EBS Volumes for EC2 Gateways ............................................................................................... 254
  - Tape Gateway ............................................................................................................................. 255
    - Working with VTL Devices ..................................................................................................... 255
    - Working with Tapes ............................................................................................................... 258
  - Getting Activation Key ............................................................................................................... 260
    - AWS CLI ............................................................................................................................. 260
    - Linux (bash/zsh) .................................................................................................................... 261

---

**API Version 2013-06-30**

---

v
What Is AWS Storage Gateway?

AWS Storage Gateway connects an on-premises software appliance with cloud-based storage to provide seamless integration with data security features between your on-premises IT environment and the AWS storage infrastructure. You can use the service to store data in the AWS Cloud for scalable and cost-effective storage that helps maintain data security.

AWS Storage Gateway offers file-based, volume-based, and tape-based storage solutions:

**File Gateway** – A file gateway supports a file interface into Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) and combines a service and a virtual software appliance. By using this combination, you can store and retrieve objects in Amazon S3 using industry-standard file protocols such as Network File System (NFS). The software appliance, or gateway, is deployed into your on-premises environment as a virtual machine (VM) running on VMware ESXi or Microsoft Hyper-V hypervisor. The gateway provides access to objects in S3 as files on an NFS mount point. With a file gateway, you can do the following:

- You can store and retrieve files directly using the NFS version 3 or 4.1 protocol.
- You can access your data directly in Amazon S3 from any AWS Cloud application or service.
- You can manage your Amazon S3 data using lifecycle policies, cross-region replication, and versioning. You can think of a file gateway as an NFS mount on S3.

A file gateway simplifies file storage in Amazon S3, integrates to existing applications through industry-standard file system protocols, and provides a cost-effective alternative to on-premises storage. It also provides low-latency access to data through transparent local caching. A file gateway manages data transfer to and from AWS, buffers applications from network congestion, optimizes and streams data in parallel, and manages bandwidth consumption. File gateways integrate with AWS services, for example with the following:

- Common access management using AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
- Encryption using AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS)
- Monitoring using Amazon CloudWatch (CloudWatch)
- Audit using AWS CloudTrail (CloudTrail)
- Operations using the AWS Management Console and AWS Command Line Interface (AWS CLI)
- Billing and cost management

**Volume Gateway** – A volume gateway provides cloud-backed storage volumes that you can mount as Internet Small Computer System Interface (iSCSI) devices from your on-premises application servers. The gateway supports the following volume configurations:

- **Cached volumes** – You store your data in Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) and retain a copy of frequently accessed data subsets locally. Cached volumes offer a substantial cost savings on primary storage and minimize the need to scale your storage on-premises. You also retain low-latency access to your frequently accessed data.

- **Stored volumes** – If you need low-latency access to your entire dataset, first configure your on-premises gateway to store all your data locally. Then asynchronously back up point-in-time snapshots of this data to Amazon S3. This configuration provides durable and inexpensive offsite backups that you can recover to your local data center or Amazon EC2. For example, if you need replacement capacity for disaster recovery, you can recover the backups to Amazon EC2.

**Tape Gateway** – With a tape gateway, you can cost-effectively and durably archive backup data in Amazon Glacier. A tape gateway provides a virtual tape infrastructure that scales seamlessly with
your business needs and eliminates the operational burden of provisioning, scaling, and maintaining a physical tape infrastructure.

You can run AWS Storage Gateway either on-premises as a VM appliance, or in AWS as an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance. You deploy your gateway on an EC2 instance to provision iSCSI storage volumes in AWS. Gateways hosted on EC2 instances can be used for disaster recovery, data mirroring, and providing storage for applications hosted on Amazon EC2.

For an architectural overview, see How AWS Storage Gateway Works (Architecture) (p. 2). To see the wide range of use cases that AWS Storage Gateway helps make possible, see the AWS Storage Gateway detail page.

To get started with Storage Gateway, see the following.

**Topics**

- Are You a First-Time AWS Storage Gateway User? (p. 2)
- How AWS Storage Gateway Works (Architecture) (p. 2)
- AWS Storage Gateway Pricing (p. 7)
- Plan Your Storage Gateway Deployment (p. 8)

**Are You a First-Time AWS Storage Gateway User?**

In the following documentation, you can find a Getting Started section that covers setup information common to all gateways and also gateway-specific setup sections. The Getting Started section shows you how to deploy, activate, and configure storage for a gateway. The management section shows you how to manage your gateway and resources:

- **Creating a File Gateway** (p. 19) provides instructions on how to create and use a file gateway. It shows you how to create a file share, map your drive to an Amazon S3 bucket, and upload files and folders to Amazon S3.

- **Creating a Volume Gateway** (p. 28) describes how to create and use a volume gateway. It shows you how to create storage volumes and back up data to the volumes.

- **Creating a Tape Gateway** (p. 42) provides instructions on how to create and use a tape gateway. It shows you how to back up data to virtual tapes and archive the tapes.

- **Managing Your Gateway** (p. 91) describes how to perform management tasks for all gateway types and resources.

In this guide, you can primarily find how to work with gateway operations by using the AWS Management Console. If you want to perform these operations programmatically, see the AWS Storage Gateway API Reference.

**How AWS Storage Gateway Works (Architecture)**

Following, you can find an architectural overview of the available AWS Storage Gateway solutions.

**Topics**

- File Gateways (p. 3)
File Gateways

To use file gateway storage, you start by downloading a VM image for the file storage gateway. You then activate it from the AWS Management Console or the Storage Gateway API.

After the VM is activated, you configure the S3 buckets that the gateway later exposes as file systems through NFS v3 or v4.1. Files written to NFS become objects in Amazon S3, with the path as the key. There is a one-to-one mapping between files and objects, and the gateway asynchronously updates the objects in Amazon S3 as you change the files. Existing objects in the bucket appear as files in the file system, and the key becomes the path. Objects are encrypted with server-side encryption with Amazon S3–managed encryption keys (SSE-S3). All data transfer is done through HTTPS.

The service optimizes data transfer between the gateway and AWS using multipart parallel uploads or byte-range downloads, to better use the available bandwidth. As with cached volumes, a local cache is maintained to provide low latency access to the recently accessed data and reduce data egress charges. CloudWatch metrics provide insight into resource use on the VM and data transfer to and from AWS. CloudTrail tracks all API calls.

With file gateway storage, you can do such tasks as ingesting cloud workloads to S3, performing backup and archive, and tiering storage to the AWS Cloud. The following diagram provides an overview of file storage deployment for Storage Gateway.

Volume Gateways

For volume gateways, you can use either cached volumes or stored volumes.

Topics

- Cached Volumes Architecture (p. 3)
- Stored Volumes Architecture (p. 5)

Cached Volumes Architecture

By using cached volumes, you can use Amazon S3 as your primary data storage, while retaining frequently accessed data locally in your storage gateway. Cached volumes minimize the need to scale your on-premises storage infrastructure, while still providing your applications with low-latency access to their frequently accessed data. You can create storage volumes up to 32 TiB in size and attach to them as iSCSI devices from your on-premises application servers. Your gateway stores data that you write to these volumes in Amazon S3 and retains recently read data in your on-premises storage gateway’s cache and upload buffer storage.

Cached volumes can range from 1 GiB to 32 TiB in size and must be rounded to the nearest GiB. Each gateway configured for cached volumes can support up to 32 volumes for a total maximum storage volume of 1,024 TiB (1 PiB).
In the cached volumes solution, AWS Storage Gateway stores all your on-premises application data in a storage volume in Amazon S3. The following diagram provides an overview of the cached volumes deployment.

After you install the Storage Gateway software appliance—the VM—on a host in your data center and activate it, you use the AWS Management Console to provision storage volumes backed by Amazon S3. You can also provision storage volumes programmatically using the AWS Storage Gateway API or the AWS SDK libraries. You then mount these storage volumes to your on-premises application servers as iSCSI devices.

You also allocate disks on-premises for the VM. These on-premises disks serve the following purposes:

- **Disks for use by the gateway as cache storage** – As your applications write data to the storage volumes in AWS, the gateway first stores the data on the on-premises disks used for cache storage. Then the gateway uploads the data to Amazon S3. The cache storage acts as the on-premises durable store for data that is waiting to upload to Amazon S3 from the upload buffer.

  The cache storage also lets the gateway store your application's recently accessed data on-premises for low-latency access. If your application requests data, the gateway first checks the cache storage for the data before checking Amazon S3.

  You can use the following guidelines to determine the amount of disk space to allocate for cache storage. Generally, you should allocate at least 20 percent of your existing file store size as cache storage. Cache storage should also be larger than the upload buffer. This guideline helps make sure that cache storage is large enough to persistently hold all data in the upload buffer that has not yet been uploaded to Amazon S3.

- **Disks for use by the gateway as the upload buffer** – To prepare for upload to Amazon S3, your gateway also stores incoming data in a staging area, referred to as an upload buffer. Your gateway uploads this buffer data over an encrypted Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) connection to AWS, where it is stored encrypted in Amazon S3.

You can take incremental backups, called snapshots, of your storage volumes in Amazon S3. These point-in-time snapshots are also stored in Amazon S3 as Amazon EBS snapshots. When you take a new snapshot, only the data that has changed since your last snapshot is stored. You can initiate snapshots on a scheduled or one-time basis. When you delete a snapshot, only the data not needed for any other snapshots is removed. For information about Amazon EBS snapshots, see Amazon EBS Snapshots.

You can restore an Amazon EBS snapshot to a gateway storage volume if you need to recover a backup of your data. Alternatively, for snapshots up to 16 TiB in size, you can use the snapshot as a starting
point for a new Amazon EBS volume. You can then attach this new Amazon EBS volume to an Amazon EC2 instance.

All gateway data and snapshot data for cached volumes is stored in Amazon S3 and encrypted at rest using server-side encryption (SSE). However, you can’t access this data with the Amazon S3 API or other tools such as the Amazon S3 Management Console.

**Stored Volumes Architecture**

By using stored volumes, you can store your primary data locally, while asynchronously backing up that data to AWS. Stored volumes provide your on-premises applications with low-latency access to their entire datasets. At the same time, they provide durable, offsite backups. You can create storage volumes and mount them as iSCSI devices from your on-premises application servers. Data written to your stored volumes is stored on your on-premises storage hardware. This data is asynchronously backed up to Amazon S3 as Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) snapshots.

Stored volumes can range from 1 GiB to 16 TiB in size and must be rounded to the nearest GiB. Each gateway configured for stored volumes can support up to 32 volumes and a total volume storage of 512 TiB (0.5 PiB).

With stored volumes, you maintain your volume storage on-premises in your data center. That is, you store all your application data on your on-premises storage hardware. Then, using features that help maintain data security, the gateway uploads data to the AWS Cloud for cost-effective backup and rapid disaster recovery. This solution is ideal if you want to keep data locally on-premises, because you need to have low-latency access to all your data, and also to maintain backups in AWS.

The following diagram provides an overview of the stored volumes deployment.

After you install the AWS Storage Gateway software appliance—the VM—on a host in your data center and activated it, you can create gateway storage volumes. You then map them to on-premises direct-attached storage (DAS) or storage area network (SAN) disks. You can start with either new disks or disks already holding data. You can then mount these storage volumes to your on-premises application servers as iSCSI devices. As your on-premises applications write data to and read data from a gateway's storage volume, this data is stored and retrieved from the volume's assigned disk.

To prepare data for upload to Amazon S3, your gateway also stores incoming data in a staging area, referred to as an upload buffer. You can use on-premises DAS or SAN disks for working storage. Your gateway uploads data from the upload buffer over an encrypted Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) connection to the AWS Storage Gateway service running in the AWS Cloud. The service then stores the data encrypted in Amazon S3.
You can take incremental backups, called **snapshots**, of your storage volumes. The gateway stores these snapshots in Amazon S3 as Amazon EBS snapshots. When you take a new snapshot, only the data that has changed since your last snapshot is stored. You can initiate snapshots on a scheduled or one-time basis. When you delete a snapshot, only the data not needed for any other snapshot is removed.

You can restore an Amazon EBS snapshot to an on-premises gateway storage volume if you need to recover a backup of your data. You can also use the snapshot as a starting point for a new Amazon EBS volume, which you can then attach to an Amazon EC2 instance.

## Tape Gateways

Tape Gateway offers a durable, cost-effective solution to archive your data in the AWS Cloud. With its virtual tape library (VTL) interface, you use your existing tape-based backup infrastructure to store data on virtual tape cartridges that you create on your tape gateway. Each tape gateway is preconfigured with a media changer and tape drives. These are available to your existing client backup applications as iSCSI devices. You add tape cartridges as you need to archive your data.

The following diagram provides an overview of tape gateway deployment.

The diagram identifies the following tape gateway components:

- **Virtual tape** – A virtual tape is like a physical tape cartridge. However, virtual tape data is stored in the AWS Cloud. Like physical tapes, virtual tapes can be blank or can have data written on them. You can create virtual tapes either by using the Storage Gateway console or programmatically by using the Storage Gateway API. Each gateway can contain up to 1500 tapes or up to 1 PiB of total tape data at a time. The size of each virtual tape, which you can configure when you create the tape, is between 100 GiB and 2.5 TiB.

- **Virtual tape library (VTL)** – A VTL is like a physical tape library available on-premises with robotic arms and tape drives. Your VTL includes the collection of stored virtual tapes. Each tape gateway comes with one VTL.
The virtual tapes that you create appear in your gateway’s VTL. Tapes in the VTL are backed up by Amazon S3. As your backup software writes data to the gateway, the gateway stores data locally and then asynchronously uploads it to virtual tapes in your VTL—that is, Amazon S3.

- **Tape drive** – A VTL tape drive is analogous to a physical tape drive that can perform I/O and seek operations on a tape. Each VTL comes with a set of 10 tape drives, which are available to your backup application as iSCSI devices.

- **Media changer** – A VTL media changer is analogous to a robot that moves tapes around in a physical tape library's storage slots and tape drives. Each VTL comes with one media changer, which is available to your backup application as an iSCSI device.

- **Archive** – Archive is analogous to an offsite tape holding facility. You can archive tapes from your gateway’s VTL to the archive. If needed, you can retrieve tapes from the archive back to your gateway’s VTL.

- **Archiving tapes** – When your backup software ejects a tape, your gateway moves the tape to the archive for long-term storage. The archive is located in the AWS Region in which you activated the gateway. Tapes in the archive are stored in Amazon Glacier, an extremely low-cost storage service for data archiving and backup. For more information, see Amazon Glacier.

- **Retrieving tapes** – You can’t read archived tapes directly. To read an archived tape, you must first retrieve it to your tape gateway either by using the Storage Gateway console or by using the Storage Gateway API. A retrieved tape is available in your VTL in about three to five hours after you start retrieval.

After you deploy and activate a tape gateway, you mount the virtual tape drives and media changer on your on-premises application servers as iSCSI devices. You create virtual tapes as needed. Then you use your existing backup software application to write data to the virtual tapes. The media changer loads and unloads the virtual tapes into the virtual tape drives for read and write operations.

### Allocating Local Disks for the Gateway VM

Your gateway VM needs local disks, which you allocate for the following purposes:

- **Cache storage** – The cache storage acts as the durable store for data that is waiting to upload to Amazon S3 from the upload buffer.

  If your application reads data from a virtual tape, the gateway saves the data to the cache storage. The gateway stores recently accessed data in the cache storage for low-latency access. If your application requests tape data, the gateway first checks the cache storage for the data before downloading the data from AWS.

- **Upload buffer** – The upload buffer provides a staging area for the gateway before it uploads the data to a virtual tape. The upload buffer is also critical for creating recovery points that you can use to recover tapes from unexpected failures. For more information, see You Need to Recover a Virtual Tape from a Malfunctioning Tape Gateway (p. 235).

As your backup application writes data to your gateway, the gateway copies data to both the cache storage and upload buffer. It then acknowledges completion of the write operation to your backup application.

For guidelines on the amount of disk space to allocate for the cache storage and upload buffer, see Deciding the Amount of Local Disk Storage (p. 151).

### AWS Storage Gateway Pricing

For current information about pricing, see Pricing on the AWS Storage Gateway details page.
Plan Your Storage Gateway Deployment

By using the AWS Storage Gateway software appliance, you can connect your existing on-premises application infrastructure with scalable, cost-effective AWS cloud storage that provides data security features.

To deploy Storage Gateway, you first need to decide on the following two things:

1. **Your storage solution** – Choose from one of the following storage solutions:
   - **File Gateway** – You can use a file gateway to ingest files to Amazon S3 for use by object-based workloads and for cost-effective storage for traditional backup applications. You can also use it to tier on-premises file storage to S3. You can cost-effectively and durably store and retrieve your on-premises objects in Amazon S3 using industry-standard file protocols.
   - **Volume Gateway** – Using volume gateways, you can create storage volumes in the AWS Cloud. Your on-premises applications can access these as Internet Small Computer System Interface (iSCSI) targets. There are two options—cached and stored volumes.

   With cached volumes, you store volume data in AWS, with a small portion of recently accessed data in the cache on-premises. This approach enables low-latency access to your frequently accessed dataset. It also provides seamless access to your entire dataset stored in AWS. By using cached volumes, you can scale your storage resource without having to provision additional hardware.

   With stored volumes, you store the entire set of volume data on-premises and store periodic point-in-time backups (snapshots) in AWS. In this model, your on-premises storage is primary, delivering low-latency access to your entire dataset. AWS storage is the backup that you can restore in the event of a disaster in your data center.

   For an architectural overview of volume gateways, see Cached Volumes Architecture (p. 3) and Stored Volumes Architecture (p. 5).

   - **Tape Gateway** – If you are looking for a cost-effective, durable, long-term, offsite alternative for data archiving, deploy a tape gateway. With its virtual tape library (VTL) interface, you can use your existing tape-based backup software infrastructure to store data on virtual tape cartridges that you create. For more information, see Supported Third-Party Backup Applications for a Tape Gateway (p. 17). When you archive tapes, you don't worry about managing tapes on your premises and arranging shipments of tapes offsite. For an architectural overview, see Tape Gateways (p. 6).

2. **Hosting option** – You can run Storage Gateway either on-premises as a VM appliance, or in AWS as an Amazon EC2 instance. For more information, see Requirements (p. 10). If your data center goes offline and you don't have an available host, you can deploy a gateway on an EC2 instance. Storage Gateway provides an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) that contains the gateway VM image.

   Additionally, as you configure a host to deploy a gateway software appliance, you need to allocate sufficient storage for the gateway VM.

Before you continue to the next step, make sure that you have done the following:

1. For a gateway deployed on-premises, you chose the type of host, VMware ESXi Hypervisor or Microsoft Hyper-V, and set it up. For more information, see Requirements (p. 10). If you deploy the gateway behind a firewall, make sure that ports are accessible to the gateway VM. For more information, see Requirements (p. 10).

2. For a tape gateway, you have installed client backup software. For more information, see Supported Third-Party Backup Applications for a Tape Gateway (p. 17).
Getting Started

In this section, you can find instructions about how to get started with AWS Storage Gateway. To get started, you first sign up for AWS. If you are a first-time user, we recommend that you read the regions and requirements section.

Topics
- Sign Up for AWS Storage Gateway (p. 9)
- Regions (p. 9)
- Requirements (p. 10)
- Accessing AWS Storage Gateway (p. 18)

Sign Up for AWS Storage Gateway

To use AWS Storage Gateway, you need an AWS account that gives you access to all AWS resources, forums, support, and usage reports. You aren't charged for any of the services unless you use them. If you already have an AWS account, you can skip this step.

To sign up for AWS account
1. Open https://aws.amazon.com/, and then choose Create an AWS Account.

   Note
   This might be unavailable in your browser if you previously signed into the AWS Management Console. In that case, choose Sign in to a different account, and then choose Create a new AWS account.

2. Follow the online instructions.

   Part of the sign-up procedure involves receiving a phone call and entering a PIN using the phone keypad.

For information about pricing, see AWS Storage Gateway Pricing on the AWS Storage Gateway detail page.

Regions

AWS Storage Gateway stores volume, snapshot, tape, and file data in the AWS Region in which your gateway is activated. File data is stored in the AWS Region where your Amazon S3 bucket is located. You select an AWS Region at the upper right of the AWS Storage Gateway Management Console before you start deploying your gateway. The following are the available AWS Regions for AWS Storage Gateway.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Region Name</th>
<th>Region String</th>
<th>File Gateway</th>
<th>Volume Gateway</th>
<th>Tape Gateway</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>US East (Ohio)</td>
<td>us-east-2</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US East (N. Virginia)</td>
<td>us-east-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US West (N. California)</td>
<td>us-west-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Requirements

Unless otherwise noted, the following requirements are common to all gateway configurations.

#### Topics
- Hardware and Storage Requirements (p. 10)
- Network and Firewall Requirements (p. 12)
- Supported Hypervisors and Host Requirements (p. 16)
- Supported NFS Clients for a File Gateway (p. 16)
- Supported File System Operations for a File Gateway (p. 16)
- Supported iSCSI Initiators (p. 16)
- Supported Third-Party Backup Applications for a Tape Gateway (p. 17)

### Hardware and Storage Requirements

In this section, you can find information about the minimum hardware and settings for your gateway and the minimum amount of disk space to allocate for the required storage.

#### Hardware Requirements

When deploying your gateway on-premises, you must make sure that the underlying hardware on which you deploy the gateway VM can dedicate the following minimum resources:
• Four virtual processors assigned to the VM.
• 16 GiB of reserved RAM assigned to the VM.
• 80 GiB of disk space for installation of VM image and system data.

For more information, see Optimizing Gateway Performance (p. 158). For information about how your hardware affects the performance of the gateway VM, see AWS Storage Gateway Limits (p. 292).

Amazon EC2 Instance Type Requirements

When deploying your gateway on Amazon EC2, the instance size must be at least \texttt{xlarge} for your gateway to function. However, for the compute-optimized instance family the size must be at least \texttt{2xlarge}. Use one of the following instance types recommended for your gateway type.

**Recommended for file gateway types**

• General-purpose instance family—\texttt{m4} or \texttt{m5} instance type.
• Compute-optimized instance family—\texttt{c4} or \texttt{c5} instance types. Select the \texttt{2xlarge} instance size or higher to meet the required RAM requirements.
• Memory-optimized instance family—\texttt{r3} instance types.

**Recommended for cached volumes and tape gateway types**

• General-purpose instance family—\texttt{m4} instance types. We don't recommend using the \texttt{m4.16xlarge} instance type.
• Compute-optimized instance family—\texttt{c4} instance types. Select the \texttt{2xlarge} instance size or higher to meet the required RAM requirements.
• Storage-optimized instance family—\texttt{d2} or \texttt{i2} instance types

**Note**

When deploying your gateway on an Amazon EC2 instance, you must make sure that you allocate the following minimum resources:

• If you have more than 5 million objects in your S3 bucket and you are using a General Purposes SSD volume, a minimum root EBS volume of 350 GiB is needed for acceptable performance of your gateway during start up. For information about how to increase your volume size, see Modifying an EBS Volume from the Console.

Storage Requirements

In addition to 80 GiB disk space for the VM, you also need additional disks for your gateway.

The following table recommends sizes for local disk storage for your deployed gateway.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gateway Type</th>
<th>Cache (Minimum)</th>
<th>Cache (Maximum)</th>
<th>Upload Buffer (Minimum)</th>
<th>Upload Buffer (Maximum)</th>
<th>Other Required Local Disks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>File gateway</td>
<td>150 GiB</td>
<td>16 TiB</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cached volume gateway</td>
<td>150 GiB</td>
<td>16 TiB</td>
<td>150 GiB</td>
<td>2 TiB</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Network and Firewall Requirements

Your locally deployed gateway requires access to the internet, local networks, Domain Name Service (DNS) servers, firewalls, routers, and so on. Following, you can find information about required ports and how to allow access through firewalls and routers.

#### Topics
- Port Requirements (p. 12)
- Allowing AWS Storage Gateway Access Through Firewalls and Routers (p. 13)
- Configuring Security Groups for Your Amazon EC2 Gateway Instance (p. 15)

#### Port Requirements

AWS Storage Gateway requires certain ports to be allowed for its operation. The following illustrations show the required ports that you must allow for each type of gateway. Some ports are required by all gateway types, and others are required by specific gateway types. For more information about port requirements, see Port Requirements (p. 284).

### File Gateway

The following illustration shows the ports to open for a file gateway.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gateway Type</th>
<th>Cache (Minimum)</th>
<th>Cache (Maximum)</th>
<th>Upload Buffer (Minimum)</th>
<th>Upload Buffer (Maximum)</th>
<th>Other Required Local Disks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stored volume gateway</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>150 GiB</td>
<td>2 TiB</td>
<td>1 or more for stored volume or volumes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tape gateway</td>
<td>150 GiB</td>
<td>16 TiB</td>
<td>150 GiB</td>
<td>2 TiB</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

You can configure one or more local drives for your cache and upload buffer, up to the maximum capacity. When adding cache or upload buffer to an existing gateway, it's important to create new disks in your host (hypervisor or Amazon EC2 instance). Don't change the size of existing disks if the disks have been previously allocated as either a cache or upload buffer.

For information about gateway limits, see AWS Storage Gateway Limits (p. 292).
Network and Firewall Requirements

Volume Gateway and Tape Gateway

The following illustration shows the ports to open for volume and tape gateways.

Allowing AWS Storage Gateway Access Through Firewalls and Routers

Your locally deployed gateway requires access to the following endpoints to communicate with AWS. If you use a firewall or router to filter or limit network traffic, you must configure your firewall and router to allow these service endpoints for outbound communication to AWS.

The following service endpoints are required by all gateways for control path (anon-cp, client-cp, proxy-app) and data path (dp-1) operations.

```
anon-cp.storagegateway.region.amazonaws.com:443
client-cp.storagegateway.region.amazonaws.com:443
```
The following service endpoint is required to make API calls.

storagegateway.region.amazonaws.com:443

The Amazon S3 service endpoint, shown following, is used by file gateway only. A file gateway requires this endpoint to access the S3 bucket that a file share maps to.

If the gateway is not able to determine the AWS Region where your S3 bucket is located, this endpoint defaults to us-east-1.s3.amazonaws.com. We recommend you that whitelist the us-east-1 region in addition to AWS Regions where your gateway is activated, and where your S3 bucket is located.

region.s3.amazonaws.com

The Amazon CloudFront endpoint following is required for Storage Gateway to get the list of available AWS Regions.

https://d4kdq0yaxexbo.cloudfront.net/

The Storage Gateway VM is configured to use the following ntp servers:

0.amazon.pool.ntp.org
1.amazon.pool.ntp.org
2.amazon.pool.ntp.org
3.amazon.pool.ntp.org

The following table provides a list of region strings for the available AWS Regions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Region Name</th>
<th>Region String</th>
<th>File Gateway</th>
<th>Volume Gateway</th>
<th>Tape Gateway</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>US East (Ohio)</td>
<td>us-east-2</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US East (N. Virginia)</td>
<td>us-east-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US West (N. California)</td>
<td>us-west-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US West (Oregon)</td>
<td>us-west-2</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada (Central)</td>
<td>ca-central-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EU (Ireland)</td>
<td>eu-west-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EU (Frankfurt)</td>
<td>eu-central-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EU (London)</td>
<td>eu-west-2</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EU (Paris)</td>
<td>eu-west-3</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia Pacific (Tokyo)</td>
<td>ap-northeast-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia Pacific (Seoul)</td>
<td>ap-northeast-2</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Region Name</td>
<td>Region String</td>
<td>File Gateway</td>
<td>Volume Gateway</td>
<td>Tape Gateway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia Pacific (Singapore)</td>
<td>ap-southeast-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia Pacific (Sydney)</td>
<td>ap-southeast-2</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia Pacific (Mumbai)</td>
<td>ap-south-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South America (São Paulo)</td>
<td>sa-east-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Depending on your gateway’s AWS Region, replace `region` in the endpoint with the corresponding region string. For example, if you create a gateway in the US West (Oregon) region, the endpoint looks like this: `storagegateway.us-west-2.amazonaws.com:443`.

**Configuring Security Groups for Your Amazon EC2 Gateway Instance**

A security group controls traffic to your Amazon EC2 gateway instance. When you create an instance from the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) for AWS Storage Gateway from AWS Marketplace, you have two choices for launching the instance. To launch the instance by using the 1-Click Launch feature of AWS Marketplace, follow the steps in Deploying a Volume or Tape Gateway on an Amazon EC2 Host (p. 248). We recommend that you use this 1-Click Launch feature.

You can also launch an instance by using the Manual Launch feature in AWS Marketplace. In this case, an autogenerated security group that is named `AWS Storage Gateway-1-0-AutogenByAWSMP-` is created. This security group has the correct rule for port 80 to activate your gateway. For more information about security groups, see Security Group Concepts in the Amazon EC2 User Guide for Linux Instances.

Regardless of the security group that you use, we recommend the following:

- The security group should not allow incoming connections from the outside internet. It should allow only instances within the gateway security group to communicate with the gateway. If you need to allow instances to connect to the gateway from outside its security group, we recommend that you allow connections only on ports 3260 (for iSCSI connections) and 80 (for activation).
- If you want to activate your gateway from an EC2 host outside the gateway security group, allow incoming connections on port 80 from the IP address of that host. If you cannot determine the activating host’s IP address, you can open port 80, activate your gateway, and then close access on port 80 after completing activation.
- Allow port 22 access only if you are using AWS Support for troubleshooting purposes. For more information, see You Want AWS Support to Help Troubleshoot Your EC2 Gateway (p. 229).

In some cases, you might use an Amazon EC2 instance as an initiator (that is, to connect to iSCSI targets on a gateway that you deployed on Amazon EC2). In such a case, we recommend a two-step approach:

1. You should launch the initiator instance in the same security group as your gateway.
2. You should configure access so the initiator can communicate with your gateway.

For information about the ports to open for your gateway, see Port Requirements (p. 284).
Supported Hypervisors and Host Requirements

You can run AWS Storage Gateway either on-premises as a virtual machine (VM) appliance, or in AWS as an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance.

AWS Storage Gateway supports the following hypervisor versions and hosts:

- VMware ESXi Hypervisor (version 4.1, 5.0, 5.1, 5.5, 6.0 or 6.5)—A free version of VMware is available on the VMware website. For this setup, you also need a VMware vSphere client to connect to the host.
- Microsoft Hyper-V Hypervisor (version 2008 R2, 2012, or 2012 R2)—A free, standalone version of Hyper-V is available at the Microsoft Download Center. For this setup, you need a Microsoft Hyper-V Manager on a Microsoft Windows client computer to connect to the host.
- EC2 instance—AWS Storage Gateway provides an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) that contains the gateway VM image. Only file, cached volume, and tape gateway types can be deployed on Amazon EC2. For information about how to deploy a gateway on Amazon EC2, see Deploying a Volume or Tape Gateway on an Amazon EC2 Host (p. 248).

**Note**

AWS Storage Gateway doesn’t support recovering a gateway from a VM that was created from a snapshot or clone of another gateway VM or from your Amazon EC2 AMI. If your gateway VM malfunctions, activate a new gateway and recover your data to that gateway. For more information, see Recovering from an Unexpected Virtual Machine Shutdown (p. 239).

Supported NFS Clients for a File Gateway

File gateways support the following NFS clients:

- Amazon Linux
- Mac OS X
- RHEL 7
- SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 11 and SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12
- Ubuntu 14.04

Native clients only support NFS v3. The maximum supported NFS I/O size is 32 KB, so you might experience degraded performance on these versions of Windows.

Supported File System Operations for a File Gateway

Your NFS client can write, read, delete, and truncate files. Writes are sent to Amazon S3 through optimized multipart uploads by using a write-back cache. Reads are first served through the local cache. If data is not available, it's fetched through S3 as a read-through cache.

Writes and reads are optimized in that only the parts that are changed or requested are transferred through your gateway. Deletes remove objects from S3. Directories are managed as folder objects in S3, using the same syntax as in the Amazon S3 Management Console.

Supported iSCSI Initiators

When you deploy a cached volume or stored volume gateway, you can create iSCSI storage volumes on your gateway. When you deploy a tape gateway, the gateway is preconfigured with one media changer.
and 10 tape drives. These tape drives and the media changer are available to your existing client backup applications as iSCSI devices.

To connect to these iSCSI devices, AWS Storage Gateway supports the following iSCSI initiators:

- Windows Server 2012 and Windows Server 2012 R2
- Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 R2
- Windows 7
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7
- VMware ESX Initiator, which provides an alternative to using initiators in the guest operating systems of your VMs

**Important**

Storage Gateway doesn't support Microsoft Multipath I/O (MPIO) from Windows clients. Storage Gateway supports connecting multiple hosts to the same volume if the hosts coordinate access by using Windows Server Failover Clustering (WSFC). However, you can't connect multiple hosts to that same volume (for example, sharing a nonclustered NTFS/ext4 file system) without using WSFC.

**Supported Third-Party Backup Applications for a Tape Gateway**

You use a backup application to read, write, and manage tapes with a tape gateway. The following third-party backup applications are supported to work with tape gateways.

The type of medium changer you choose depends on the backup application you plan to use. The following table lists third-party backup applications that have been tested and found to be compatible with tape gateways. This table includes the medium changer type recommended for each backup application.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Backup Application</th>
<th>Medium Changer Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arcserve Backup</td>
<td>AWS-Gateway-VTL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backup Exec 2012</td>
<td>STK-L700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backup Exec 2014</td>
<td>AWS-Gateway-VTL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backup Exec 15</td>
<td>AWS-Gateway-VTL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backup Exec 16</td>
<td>AWS-Gateway-VTL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commvault V11</td>
<td>STK-L700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quest NetVault Backup 10.0</td>
<td>STK-L700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dell EMC NetWorker V8.x or V9.x</td>
<td>AWS-Gateway-VTL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micro Focus (HPE) Data Protector 9.x</td>
<td>AWS-Gateway-VTL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft System Center 2012 R2 Data Protection Manager</td>
<td>STK-L700</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Accessing AWS Storage Gateway

You can use the AWS Storage Gateway Management Console to perform various gateway configuration and management tasks. The Getting Started section and various other sections of this guide use the console to illustrate gateway functionality.

Additionally, you can use the AWS Storage Gateway API to programmatically configure and manage your gateways. For more information about the API, see API Reference for AWS Storage Gateway (p. 295).

You can also use the AWS SDKs to develop applications that interact with AWS Storage Gateway. The AWS SDKs for Java, .NET, and PHP wrap the underlying AWS Storage Gateway API to simplify your programming tasks. For information about downloading the SDK libraries, see Sample Code Libraries.

![Table](https://example.com/table.png)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Backup Application</th>
<th>Medium Changer Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Protection Manager doesn't display barcodes for virtual tapes created in AWS Storage Gateway.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symantec NetBackup Version 7.x</td>
<td>AWS-Gateway-VTL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Veeam Backup &amp; Replication V7</td>
<td>STK-L700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Veeam Backup &amp; Replication V8</td>
<td>STK-L700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Veeam Backup &amp; Replication V9 Update 2 or later</td>
<td>AWS-Gateway-VTL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Important**

We highly recommend that you choose the medium changer that's listed for your backup application. Other medium changers might not function properly. You can choose a different medium changer after the gateway is activated. For more information, see Selecting a Medium Changer After Gateway Activation (p. 256).
Creating Your Gateway

To create your gateway, open the AWS Storage Gateway Management Console and choose the AWS Region that you want to create your gateway in. If you haven't created a gateway in this AWS Region, the Storage Gateway service homepage is displayed.

Choose Get started to open the Create gateway page. On this page, you choose a gateway type. If you have a gateway in the current AWS Region, the console shows your gateway in the console.

Topics
• Creating a File Gateway (p. 19)
• Creating a Volume Gateway (p. 28)
• Creating a Tape Gateway (p. 42)

Creating a File Gateway

In this section, you can find instructions about how to create and use a file gateway.

Topics
• Creating a Gateway (p. 19)
• Creating a File Share (p. 24)
• Using Your File Share (p. 26)

Creating a Gateway

In this section, you can find instructions about how to download, deploy, and activate your file gateway.

Topics
• Choosing a Gateway Type (p. 19)
• Choosing a Host Platform and Downloading the VM (p. 20)
• Connecting to Your Gateway (p. 21)
• Activating Your Gateway (p. 22)
• Configuring Local Disks (p. 23)

Choosing a Gateway Type

With a file gateway, you store and retrieve objects in Amazon S3 with a local cache for low latency access to your most recently used data.
To choose a gateway type

1. Open the AWS Management Console at http://console.aws.amazon.com/storagegateway/home, and choose the AWS Region that you want to create your gateway in.

   If you have previously created a gateway in this AWS Region, the console shows your gateway. Otherwise, the service homepage appears.

2. If you haven't created a gateway in the AWS Region that you chose, choose Get started. If you already have a gateway in the AWS Region that you chose, choose Gateways from the navigation pane, and then choose Create gateway.

3. On the Select gateway type page, choose File gateway, and then choose Next.

Choosing a Host Platform and Downloading the VM

If you create your gateway on-premises, you download and deploy the gateway VM and then activate the gateway. If you create your gateway on an Amazon EC2 instance, you launch an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) that contains the gateway VM image and then activate the gateway. For information about supported host platforms, see Supported Hypervisors and Host Requirements (p. 16).

   Note
   You can run only file, cached volume, and tape gateways on an Amazon EC2 instance.

To select a host platform and download the VM

1. On the Select host platform page, choose the virtualization platform that you want to run your gateway on.

2. Choose Download image next to your virtualization platform to download a .zip file that contains the .ova file for your virtualization platform.
Note
The .zip file is over 500 MB in size and might take some time to download, depending on your network connection.

For EC2, you create an instance from the provided AMI.

3. Deploy the downloaded image to your hypervisor. You need to add at least one local disk for your cache and one local disk for your upload buffer during the deployment. A file gateway requires only one local disk for a cache. For information about local disk requirements, see Hardware and Storage Requirements (p. 10).

If you choose VMware, do the following:

- Store your disk in **Thick provisioned format**. When you use thick provisioning, the disk storage is allocated immediately, resulting in better performance. In contrast, thin provisioning allocates storage on demand. On-demand allocation can affect the normal functioning of AWS Storage Gateway. For Storage Gateway to function properly, the VM disks must be stored in thick-provisioned format.
- Configure your gateway VM to use paravirtualized disk controllers. For more information, see Configuring the AWS Storage Gateway VM to Use Paravirtualized Disk Controllers (p. 246).

If you choose Microsoft Hyper-V, do the following:

- Configure the disk type as **Fixed size**. When you use fixed-size provisioning, the disk storage is allocated immediately, resulting in better performance. If you don't use fixed-size provisioning, the storage is allocated on demand. On-demand allocation can affect the functioning of AWS Storage Gateway. For Storage Gateway to function properly, the VM disks must be stored in fixed-size provisioned format.
- When allocating disks, choose **virtual hard disk (.vhd) file**. Storage Gateway supports the .vhdx file type. By using this file type, you can create larger virtual disks than with other file types. If you create a .vhdx type virtual disk, make sure that the size of the virtual disks that you create doesn't exceed the recommended disk size for your gateway.

For both VMware and Microsoft Hyper-V, synchronizing the VM time with the host time is required for successful gateway activation. Make sure that your host clock is set to the correct time and synchronize it with a Network Time Protocol (NTP) server.

For information about deploying your gateway to an Amazon EC2 host, see Deploy Your Gateway to an Amazon EC2 Host (p. 249).

**Connecting to Your Gateway**

To connect to your gateway, the first step is to get the IP address of your gateway VM. You use this IP address to activate your gateway. For gateways deployed and activated on an on-premises host, you can get the IP address from your gateway VM local console or your hypervisor client. For gateways deployed and activated on an Amazon EC2 instance, you can get the IP address from the Amazon EC2 console.

The activation process associates your gateway with your AWS account. Your gateway VM must be running for activation to succeed.

Make sure that you connect to the correct gateway type. The .ova files and AMIs for the gateway types are different and are not interchangeable.

**To get the IP address for your gateway VM from the local console**

1. Log on to your gateway VM local console. For detailed instructions, see the following:
Creating a Gateway

2. Get the IP address from the top of the menu page, and make note of it for later use.

To get the IP address from an EC2 instance

1. Open the Amazon EC2 console at https://console.aws.amazon.com/ec2/.
2. In the navigation pane, choose Instances, and then choose the EC2 instance.
3. Choose the Description tab at the bottom, and then note the IP address. You use this IP address to activate the gateway.

For activation, you can use the public or private IP address assigned to a gateway. You must be able to reach the IP address that you use from the browser from which you perform the activation. In this walkthrough, we use the public IP address to activate the gateway.

To associate your gateway with your AWS account

1. If the Connect to gateway page isn't already open, open the console and navigate to that page.
2. Type the IP address of your gateway for IP address, and then choose Connect gateway.

For detailed information about how to get a gateway IP address, see Connecting to Your Gateway (p. 288).

Activating Your Gateway

To activate your gateway

1. To complete the activation process, provide information on the activation page to configure your gateway setting:
   - Gateway Time Zone specifies the time zone to use for your gateway.
   - Gateway Name identifies your gateway. You use this name to manage your gateway in the console; you can change it after the gateway is activated. This name must be unique to your account.
The following screenshot shows the activation page for a file gateway.

2. Choose **Activate gateway**.
3. If activation is not successful, see **Troubleshooting Your Gateway** (p. 220) for possible solutions.

**Configuring Local Disks**

When you deployed the VM, you allocated local disks for your gateway. Now you configure your gateway to use these disks.

**To configure local disks**

1. On the **Configure local disks** page, identify the disks you added and decide which ones you want to allocate for cached storage. For information about disk size limits, see **Configuration and Performance Limits** (p. 294).

2. Choose **Cache** for the disk you want to configure as cache storage.

   If you don't see your disks, choose **Refresh**.
3. Choose **Save and continue** to save your configuration settings.
Creating a File Share

In the following section, you can find instructions about how to create a file share.

Important
To create a file share, a file gateway requires you to activate AWS Security Token Service (AWS STS). Make sure that AWS STS is activated in the AWS Region that you are creating your file gateway in. If AWS STS is not activated in that AWS Region, activate it. For information about how to activate AWS STS, see Activating and Deactivating AWS STS in an AWS Region in the IAM User Guide.

To create a file share


2. On the navigation pane, choose File shares, and then choose Create file share. You can also choose Create file share from the Gateway tab.

3. In the Create file share wizard, choose your gateway from the Gateway list.

4. For Amazon S3 bucket name, provide a name for the Amazon S3 bucket for your gateway to store your files in and retrieve your files to. This name must be compliant with Domain Name Service (DNS). This bucket must also exist already; it isn’t created for you. For information on DNS-compliant names for buckets, see Rules for Bucket Naming in the Amazon Simple Storage Service Developer Guide.

5. For Storage class for new objects, choose a storage class to use for new objects created in your Amazon S3 bucket:
   - Choose S3 Standard to store your frequently accessed object data redundantly in multiple Availability Zones that are geographically separated.
   - Choose S3 Standard-IA to store your infrequently accessed object data redundantly in multiple Availability Zones that are geographically separated.
   - Choose S3 One Zone-IA to store your infrequently accessed object data in a single Availability Zone.
For more information, see Storage Classes in the Amazon Simple Storage Service Developer Guide.

6. For Object metadata, choose the metadata you want to use:

- Choose Guess MIME type to enable guessing of the MIME type for uploaded objects based on file extensions.
- Choose Give bucket owner full control to give full control to the owner of the S3 bucket that maps to the file NFS file share. For more information on using your file share to access objects in a bucket owned by another account, see Using a File Share for Cross-Account Access (p. 92).
- Choose Enable requester pays if you are using this file share on a bucket that requires the requester or reader instead of bucket owner to pay for access charges. For more information, see Requester Pays Buckets.

7. For Access to your bucket, choose the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that you want your gateway to use to access your Amazon S3 bucket. This role allows the gateway to access your S3 bucket. A file gateway can create a new IAM role and access policy on your behalf. Or, if you have an IAM role you want to use, you can specify it in the IAM role box and set up the access policy manually. For more information, see Granting Access to an Amazon S3 Bucket (p. 91). For information about IAM roles, see IAM Roles in the IAM User Guide.

8. Choose Next to review configuration settings for your file share. You can change the allowed NFS clients for Allowed clients as needed.

To change Squash level and Export as under Mount options and to change File metadata defaults options, choose Edit by the option to change.

Note
For file shares mounted on a Microsoft Windows client, if you choose Read-only for Export as, you might see a message about an unexpected error keeping you from creating the folder. You can ignore this message.
9. Configure **Allowed clients** to allow or restrict each client's access to your file share. For more information, see **Editing Allowed NFS Clients** (p. 97).

10. (Optional) Modify the mount options for your file share as needed. For more information, see **Updating a File Share** (p. 95).

11. (Optional) Modify the file metadata defaults as needed. For more information, see **Editing Metadata Defaults** (p. 96).

12. Review your file share configuration settings, and then choose **Create file share**.

After your file share is created, you can see your file share settings in the file share's **Details** tab.

**Next Step**

Using Your File Share (p. 26)

**Using Your File Share**

Following, you can find instructions about how to mount your file share on your client, use your share, test your file gateway, and clean up resources as needed. Your file share accepts connections from any NFS client. For more information, see **Supported NFS Clients for a File Gateway** (p. 16).

**Topics**

- **Mounting Your File Share on Your Client** (p. 27)
- **Testing Your File Gateway** (p. 27)
- **Where Do I Go from Here?** (p. 28)
Mounting Your File Share on Your Client

Now you mount the file share on a drive on your client and map it to your Amazon S3 bucket.

To mount a file share and map it to an Amazon S3 bucket

1. If you are using a Windows client, turn on Services for NFS.
2. Mount your file share:
   - For Windows clients, type the following command at the command prompt.
     ```bash
     mount -o nolock [Your gateway VM IP address]://[S3 bucket name] [Drive letter on your windows client]
     ```
   - For Linux clients, type the following command at the command prompt.
     ```bash
     sudo mount -t nfs -o nolock [Your gateway VM IP address]://[S3 bucket name] [mount path on your client]
     ```
   - For MacOS clients, type the following command at the command prompt.
     ```bash
     sudo mount_nfs -o vers=3,nolock,rwsize=65536 -v [Your gateway VM IP address]://[S3 bucket name] [mount path on your client]
     ```

   For example, suppose that on a Windows client your VM's IP address is 123.456.1.2 and your Amazon S3 bucket name is test-bucket. Suppose also that you want to map to drive T. In this case, your command looks like the following:

   ```bash
   mount -o nolock 123.456.1.2:/test-bucket T:
   ```

   Note
   When mounting file shares, be aware of the following:
   - You might have a case where a folder and an object exist in an Amazon S3 bucket and have the same name. In this case, if the object name doesn't contain a trailing slash, only the folder is visible in a file gateway. For example, if a bucket contains an object named test or test/ and a folder named test/test1, only test/ and test/test1 are visible in a file gateway.
   - You might need to remount your file share after a reboot of your client.

Testing Your File Gateway

You can copy files and folders to your mapped drive. The files automatically upload to your Amazon S3 bucket.

To upload files from your windows client to Amazon S3

1. On your Windows client, navigate to the drive that you mounted your file share on. The name of your drive is preceded by the name of your S3 bucket.
2. Copy files or a folder to the drive.
3. On the Amazon S3 Management Console, navigate to your mapped bucket. You should see the files and folders that you copied in the Amazon S3 bucket that you specified.

   You can see the file share that you created in the File shares tab in the AWS Storage Gateway Management Console.

Your NFS client can write, read, delete, rename, and truncate files.
Creating a Volume Gateway

In this section, you can find instructions about how to create and use a volume gateway.

Topics
- Creating a Gateway (p. 29)
- Creating a Volume (p. 34)
- Using Your Volume (p. 36)
Creating a Gateway

In this section, you can find instructions about how to download, deploy, and activate a volume gateway.

Topics

- Choosing a Gateway Type (p. 29)
- Choosing a Host Platform and Downloading the VM (p. 30)
- Connecting to Your Gateway (p. 31)
- Activating Your Gateway (p. 32)
- Configuring Local Disks (p. 33)

Choosing a Gateway Type

With a volume gateway, you can create storage volumes in the AWS Cloud that your on-premises applications can access as Internet Small Computer System Interface (iSCSI) targets. There are two options:

- **Cached volumes (p. 3)**—Store your data in AWS and retain a copy of frequently accessed data subsets locally.
- **Stored volumes (p. 5)**—Store all your data locally and asynchronously back up point-in-time snapshots to AWS.

To choose a gateway type

1. Open the AWS Management Console at http://console.aws.amazon.com/storagegateway/home, and choose the AWS Region that you want to create your gateway in.

   If you have previously created a gateway in this AWS Region, the console shows your gateway. Otherwise, the service homepage appears.

2. If you haven’t created a gateway in the AWS Region you selected, choose Get started. If you already have a gateway in the AWS Region you chose, choose Gateways from the navigation pane, and then choose Create gateway.

3. On the Select gateway type page, choose Volume gateway, choose the type of volume, and then choose Next.
Choosing a Host Platform and Downloading the VM

If you create your gateway on-premises, you download and deploy the gateway VM and then activate the gateway. If you create your gateway on an Amazon EC2 instance, you launch an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) that contains the gateway VM image and then activate the gateway. For information about supported host platforms, see Supported Hypervisors and Host Requirements (p. 16).

Note
You can run only file, cached volume, and tape gateways on an Amazon EC2 instance.

To select a host platform and download the VM

1. On the Select host platform page, choose the virtualization platform that you want to run your gateway on.

2. Choose Download image next to your virtualization platform to download a .zip file that contains the .ova file for your virtualization platform.

   Note
   The .zip file is over 500 MB in size and might take some time to download, depending on your network connection.

For EC2, you create an instance from the provided AMI.

3. Deploy the downloaded image to your hypervisor. You need to add at least one local disk for your cache and one local disk for your upload buffer during the deployment. A file gateway requires only one local disk for a cache. For information about local disk requirements, see Hardware and Storage Requirements (p. 10).

If you choose VMware, do the following:

- Store your disk in Thick provisioned format. When you use thick provisioning, the disk storage is allocated immediately, resulting in better performance. In contrast, thin provisioning allocates storage on demand. On-demand allocation can affect the normal functioning of AWS Storage Gateway. For Storage Gateway to function properly, the VM disks must be stored in thick-provisioned format.
- Configure your gateway VM to use paravirtualized disk controllers. For more information, see Configuring the AWS Storage Gateway VM to Use Paravirtualized Disk Controllers (p. 246).

If you choose Microsoft Hyper-V, do the following:
Creating a Gateway

- Configure the disk type as **Fixed size**. When you use fixed-size provisioning, the disk storage is allocated immediately, resulting in better performance. If you don't use fixed-size provisioning, the storage is allocated on demand. On-demand allocation can affect the functioning of AWS Storage Gateway. For Storage Gateway to function properly, the VM disks must be stored in fixed-size provisioned format.

- When allocating disks, choose **virtual hard disk (.vhd) file**. Storage Gateway supports the .vhdx file type. By using this file type, you can create larger virtual disks than with other file types. If you create a .vhdx type virtual disk, make sure that the size of the virtual disks that you create doesn't exceed the recommended disk size for your gateway.

For both VMware and Microsoft Hyper-V, synchronizing the VM time with the host time is required for successful gateway activation. Make sure that your host clock is set to the correct time and synchronize it with a Network Time Protocol (NTP) server.

For information about deploying your gateway to an Amazon EC2 host, see Deploy Your Gateway to an Amazon EC2 Host (p. 248).

Connecting to Your Gateway

To connect to your gateway, the first step is to get the IP address of your gateway VM. You use this IP address to activate your gateway. For gateways deployed and activated on an on-premises host, you can get the IP address from your gateway VM local console or your hypervisor client. For gateways deployed and activated on an Amazon EC2 instance, you can get the IP address from the Amazon EC2 console.

The activation process associates your gateway with your AWS account. Your gateway VM must be running for activation to succeed.

Make sure that you connect to the correct gateway type. The .ova files and AMIs for the gateway types are different and are not interchangeable.

**To get the IP address for your gateway VM from the local console**

1. Log on to your gateway VM local console. For detailed instructions, see the following:
   - VMware ESXi—Accessing the Gateway Local Console with VMware ESXi (p. 165).
   - Microsoft Hyper-V—Access the Gateway Local Console with Microsoft Hyper-V (p. 170).
2. Get the IP address from the top of the menu page, and make note of it for later use.

**To get the IP address from an EC2 instance**

1. Open the Amazon EC2 console at https://console.aws.amazon.com/ec2/.
2. In the navigation pane, choose **Instances**, and then choose the EC2 instance.
3. Choose the **Description** tab at the bottom, and then note the IP address. You use this IP address to activate the gateway.
For activation, you can use the public or private IP address assigned to a gateway. You must be able to reach the IP address that you use from the browser from which you perform the activation. In this walkthrough, we use the public IP address to activate the gateway.

To associate your gateway with your AWS account

1. If the Connect to gateway page isn't already open, open the console and navigate to that page.
2. Type the IP address of your gateway for IP address, and then choose Connect gateway.

For detailed information about how to get a gateway IP address, see Connecting to Your Gateway (p. 288).

Activating Your Gateway

When your gateway VM is deployed and running, you configure your gateway settings and activate your gateway.

To activate your gateway

1. To complete the activation process, provide the information on the activation page to configure your gateway setting:
   
   - Gateway Time Zone specifies the time zone to use for your gateway.
   - Gateway Name identifies your gateway. You use this name to manage your gateway in the console; you can change it after the gateway is activated. This name must be unique to your account.

The following screenshot shows the activation page for a volume gateway.
2. Choose **Activate Gateway**.

When the gateway is successfully activated, the AWS Storage Gateway console displays the **Configure local disks** page.

If activation fails, check that the IP address you entered is correct. If the IP address is correct, confirm that your network is configured to let your browser access the gateway VM. For other possible solutions, see Troubleshooting Your Gateway (p. 220).

**Configuring Local Disks**

When you deployed the VM, you allocated local disks for your gateway. Now you configure your gateway to use these disks.

**Note**

If you allocate local disks on a VMware host, make sure to configure the disks to use paravirtualized disk controllers.

When adding a cache or upload buffer to an existing gateway, make sure to create new disks in your host (hypervisor or Amazon EC2 instance). Don't change the size of existing disks if the disks have been previously allocated as either a cache or upload buffer.

- For a **cached volume** (p. 3), you configure at least one disk for an upload buffer and the other for cache storage.
- For a **stored volume** (p. 5), you configure at least one disk for an upload buffer and allocate the rest of the storage for your application data.

**To configure local disks**

1. On the **Configure local disks** page, identify the disks you allocated and decide which ones you want to use for an upload buffer and cached storage. For information about disk size limits, see Configuration and Performance Limits (p. 294).

2. From the list next to your upload buffer disk, choose **Upload Buffer**.
3. For cached volumes and tapes, choose **Cache** for the disk you want to configure as cache storage.
   If you don't see your disks, choose **Refresh**.
4. Choose **Save and continue** to save your configuration settings.

**Next Step**
Creating a Volume (p. 34)

**Creating a Volume**

Previously, you allocated local disks that you added to the VM cache storage and upload buffer. Now you create a storage volume to which your applications read and write data. The gateway maintains the volume's recently accessed data locally in cache storage, and asynchronously transferred data to Amazon S3. For stored volumes, you allocated local disks that you added to the VM upload buffer and your application's data.

**To create a volume**

2. On the AWS Storage Gateway console, choose **Create volume**.
3. In the **Create volume** dialog box, choose a gateway for **Gateway**.
4. For the cached volumes, type the capacity in **Capacity**.
   For stored volumes, choose a **Disk ID** value from the list.
5. For **Volume content**, your choices depend on the type of gateway you are creating the volume for.
   For cached volumes, you have the following options:
   - **Create a new empty volume**.
   - **Create a volume based on an Amazon EBS snapshot**. If you choose this option, provide a value for **EBS snapshot ID**.
   - **Clone from last volume recovery point**. If you choose this option, choose a volume ID for **Source volume**. If there are no volumes in the region, this option doesn't appear.
   For stored volumes, you have the following options:
   - **Create a new empty volume**.
   - **Create a volume based on a snapshot**. If you choose this option, provide a value for **EBS snapshot ID**.
   - **Preserve existing data on the disk**
6. Type a name for **iSCSI target name**.
   The target name can contain lowercase letters, numbers, periods (.), and hyphens (-). This target name appears as the **iSCSI target node** name in the **Targets** tab of the **iSCSI Microsoft initiator** UI after discovery. For example, the name target1 appears as iqn.1007-05.com.amazon:target1. Make sure that the target name is globally unique within your storage area network (SAN).
7. Verify that the **Network interface** setting has IP address selected, or choose an IP address for **Network interface**. For **Network interface**, one IP address appears for each adapter that is configured for the gateway VM. If the gateway VM is configured for only one network adapter, no **Network interface** list appears because there is only one IP address.
   Your iSCSI target will be available on the network adapter you choose.
If you have defined your gateway to use multiple network adapters, choose the IP address that your storage applications should use to access your volume. For information about configuring multiple network adapters, see Configuring Your Gateway for Multiple NICs (p. 190).

Note
After you choose a network adapter, you can't change this setting.

8. Choose **Create volume**.

If you have previously created volumes in this region, you can see them listed on the Storage Gateway console.

The **Configure CHAP Authentication** dialog box appears. You can configure Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP) for your volume at this point, or you can choose **Cancel** and configure CHAP later. For more information on CHAP setup, see Configure CHAP Authentication for Your Volumes (p. 35), following.

![Create volume](image)

If you don't want to set up CHAP, get started using your volume. For more information, see Using Your Volume (p. 36).

**Configure CHAP Authentication for Your Volumes**

CHAP provides protection against playback attacks by requiring authentication to access your storage volume targets. In the **Configure CHAP Authentication** dialog box, you provide information to configure CHAP for your volumes.

**To configure CHAP**

1. Choose the volume for which you want to configure CHAP.
2. For **Actions**, choose **Configure CHAP authentication**.
3. For **Initiator Name**, type the name of your initiator.
4. For **Initiator secret**, type the secret phrase you used to authenticate your iSCSI initiator.
5. For **Target secret**, type the secret phrase used to authenticate your target for mutual CHAP.
6. Choose **Save** to save your entries.

For more information about setting up CHAP authentication, see Configuring CHAP Authentication for Your iSCSI Targets (p. 275).

**Next Step**
Using Your Volume

Following, you can find instructions about how to use your volume. To use your volume, you first connect it to your client as an iSCSI target, then initialize and format it.

Topics
- Connecting Your Volumes to Your Client (p. 36)
- Initializing and Formatting Your Volume (p. 37)
- Testing Your Gateway (p. 39)
- Where Do I Go from Here? (p. 40)

Connecting Your Volumes to Your Client

You use the iSCSI initiator in your client to connect to your volumes. At the end of the following procedure, the volumes become available as local devices on your client.

Important
With AWS Storage Gateway, you can connect multiple hosts to the same volume if the hosts coordinate access by using Windows Server Failover Clustering (WSFC). You can’t connect multiple hosts to the same volume without using WSFC, for example by sharing a nonclustered NTFS/ext4 file system.

Topics
- Connecting to a Microsoft Windows Client (p. 36)
- Connecting to a Red Hat Enterprise Linux Client (p. 36)

Connecting to a Microsoft Windows Client

The following procedure shows a summary of the steps that you follow to connect to a Windows client. For more information, see Connecting iSCSI Initiators (p. 261).

To connect to a Windows client

1. Start iscsicpl.exe.
2. In the iSCSI Initiator Properties dialog box, choose the Discovery tab, and then choose Discovery Portal.
3. In the Discover Target Portal dialog box, type the IP address of your iSCSI target for IP address or DNS name.
4. Connect the new target portal to the storage volume target on the gateway.
5. Choose the target, and then choose Connect.
6. In the Targets tab, make sure that the target status has the value Connected, indicating the target is connected, and then choose OK.

Connecting to a Red Hat Enterprise Linux Client

The following procedure shows a summary of the steps that you follow to connect to a Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) client. For more information, see Connecting iSCSI Initiators (p. 261).

To connect a Linux client to iSCSI targets

1. Install the iscsi-initiator-utils RPM package.
You can use the following command to install the package.

```
sudo yum install iscsi-initiator-utils
```

2. Make sure that the iSCSI daemon is running.

For RHEL 5 or 6, use the following command.

```
sudo /etc/init.d/iscsi status
```

For RHEL 7, use the following command.

```
sudo service iscsid status
```

3. Discover the volume or VTL device targets defined for a gateway. Use the following discovery command.

```
sudo /sbin/iscsiadm --mode discovery --type sendtargets --portal [GATEWAY_IP]:3260
```

The output of the discovery command should look like the following example output.

For volume gateways: [GATEWAY_IP]:3260, 1 iqn.1997-05.com.amazon:myvolume


4. Connect to a target.

Make sure to specify the correct [GATEWAY_IP] and IQN in the connect command.

Use the following command.

```
```

5. Verify that the volume is attached to the client machine (the initiator). To do so, use the following command.

```
ls -l /dev/disk/by-path
```

The output of the command should look like the following example output.

```
```

We highly recommend that after you set up your initiator you customize your iSCSI settings as discussed in Customizing Your Linux iSCSI Settings (p. 274).

### Initializing and Formatting Your Volume

After you use the iSCSI initiator in your client to connect to your volumes, you initialize and format your volume.

**Topics**

- Initializing and Formatting Your Volume on Microsoft Windows (p. 38)
- Initializing and Formatting Your Volume on Red Hat Enterprise Linux (p. 38)
Initializing and Formatting Your Volume on Microsoft Windows

Use the following procedure to initialize and format your volume on Windows.

To initialize and format your storage volume

1. Start `diskmgmt.msc` to open the Disk Management console.
2. In the Initialize Disk dialog box, initialize the volume as a MBR (Master Boot Record) partition. When selecting the partition style, you should take into account the type of volume you are connecting to—cached or stored—as shown in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Partition Style</th>
<th>Use in the Following Conditions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MBR (Master Boot Record)</td>
<td>• If your gateway is a stored volume and the storage volume is limited to 1 TiB in size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If your gateway is a cached volume and the storage volume is less than 2 TiB in size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPT (GUID Partition Table)</td>
<td>If your gateway's storage volume is 2 TiB or greater in size.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Create a simple volume:
   a. Bring the volume online to initialize it. All the available volumes are displayed in the disk management console.
   b. Open the context (right-click) menu for the disk, and then choose New Simple Volume.
      Important
      Be careful not to format the wrong disk. Check to make sure that the disk you are formatting matches the size of the local disk you allocated to the gateway VM and that it has a status of Unallocated.
   c. Specify the maximum disk size.
   d. Assign a drive letter or path to your volume, and format the volume by choosing Perform a quick format.
      Important
      We strongly recommend using Perform a quick format for cached volumes. Doing so results in less initialization I/O, smaller initial snapshot size, and the fastest time to a usable volume. It also avoids using cached volume space for the full format process.
      Note
      The time that it takes to format the volume depends on the size of the volume. The process might take several minutes to complete.

Initializing and Formatting Your Volume on Red Hat Enterprise Linux

Use the following procedure to initialize and format your volume on Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL).

To initialize and format your storage volume

1. Change directory to the `/dev` folder.
2. Run the `sudo cfdisk` command.
3. Identify your new volume by using the following command. To find new volumes, you can list the partition layout of your volumes.

   `# lsblk`
An "unrecognized volumes label" error for the new unpartitioned volume appears.

4. Initialize your new volume. When selecting the partition style, you should take into account the size and type of volume you are connecting to—cached or stored—as shown in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Partition Style</th>
<th>Use in the Following Conditions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MBR (Master Boot Record)</td>
<td>• If your gateway is a stored volume and the storage volume is limited to 1 TiB in size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If your gateway is a cached volume and the storage volume is less than 2 TiB in size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPT (GUID Partition Table)</td>
<td>If your gateway’s storage volume is 2 TiB or greater in size.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For an MBR partition, use the following command:

```
sudo parted /dev/your volume mklabel msdos
```

For a GPT partition, use the following command:

```
sudo parted /dev/your volume mklabel gpt
```

5. Create a partition by using the following command.

```
sudo parted -a opt /dev/your volume mkpart primary file system 0% 100%
```

6. Assign a drive letter to the partition and create a file system by using the following command.

```
sudo mkfs drive letter datapartition /dev/your volume
```

7. Mount the file system by using the following command.

```
sudo mount -o defaults /dev/your volume /mnt/your directory
```

**Testing Your Gateway**

You test your volume gateway setup by performing the following tasks:

1. Write data to the volume.
2. Take a snapshot.
3. Restore the snapshot to another volume.

You verify the setup for a gateway by taking a snapshot backup of your volume and storing the snapshot in AWS. You then restore the snapshot to a new volume. Your gateway copies the data from the specified snapshot in AWS to the new volume.

**Note**

Restoring data from Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) volumes that are encrypted is not supported.

**To create a snapshot of a storage volume on Microsoft Windows**

1. On your Windows computer, copy some data to your mapped storage volume.

   The amount of data copied doesn't matter for this demonstration. A small file is enough to demonstrate the restore process.

2. In the navigation pane of the AWS Storage Gateway console, choose **Volumes**.

3. Choose the storage volume that you created for the gateway.
This gateway should have only one storage volume. Choose the volume displays its properties.

4. For **Actions**, choose **Create Snapshot** to create a snapshot of the volume.

   Depending on the amount of data on the disk and the upload bandwidth, it might take a few seconds to complete the snapshot. Note the volume ID for the volume from which you create a snapshot. You use the ID to find the snapshot.

5. In the **Create Snapshot** dialog box, provide a description for your snapshot, and then choose **Create Snapshot**.

   ![Create Snapshot dialog box]

   Your snapshot is stored as an Amazon EBS snapshot. Take note of your snapshot ID.

   ![Snapshot details]

   The number of snapshots created for your volume is displayed in the snapshot column.

6. For **Snapshot**, choose the link for the volume you created the snapshot for to see your EBS snapshot on the Amazon EC2 console.

   ![Snapshot list]

### Where Do I Go from Here?

In the preceding sections, you created and provisioned a gateway and then connected your host to the gateway's storage volume. You added data to the gateway's iSCSI volume, took a snapshot of the volume, and restored it to a new volume, connected to the new volume, and verified that the data shows up on it.

After you finish the exercise, consider the following:

- If you plan on continuing to use your gateway, read about sizing the upload buffer more appropriately for real-world workloads. For more information, see **Sizing Your Volume Gateway's Storage for Real-World Workloads** (p. 41).
- If you don't plan on continuing to use your gateway, consider deleting the gateway to avoid incurring any charges. For more information, see **Cleaning Up Resources You Don't Need** (p. 42).

Other sections of this guide include information about how to do the following:

- To learn more about storage volumes and how to manage them, see **Managing Your Gateway** (p. 91).
- To troubleshoot gateway problems, see **Troubleshooting Your Gateway** (p. 220).
To learn about sizing your volume gateway's storage for real-world workloads and cleaning up resources you don't need, see the following sections.

**Sizing Your Volume Gateway's Storage for Real-World Workloads**

By this point, you have a simple, working gateway. However, the assumptions used to create this gateway are not appropriate for real-world workloads. If you want to use this gateway for real-world workloads, you need to do two things:

1. Size your upload buffer appropriately.
2. Set up monitoring for your upload buffer, if you haven't done so already.

Following, you can find how to do both of these tasks. If you activated a gateway for cached volumes, you also need to size your cache storage for real-world workloads.

**To size your upload buffer and cache storage for a gateway-cached setup**

- Use the formula shown in Adding and Removing Upload Buffer (p. 153) for sizing the upload buffer. We strongly recommend that you allocate at least 150 GiB for the upload buffer. If the upload buffer formula yields a value less than 150 GiB, use 150 GiB as your allocated upload buffer.

  The upload buffer formula takes into account the difference between throughput from your application to your gateway and throughput from your gateway to AWS, multiplied by how long you expect to write data. For example, assume that your applications write text data to your gateway at a rate of 40 MB per second for 12 hours a day and your network throughput is 12 MB per second. Assuming a compression factor of 2:1 for the text data, the formula specifies that you need to allocate approximately 675 GiB of upload buffer space.

**To size your upload buffer for a stored setup**

- Use the formula discussed in Adding and Removing Upload Buffer (p. 153). We strongly recommend that you allocate at least 150 GiB for your upload buffer. If the upload buffer formula yields a value less than 150 GiB, use 150 GiB as your allocated upload buffer.

  The upload buffer formula takes into account the difference between throughput from your application to your gateway and throughput from your gateway to AWS, multiplied by how long you expect to write data. For example, assume that your applications write text data to your gateway at a rate of 40 MB per second for 12 hours a day and your network throughput is 12 MB per second. Assuming a compression factor of 2:1 for the text data, the formula specifies that you need to allocate approximately 675 GiB of upload buffer space.

**To monitor your upload buffer**

2. Choose the Gateway tab, choose the Details tab, and then find the Upload Buffer Used field to view your gateway's current upload buffer.
3. Set one or more alarms to notify you about upload buffer use.
We highly recommend that you create one or more upload buffer alarms in the Amazon CloudWatch console. For example, you can set an alarm for a level of use you want to be warned about and an alarm for a level of use that, if exceeded, is cause for action. The action might be adding more upload buffer space. For more information, see To set an upper threshold alarm for a gateway’s upload buffer (p. 130).

Cleaning Up Resources You Don't Need

If you created your gateway as an example exercise or a test, consider cleaning up to avoid incurring unexpected or unnecessary charges.

To clean up resources you don't need

1. Delete any snapshots. For instructions, see Deleting a Snapshot (p. 105).
2. Unless you plan to continue using the gateway, delete it. For more information, see Deleting Your Gateway by Using the AWS Storage Gateway Console and Removing Associated Resources (p. 197).
3. Delete the AWS Storage Gateway VM from your on-premises host. If you created your gateway on an Amazon EC2 instance, terminate the instance.

Creating a Tape Gateway

In this section, you can find instructions about how to create and use a tape gateway.

Topics
- Creating a Gateway (p. 42)
- Creating Tapes (p. 48)
- Using Your Tape Gateway (p. 49)

Creating a Gateway

In this section, you can find instructions about how to download, deploy, and activate a tape gateway.

Topics
- Choosing a Gateway Type (p. 42)
- Choosing a Host Platform and Downloading the VM (p. 43)
- Connecting to Your Gateway (p. 44)
- Activating Your Gateway (p. 45)
- Configuring Local Disks (p. 47)

Choosing a Gateway Type

For a tape gateway (p. 6), you store and archive your data on virtual tapes in AWS. A tape gateway eliminates some of the challenges associated with owning and operating an on-premises physical tape infrastructure.

To create a tape gateway

1. Open the AWS Management Console at http://console.aws.amazon.com/storagegateway/home, and choose the AWS Region that you want to create your gateway in.
If you have previously created a gateway in this AWS Region, the console shows your gateway. Otherwise, the console home page appears.

2. If you haven’t created a gateway in the AWS Region you selected, choose Get started. If you already have a gateway in the AWS Region you selected, choose Gateways from the navigation pane, and then choose Create gateway.

3. On the Select gateway type page, choose Tape gateway, and then choose Next.

Choosing a Host Platform and Downloading the VM

If you create your gateway on-premises, you download and deploy the gateway VM and then activate the gateway. If you create your gateway on an Amazon EC2 instance, you launch an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) that contains the gateway VM image and then activate the gateway. For information about supported host platforms, see Supported Hypervisors and Host Requirements (p. 16).

Note
You can run only file, cached volume, and tape gateways on an Amazon EC2 instance.

To select a host platform and download the VM

1. On the Select host platform page, choose the virtualization platform that you want to run your gateway on.

   ![Select host platform](image)

2. Choose Download image next to your virtualization platform to download a .zip file that contains the .ova file for your virtualization platform.

   Note
   The .zip file is over 500 MB in size and might take some time to download, depending on your network connection.
For EC2, you create an instance from the provided AMI.

3. Deploy the downloaded image to your hypervisor. You need to add at least one local disk for your cache and one local disk for your upload buffer during the deployment. A file gateway requires only one local disk for a cache. For information about local disk requirements, see Hardware and Storage Requirements (p. 10).

If you choose VMware, do the following:

- Store your disk in **Thick provisioned format**. When you use thick provisioning, the disk storage is allocated immediately, resulting in better performance. In contrast, thin provisioning allocates storage on demand. On-demand allocation can affect the normal functioning of AWS Storage Gateway. For Storage Gateway to function properly, the VM disks must be stored in thick-provisioned format.
- Configure your gateway VM to use paravirtualized disk controllers. For more information, see Configuring the AWS Storage Gateway VM to Use Paravirtualized Disk Controllers (p. 246).

If you choose Microsoft Hyper-V, do the following:

- Configure the disk type as **Fixed size**. When you use fixed-size provisioning, the disk storage is allocated immediately, resulting in better performance. If you don't use fixed-size provisioning, the storage is allocated on demand. On-demand allocation can affect the functioning of AWS Storage Gateway. For Storage Gateway to function properly, the VM disks must be stored in fixed-size provisioned format.
- When allocating disks, choose **virtual hard disk (.vhd) file**. Storage Gateway supports the .vhdx file type. By using this file type, you can create larger virtual disks than with other file types. If you create a .vhdx type virtual disk, make sure that the size of the virtual disks that you create doesn't exceed the recommended disk size for your gateway.

For both VMware and Microsoft Hyper-V, synchronizing the VM time with the host time is required for successful gateway activation. Make sure that your host clock is set to the correct time and synchronize it with a Network Time Protocol (NTP) server.

For information about deploying your gateway to an Amazon EC2 host, see Deploy your gateway to an Amazon EC2 host (p. 248).

**Connecting to Your Gateway**

To connect to your gateway, the first step is to get the IP address of your gateway VM. You use this IP address to activate your gateway. For gateways deployed and activated on an on-premises host, you can get the IP address from your gateway VM local console or your hypervisor client. For gateways deployed and activated on an Amazon EC2 instance, you can get the IP address from the Amazon EC2 console.

The activation process associates your gateway with your AWS account. Your gateway VM must be running for activation to succeed.

Make sure that you connect to the correct gateway type. The .ova files and AMIs for the gateway types are different and are not interchangeable.

**To get the IP address for your gateway VM from the local console**

1. Log on to your gateway VM local console. For detailed instructions, see the following:
   - VMware ESXi—Accessing the Gateway Local Console with VMware ESXi (p. 165).
   - Microsoft Hyper-V—Access the Gateway Local Console with Microsoft Hyper-V (p. 170).
2. Get the IP address from the top of the menu page, and make note of it for later use.

**To get the IP address from an EC2 instance**

1. Open the Amazon EC2 console at https://console.aws.amazon.com/ec2/.
2. In the navigation pane, choose **Instances**, and then choose the EC2 instance.
3. Choose the **Description** tab at the bottom, and then note the IP address. You use this IP address to activate the gateway.

For activation, you can use the public or private IP address assigned to a gateway. You must be able to reach the IP address that you use from the browser from which you perform the activation. In this walkthrough, we use the public IP address to activate the gateway.

**To associate your gateway with your AWS account**

1. If the **Connect to gateway** page isn't already open, open the console and navigate to that page.
2. Type the IP address of your gateway for **IP address**, and then choose **Connect gateway**.

For detailed information about how to get a gateway IP address, see Connecting to Your Gateway (p. 288).

**Activating Your Gateway**

When your gateway VM is deployed and running, you can configure your gateway settings and activate your gateway. If activation fails, check that the IP address you entered is correct. If the IP address is correct, confirm that your network is configured to let your browser access the gateway VM. For more information on troubleshooting, see Troubleshooting On-Premises Gateway Issues (p. 220) or Troubleshooting Amazon EC2 Gateway Issues (p. 226).

**To configure your gateway settings**

1. Type the information listed on the activation page to configure your gateway settings and complete the activation process.

   The following screenshot shows the activation page for tape gateways.
• **AWS Region** specifies the AWS Region where your gateway will be created and your data stored.

• **Gateway time zone** specifies the time zone to use for your gateway.

• **Gateway name** identifies your gateway. You use this name to manage your gateway in the console; you can change it after the gateway is activated. This name must be unique to your account.

• **Backup application** specifies the backup application you want to use. Storage Gateway automatically chooses a compatible medium changer for your backup application. If your backup application is not listed, choose **Other** and choose a medium changer type.

**Medium changer type** specifies the type of medium changer to use for your backup application.

The type of medium changer you choose depends on the backup application you plan to use. The following table lists third-party backup applications that have been tested and found to be compatible with tape gateways. This table includes the medium changer type recommended for each backup application.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Backup Application</th>
<th>Medium Changer Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arcserve Backup</td>
<td>AWS-Gateway-VTL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Backup Application | Medium Changer Type
---|---
Backup Exec 2012 | STK-L700
Backup Exec 2014 | AWS-Gateway-VTL
Backup Exec 15 | AWS-Gateway-VTL
Backup Exec 16 | AWS-Gateway-VTL
Commvault V11 | STK-L700
Quest NetVault Backup 10.0 | STK-L700
Dell EMC NetWorker V8.x or V9.x | AWS-Gateway-VTL
Micro Focus (HPE) Data Protector 9.x | AWS-Gateway-VTL
Microsoft System Center 2012 R2 Data Protection Manager | STK-L700
Symantec NetBackup Version 7.x | AWS-Gateway-VTL
Veeam Backup & Replication V7 | STK-L700
Veeam Backup & Replication V8 | STK-L700
Veeam Backup & Replication V9 Update 2 or later | AWS-Gateway-VTL

**Note**
Data Protection Manager doesn't display barcodes for virtual tapes created in AWS Storage Gateway.

---

**Important**
We highly recommend that you choose the medium changer that's listed for your backup application. Other medium changers might not function properly. You can choose a different medium changer after the gateway is activated. For more information, see Selecting a Medium Changer After Gateway Activation (p. 256).

- **Tape drive type** specifies the type of tape drive used by this gateway.

2. Choose **Activate gateway**.

When the gateway is successfully activated, the AWS Storage Gateway console displays the **Configure local storage** page.

If activation is not successful, see Troubleshooting Your Gateway (p. 220) for possible solutions.

### Configuring Local Disks

When you deployed the VM, you allocated local disks for your gateway. Now you configure your gateway to use these disks.

**Note**
If you allocate local disks on a VMware host, make sure to configure the disks to use paravirtualized disk controllers.
When adding a cache or upload buffer to an existing gateway, make sure to create new disks in your host (hypervisor or Amazon EC2 instance). Don't change the size of existing disks if the disks have been previously allocated as either a cache or upload buffer.

**To configure local disks**

1. On the **Configure local disks** page, identify the disks you allocated and decide which ones you want to use for an upload buffer and cached storage. For information about disk size limits, see [Configuration and Performance Limits (p. 294)](#).

   ![Gateway is now active](image)

   **Configure local storage**

   Specify the local disks you've added to your VM for your gateway to use as its upload buffer and cache storage.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disk ID</th>
<th>Capacity</th>
<th>Allocation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>xen-vbd-2080</td>
<td>150 GiB</td>
<td>Upload buffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xen-vbd-2064</td>
<td>200 GiB</td>
<td>Cache</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. In the **Allocation** column next to your upload buffer disk, choose **Upload Buffer**.

3. Choose **Cache** for the disk you want to configure as cache storage.

   If you don't see your disks, choose **Refresh**.

4. Choose **Save and continue** to save your configuration settings.

**Next Step**

Creating Tapes (p. 48)

**Creating Tapes**

**Note**

You are charged only for the amount of data you write to the tape, not the tape capacity.

**To create virtual tapes**

1. In the navigation pane, choose the **Gateways** tab.

2. Choose **Create tapes** to open the **Create tape** dialog box.

3. For **Gateway**, choose a gateway. The tape is created for this gateway.

4. For **Number of tapes**, choose the number of tapes you want to create. For more information about tape limits, see [AWS Storage Gateway Limits (p. 292)](#).
5. For **Capacity**, type the size of the virtual tape you want to create. Tapes must be larger than 100 GiB. For information about capacity limits, see *AWS Storage Gateway Limits* (p. 292).

6. For **Barcode prefix**, type the prefix you want to prepend to the barcode of your virtual tapes.

   **Note**
   Virtual tapes are uniquely identified by a barcode. You can add a prefix to the barcode. The prefix is optional, but you can use it to help identify your virtual tapes. The prefix must be uppercase letters (A–Z) and must be one to four characters long.

7. Choose **Create tapes**.

8. In the navigation pane, choose the **Tapes** tab to see your tapes.

   ![Image of Tapes Tab](image)

   The status of the virtual tapes is initially set to **CREATING** when the virtual tapes are being created. After the tapes are created, their status changes to **AVAILABLE**. For more information, see *Managing Your Tape Gateway* (p. 120).

**Next Step**

**Using Your Tape Gateway**

Following, you can find instructions about how to use your tape gateway.

**Topics**

- Connecting Your VTL Devices (p. 49)
- Testing Your Gateway Setup (p. 51)
- Where Do I Go from Here? (p. 90)

**Connecting Your VTL Devices**

Following, you can find instructions about how to connect your virtual tape library (VTL) devices to your Microsoft Windows or Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) client.

**Topics**

- Connecting to a Microsoft Windows Client (p. 50)
- Connecting to a Linux Client (p. 50)
Connecting to a Microsoft Windows Client

The following procedure shows a summary of the steps that you follow to connect to a Windows client.

To connect your VTL devices to a Windows client

1. Start iscsicpl.exe.
   
   **Note**
   
   You must have administrator rights on the client computer to run the iSCSI initiator.
2. Start the Microsoft iSCSI initiator service.
3. In the *iSCSI Initiator Properties* dialog box, choose the Discovery tab, and then choose the Discover Portal button.
4. Provide the IP address of your tape gateway for **IP address or DNS name**.
5. Choose the Targets tab, and then choose Refresh. All 10 tape drives and the medium changer appear in the Discovered targets box. The status for the targets is Inactive.
6. Choose the first device and connect it. You connect the devices one at a time.
7. Connect all of the targets.

On a Windows client, the driver provider for the tape drive must be Microsoft. Use the following procedure to verify the driver provider, and update the driver and provider if necessary:

To verify and update the driver and provider

1. On your Windows client, start Device Manager.
2. Expand Tape drives, open the context (right-click) menu for a tape drive, and choose Properties.
3. In the Driver tab of the Device Properties dialog box, verify Driver Provider is Microsoft.
4. If Driver Provider is not Microsoft, set the value as follows:
   a. Choose Update Driver.
   b. In the Update Driver Software dialog box, choose Browse my computer for driver software.
   c. In the Update Driver Software dialog box, choose Let me pick from a list of device drivers on my computer.
   d. Choose LTO Tape drive and choose Next.
5. Choose Close to close the Update Driver Software window, and verify that the Driver Provider value is now set to Microsoft.
6. Repeat the steps to update driver and provider for all the tape drives.

Connecting to a Linux Client

The following procedure shows a summary of the steps that you follow to connect to an RHEL client.

To connect a Linux client to VTL devices

1. Install the iscsi-initiator-utils RPM package.
   
   You can use the following command to install the package.
   
   ```bash
   sudo yum install iscsi-initiator-utils
   ```
2. Make sure that the iSCSI daemon is running.
   
   For RHEL 5 or 6, use the following command.
sudo /etc/init.d/iscsi status

For RHEL 7, use the following command.

sudo service iscsid status

3. Discover the volume or VTL device targets defined for a gateway. Use the following discovery command.

sudo /sbin/iscsiadm --mode discovery --type sendtargets --portal [GATEWAY_IP]:3260

The output of the discovery command looks like the following example output.

For volume gateways: [GATEWAY_IP]:3260, 1 iqn.1997-05.com.amazon:myvolume


4. Connect to a target.

Make sure to specify the correct [GATEWAY_IP] and IQN in the connect command.

Use the following command.


5. Verify that the volume is attached to the client machine (the initiator). To do so, use the following command.

ls -l /dev/disk/by-path

The output of the command should look like the following example output.


We highly recommend that after you set up your initiator you customize your iSCSI settings as discussed in Customizing Your Linux iSCSI Settings (p. 274).

Next Step

Testing Your Gateway Setup (p. 51)

Testing Your Gateway Setup

You test your tape gateway setup by performing the following tasks using your backup application:

1. Configure the backup application to detect your storage devices.

   **Note**
   To improve I/O performance, we recommend setting the block size of the tape drives in your backup application to 128 KB, 256 KB, or 512 KB. For more information, see Use a Larger Block Size for Tape Drives (p. 160).

2. Back up data to a tape.
3. Archive the tape.
4. Retrieve the tape from the archive.
5. Restore data from the tape.

To test your setup, use a compatible backup application, as described following:

- Testing Your Setup by Using Arcserve Backup r17.0 (p. 56)
- Testing Your Setup by Using Backup Exec (p. 52)
- Testing Your Setup by Using Commvault (p. 58)
- Testing Your Setup by Using Quest NetVault Backup (p. 62)
- Testing Your Setup by Using Dell EMC NetWorker (p. 65)
- Testing Your Setup by Using Micro Focus (HPE) Data Protector (p. 68)
- Testing Your Setup by Using Microsoft System Center 2012 R2 Data Protection Manager (p. 73)
- Testing Your Setup by Using Symantec NetBackup Version 7.x (p. 76)
- Testing Your Setup by Using Veeam Backup & Replication (p. 87)

For more information about compatible backup applications, see Supported Third-Party Backup Applications for a Tape Gateway (p. 17).

### Testing Your Setup by Using Backup Exec

You can back up your data to virtual tapes, archive the tapes, and manage your virtual tape library (VTL) devices by using Symantec Backup Exec. In this topic, you can find basic documentation needed to perform backup and restore operations using the following versions of Backup Exec:

- Backup Exec 2014
- Backup Exec 15
- Backup Exec 16

The procedure for using these versions of Backup Exec with a tape gateway is the same. For detailed information about how to use Backup Exec, see the How to Create Secure Backups with Backup Exec video on the Backup Exec website. For Backup Exec support information on hardware compatibility, see the Software Compatibility Lists (SCL), Hardware Compatibility Lists (HCL), and Administrator Guides for Backup Exec (all versions) on the Backup Exec website. For information about best practices, see Best Practices for using Symantec Backup products (NetBackup, Backup Exec) with the Amazon Web Services (Tape Gateway) on the Symantec website.

For more information about supported backup applications, see Supported Third-Party Backup Applications for a Tape Gateway (p. 17).

**Topics**

- Configuring Storage in Backup Exec (p. 52)
- Importing a Tape in Backup Exec (p. 53)
- Writing Data to a Tape in Backup Exec (p. 55)
- Archiving a Tape Using Backup Exec (p. 55)
- Restoring Data from a Tape Archived in Backup Exec (p. 55)
- Disabling a Tape Drive in Backup Exec (p. 56)

**Configuring Storage in Backup Exec**

After you have connected the virtual tape library (VTL) devices to the Windows client, you configure Backup Exec storage to recognize your devices. For information about how to connect VTL devices to the Windows client, see Connecting Your VTL Devices (p. 49).
To configure storage

1. Start the Backup Exec software, and then choose the yellow icon in top-left corner on the toolbar.
2. Choose Configuration and Settings, and then choose Backup Exec Services to open the Backup Exec Service Manager.

3. Choose Restart All Services. Backup Exec then recognizes the VTL devices (that is, the medium changer and tape drives). The restart process might take a few minutes.

   Note
   Tape Gateway provides 10 tape drives. However, your Backup Exec license agreement might require your backup application to work with fewer than 10 tape drives. In that case, you must disable tape drives in the Backup Exec robotic library to leave only the number of tape drives allowed by your license agreement enabled. For instructions, see Disabling a Tape Drive in Backup Exec (p. 56).

4. After the restart is completed, close the Backup Exec Service Manager.

Importing a Tape in Backup Exec

You are now ready to import a tape from your gateway into a slot.

1. Choose the Storage tab, and then expand the Robotic library tree to display the VTL devices.

   Important
   Symantec Backup Exec software requires the Tape Gateway medium changer type. If the medium changer type listed under Robotic library is not Tape Gateway, you must change it before you configure storage in the backup application. For information about how to select a different medium changer type, see Selecting a Medium Changer After Gateway Activation (p. 256).
2. Choose the **Slots** icon to display all slots.

   **Note**
   When you import tapes into the robotic library, the tapes are stored in slots instead of tape drives. Therefore, the tape drives might have a message that indicates there is no media in the drives (No media). When you initiate a backup or restore job, the tapes are moved into the tape drives.
   You must have tapes available in your gateway tape library to import a tape into a storage slot. For instructions on how to create tapes, see Adding Virtual Tapes (p. 120).

3. Open the context (right-click) menu for an empty slot, choose **Import**, and then choose **Import media now**. In the following screenshot, slot number 3 is empty. You can select more than one slot and import multiple tapes in a single import operation.

4. In the **Media Request** window that appears, choose **View details**.

5. In the **Action Alert: Media Intervention** window, choose **Respond OK** to insert the media into the slot.
The tape appears in the slot you selected.

**Note**
Tapes that are imported include empty tapes and tapes that have been retrieved from the archive to the gateway.

**Writing Data to a Tape in Backup Exec**

You write data to a tape gateway virtual tape by using the same procedure and backup policies you do with physical tapes. For detailed information, see the *Backup Exec Administrative Guide* in the documentation section in the Backup Exec software.

**Archiving a Tape Using Backup Exec**

When you archive a tape, tape gateway moves the tape from your gateway’s virtual tape library (VTL) to the offline storage. You begin tape archival by exporting the tape using your Backup Exec software.

**To archive your tape**

1. Choose the **Storage** menu, choose **Slots**, open the context (right-click) menu for the slot you want to export the tape from, choose **Export media**, and then choose **Export media now**. You can select more than one slot and export multiple tapes in a single export operation.

   ![Image of Storage Gateway interface](image)

2. In the **Media Request** pop-up window, choose **View details**, and then choose **Respond OK** in the **Alert: Media Intervention** window.

   In the AWS Storage Gateway console, you can verify the status of the tape you are archiving. It might take some time to finish uploading data to AWS. During this time, the exported tape is listed in the tape gateway’s VTL with the status **IN TRANSIT TO VTS**. When the upload is completed and the archiving process begins, the status changes to **ARCHIVING**. When data archiving has completed, the exported tape is no longer listed in the VTL.

3. Choose your gateway, and then choose **VTL Tape Cartridges** and verify that the virtual tape is no longer listed in your gateway.

4. On the Navigation pane of the AWS Storage Gateway console, choose **Tapes**. Verify that your tapes status is **ARCHIVED**.

**Restoring Data from a Tape Archived in Backup Exec**

Restoring your archived data is a two-step process.

**To restore data from an archived tape**

1. Retrieve the archived tape to a tape gateway. For instructions, see *Retrieving Archived Tapes* (p. 121).

2. Use Backup Exec to restore the data. This process is the same as restoring data from physical tapes. For instructions, see the *Backup Exec Administrative Guide* in the documentation section in the Backup Exec software.
Disabling a Tape Drive in Backup Exec

A tape gateway provides 10 tape drives, but you might decide to use fewer tape drives. In that case, you disable the tape drives you don’t use.

1. Open Backup Exec, and choose the **Storage** tab.
2. In the **Robotic library** tree, open the context (right-click) menu for the tape drive you want to disable, and then choose **Disable**.

Next Step

Cleaning Up Resources You Don’t Need (p. 90)

Testing Your Setup by Using Arcserve Backup r17.0

You can back up your data to virtual tapes, archive the tapes, and manage your virtual tape library (VTL) devices by using Arcserve Backup r17.0. In this topic, you can find basic documentation to configure Arcserve Backup with a tape gateway and perform a backup and restore operation. For detailed information about to use Arcserve Backup r17.0, see Arcserve Backup r17 documentation in the Arcserve Administration Guide.

The following screenshot shows the Arcserve menus.

Topics
- Configuring Arcserve to Work with VTL Devices (p. 56)
- Loading Tapes into a Media Pool (p. 57)
- Backing Up Data to a Tape (p. 57)
- Archiving a Tape (p. 57)
- Restoring Data from a Tape (p. 58)

Configuring Arcserve to Work with VTL Devices

After you have connected your virtual tape library (VTL) devices to your client, you scan for your devices.

**To scan for VTL devices**

1. In the Arcserve Backup Manager, choose the **Utilities** menu.
2. Choose **Media Assure and Scan**.
Loading Tapes into a Media Pool

When the Arcserve software connects to your gateway and your tapes become available, Arcserve automatically loads your tapes. If your gateway is not found in the Arcserve software, try restarting the tape engine in Arcserve.

To restart the tape engine

1. Choose Quick Start, choose Administration, and then choose Device.
2. On the navigation menu, open the context (right-click) menu for your gateway and choose an import/export slot.
3. Choose Quick Import and assign your tape to an empty slot.
4. Open the context (right-click) menu for your gateway and choose Inventory/Offline Slots.
5. Choose Quick Inventory to retrieve media information from the database.

If you add a new tape, you need to scan your gateway for the new tape to have it appear in Arcserve. If the new tapes don't appear, you must import the tapes.

To import tapes

1. Choose the Quick Start menu, choose Back up, and then choose Destination tap.
2. Choose your gateway, open the context (right-click) menu for one tape, and then choose Import/Export Slot.
3. Open the context (right-click) menu for each new tape and choose Inventory.
4. Open the context (right-click) menu for each new tape and choose Format.

Each tape's barcode now appears in your Storage Gateway console, and each tape is ready to use.

Backing Up Data to a Tape

When your tapes have been loaded into Arcserve, you can back up data. The backup process is the same as backing up physical tapes.

To back up data to a tape

1. From the Quick Start menu, open the restore a backup session.
2. Choose the Source tab, and then choose the file system or database system that you want to back up.
3. Choose the Schedule tab and choose the repeat method you want to use.
4. Choose the Destination tab and then choose the tape you want to use. If the data you are backing up is larger than the tape can hold, Arcserve prompts you to mount a new tape.
5. Choose Submit to back up your data.

Archiving a Tape

When you archive a tape, your tape gateway moves the tape from the tape library to the offline storage. Before you eject and archive a tape, you might want to check the content on it.

To archive a tape

1. From the Quick Start menu, open the restore a backup session.
2. Choose the Source tab, and then choose the file system or database system you want to back up.
3. Choose the Schedule tab and choose the repeat method you want to use.
4. Choose your gateway, open the context (right-click) menu for one tape, and then choose **Import/Export Slot**.
5. Assign a mail slot to load the tape. The status in the Storage Gateway console changes to **Archive**.
   The archive process might take some time.

**Restoring Data from a Tape**

Restoring your archived data is a two-step process.

**To restore data from an archived tape**

1. Retrieve the archived tape to a tape gateway. For instructions, see [Retrieving Archived Tapes](p. 121).
2. Use Arcserve to restore the data. This process is the same as restoring data from physical tapes. For instructions, see the [Arcserve Backup r17 documentation](#).

To restore data from a tape, use the following procedure.

**To restore data from a tape**

1. From the **Quick Start** menu, open the restore a restore session.
2. Choose the **Source** tab, and then choose the file system or database system you want to restore.
3. Choose the **Destination** tab and accept the default settings.
4. Choose the **Schedule** tab, choose the repeat method that you want to use, and then choose **Submit**.

**Next Step**

[Cleaning Up Resources You Don't Need](p. 90)

**Testing Your Setup by Using Commvault**

You can back up your data to virtual tapes, archive the tapes, and manage your virtual tape library (VTL) devices by using Commvault version 11. In this topic, you can find basic documentation on how to configure the Commvault backup application for a tape gateway, perform a backup archive, and retrieve your data from archived tapes. For detailed information about how to use Commvault, see the [Commvault documentation](#) on the Commvault website.

**Topics**

- Configuring Commvault to Work with VTL Devices (p. 58)
- Creating a Storage Policy and a Subclient (p. 60)
- Backing Up Data to a Tape in Commvault (p. 61)
- Archiving a Tape in Commvault (p. 61)
- Restoring Data from a Tape (p. 61)

**Configuring Commvault to Work with VTL Devices**

After you connect the VTL devices to the Windows client, you configure Commvault to recognize them. For information about how to connect VTL devices to the Windows client, see [Connecting Your VTL Devices to a Windows client](p. 266).

The Commvault backup application doesn't automatically recognize VTL devices. You must manually add devices to expose them to the Commvault backup application and then discover the devices.
To configure Commvault

1. In the CommCell console main menu, choose Storage, and then choose Expert Storage Configuration to open the Select MediaAgents dialog box.

2. Choose the available media agent you want to use, choose Add, and then choose OK.

3. In the Expert Storage Configuration dialog box, choose Start, and then choose Detect/Configure Devices.

4. Leave the Device Type options selected, choose Exhaustive Detection, and then choose OK.

5. In the Confirm Exhaustive Detection confirmation box, choose Yes.

6. In the Device Selection dialog box, choose your library and all its drives, and then choose OK. Wait for your devices to be detected, and then choose Close to close the log report.

7. Right-click your library, choose Configure, and then choose Yes. Close the configuration dialog box.

8. In the Does this library have a barcode reader? dialog box, choose Yes, and then for device type, choose IBM ULTRIUM V5.

9. In the CommCell browser, choose Storage Resources, and then choose Libraries to see your tape library.
10. To see your tapes in your library, open the context (right-click) menu for your library, and then choose **Discover Media**, **Media location**, **Media Library**.

11. To mount your tapes, open the context (right-click) menu for your media, and then choose **Load**.

### Creating a Storage Policy and a Subclient

Every backup and restore job is associated with a storage policy and a subclient policy.

A storage policy maps the original location of the data to your media.

**To create a storage policy**

1. In the CommCell browser, choose **Policies**.
2. Open the context (right-click) menu for **Storage Policies**, and then choose **New Storage Policy**.
3. In the Create Storage Policy wizard, choose **Data Protection and Archiving**, and then choose **Next**.
4. Type a name for **Storage Policy Name**, and then choose **Incremental Storage Policy**. To associate this storage policy with incremental loads, choose one of the options. Otherwise, leave the options unchecked, and then choose **Next**.
5. In the **Do you want to Use Global Deduplication Policy?** dialog box, choose your **Deduplication** preference, and then choose **Next**.
6. From **Library for Primary Copy**, choose your VTL library, and then choose **Next**.
7. Verify that your media agent settings are correct, and then choose **Next**.
8. Verify that your scratch pool settings are correct, and then choose **Next**.
9. Configure your retention policies in **iData Agent Backup data**, and then choose **Next**.
10. Review the encryption settings, and then choose **Next**.
11. To see your storage policy, choose **Storage Policies**.
You create a subclient policy and associate it with your storage policy. A subclient policy enables you to configure similar file system clients from a central template, so that you don't have to set up many similar file systems manually.

**To create a subclient policy**

1. In the CommCell browser, choose **Client Computers**, and then choose your client computer. Choose **File System**, and then choose **defaultBackupSet**.
2. Right-click **defaultBackupSet**, choose **All Tasks**, and then choose **New Subclient**.
3. In the **Subclient** properties box, type a name in **SubClient Name**, and then choose **OK**.
4. Choose **Browse**, navigate to the files that you want to back up, choose **Add**, and then close the dialog box.
5. In the **Subclient** property box, choose the **Storage Device** tab, choose a storage policy from **Storage policy**, and then choose **OK**.
6. In the **Backup Schedule** window that appears, associate the new subclient with a backup schedule.
7. Choose **Do Not Schedule** for one time or on-demand backups, and then choose **OK**.

You should now see your subclient in the **defaultBackupSet** tab.

**Backing Up Data to a Tape in Commvault**

You create a backup job and write data to a virtual tape by using the same procedures you use with physical tapes. For detailed information about how to back up data, see the Commvault documentation.

**Archiving a Tape in Commvault**

You start the archiving process by ejecting the tape. When you archive a tape, tape gateway moves the tape from the tape library to offline storage. Before you eject and archive a tape, you might want to first check the content on the tape.

**To archive a tape**

1. In the CommCell browser, choose **Storage Resources, Libraries**, and then choose **Your library**. Choose **Media By Location**, and then choose **Media In Library**.
2. Right-click the tape you want to archive, choose **All Tasks**, choose **Export**, and then choose **OK**.

**Restoring Data from a Tape**

You can restore data from a tape that has never been archived and retrieved, or from a tape that has been archived and retrieved. For tapes that have never been archived and retrieved (nonretrieved tapes), you have two options to restore the data:

- Restore by subclient
- Restore by job ID

**To restore data from a nonretrieved tape by subclient**

1. In the CommCell browser, choose **Client Computers**, and then choose your client computer. Choose **File System**, and then choose **defaultBackupSet**.
2. Open the context (right-click) menu for your subclient, choose **Browse and Restore**, and then choose **View Content**.
3. Choose the files you want to restore, and then choose **Recover All Selected**.
4. Choose **Home**, and then choose **Job Controller** to monitor the status of your restore job.
To restore data from a nonretrieved tape by job ID

1. In the CommCell browser, choose Client Computers, and then choose your client computer. Right-click File System, choose View, and then choose Backup History.
2. In the Backup Type category, choose the type of backup jobs you want, and then choose OK. A tab with the history of backup jobs appears.
3. Find the Job ID you want to restore, right-click it, and then choose Browse and Restore.
4. In the Browse and Restore Options dialog box, choose View Content.
5. Choose the files that you want to restore, and then choose Recover All Selected.
6. Choose Home, and then choose Job Controller to monitor the status of your restore job.

To restore data from an archived and retrieved tape

1. In the CommCell browser, choose Storage Resources, choose Libraries, and then choose Your library. Choose Media By Location, and then choose Media In Library.
2. Right-click the retrieved tape, choose All Tasks, and then choose Catalog.
3. In the Catalog Media dialog box, choose Catalog only, and then choose OK.
4. Choose CommCell Home, and then choose Job Controller to monitor the status of your restore job.
5. After the job succeeds, open the context (right-click) menu for your tape, choose View, and then choose View Catalog Contents. Take note of the Job ID value for use later.
6. Choose Recatalog/Merge. Make sure that Merge only is chosen in the Catalog Media dialog box.
7. Choose Home, and then choose Job Controller to monitor the status of your restore job.
8. After the job succeeds, choose CommCell Home, choose Control Panel, and then choose Browse/Search/Recovery.
9. Choose Show aged data during browse and recovery, choose OK, and then close the Control Panel.
10. In the CommCell browser, right-click Client Computers, and then choose your client computer. Choose View, and then choose Job History.
11. In the Job History Filter dialog box, choose Advanced.
12. Choose Include Aged Data, and then choose OK.
13. In the Job History dialog box, choose OK to open the history of jobs tab.
14. Find the job that you want to restore, open the context (right-click) menu for it, and then choose Browse and Restore.
15. In the Browse and Restore dialog box, choose View Content.
16. Choose the files that you want to restore, and then choose Recover All Selected.
17. Choose Home, and then choose Job Controller to monitor the status of your restore job.

Testing Your Setup by Using Quest NetVault Backup

You can back up your data to virtual tapes, archive the tapes, and manage your virtual tape library (VTL) devices by using Quest (formerly Dell) NetVault Backup version 10.0. In this topic, you can find basic documentation on how to configure the Quest NetVault Backup application for a tape gateway and perform a backup and restore operation.

For additional setup information, see Backing up to Amazon AWS with Quest NetVault Backup on the Quest (formerly Dell) website. For detailed information about how to use the Quest NetVault Backup application, see the Quest NetVault Backup 10.0.1 – Administration Guide. For more information about compatible backup applications, see Supported Third-Party Backup Applications for a Tape Gateway (p. 17).

Topics
Configuring Quest NetVault Backup to Work with VTL Devices

After you have connected the virtual tape library (VTL) devices to the Windows client, you configure Quest NetVault Backup to recognize your devices. For information about how to connect VTL devices to the Windows client, see Connecting Your VTL Devices (p. 49).

The Quest NetVault Backup application doesn't automatically recognize tape gateway devices. You must manually add the devices to expose them to the Quest NetVault Backup application and then discover the VTL devices.

Adding VTL Devices

To add the VTL devices

1. In Quest NetVault Backup, choose Manage Devices in the Configuration tab.
2. On the Manage Devices page, choose Add Devices.
3. In the Add Storage Wizard, choose Tape library / media changer, and then choose Next.
4. On the next page, choose the client machine that is physically attached to the library and choose Next to scan for devices.
5. If devices are found, they are displayed. In this case, your medium changer is displayed in the device box.
6. Choose your medium changer and choose Next. Detailed information about the device is displayed in the wizard.
7. On the Add Tapes to Bays page, choose Scan For Devices, choose your client machine, and then choose Next.

All your drives are displayed on the page. Quest NetVault Backup displays the 10 bays to which you can add your drives. The bays are displayed one at a time.
8. Choose the drive you want to add to the bay that is displayed, and then choose **Next**.

   **Important**
   When you add a drive to a bay, the drive and bay numbers must match. For example, if bay 1 is displayed, you must add drive 1. If a drive is not connected, leave its matching bay empty.

9. When your client machine appears, choose it, and then choose **Next**. The client machine can appear multiple times.

10. When the drives are displayed, repeat steps 7 through 9 to add all the drives to the bays.

11. In the **Configuration** tab, choose **Manage devices** and on the **Manage Devices** page, expand your medium changer to see the devices that you added.

**Backing Up Data to a Tape in the Quest NetVault Backup**

You create a backup job and write data to a virtual tape by using the same procedures you do with physical tapes. For detailed information about how to back up data, see the Quest NetVault Backup documentation.

**Archiving a Tape by Using the Quest NetVault Backup**

When you archive a tape, a tape gateway ejects the tape from the tape drive to the storage slot. It then exports the tape from the slot to the archive by using your backup application—that is, the Quest NetVault Backup.

**To archive a tape in Quest NetVault Backup**

1. In the Quest NetVault Backup Configuration tab, choose and expand your medium changer to see your tapes.

2. On the **Slots** row, choose the settings icon to open the **Slots Browser** for the medium changer.

3. In the slots, locate the tape you want to archive, choose it, and then choose **Export**.
Restoring Data from a Tape Archived in Quest NetVault Backup

Restoring your archived data is a two-step process.

To restore data from an archived tape

1. Retrieve the archived tape from archive to a tape gateway. For instructions, see Retrieving Archived Tapes (p. 121).
2. Use the Quest NetVault Backup application to restore the data. You do this by creating a restoring a folder file, as you do when restoring data from physical tapes. For instructions, see Quest NetVault Backup 10.0.1 – Administration Guide (Creating a restore job) in the Quest NetVault Backup documentation.

Next Step

Cleaning Up Resources You Don't Need (p. 90)

Testing Your Setup by Using Dell EMC NetWorker

You can back up your data to virtual tapes, archive the tapes and manage your virtual tape library (VTL) devices by using Dell EMC NetWorker version 8.x or 9.x. In this topic, you can find basic documentation on how to configure the Dell EMC NetWorker software to work with a tape gateway and perform a backup, including how to configure storage devices, write data to a tape, archive a tape and restore data from a tape. This documentation uses the Dell NetWorker V9.x as an example.

For detailed information about how to install and use the Dell EMC NetWorker software, see the EMC NetWorker Administration Guide.

For more information about compatible backup applications, see Supported Third-Party Backup Applications for a Tape Gateway (p. 17).

Topics

- Configuring Dell EMC NetWorker to Work with VTL Devices (p. 66)
- Enabling Import of WORM Tapes into Dell EMC NetWorker (p. 67)
- Backing Up Data to a Tape in Dell EMC NetWorker (p. 67)
- Archiving a Tape in Dell EMC NetWorker (p. 67)
- Restoring Data from an Archived Tape in Dell EMC NetWorker (p. 68)
Configuring Dell EMC NetWorker to Work with VTL Devices

After you have connected your virtual tape library (VTL) devices to your Microsoft Windows client, you configure Dell EMC NetWorker to recognize your devices. For information about how to connect VTL devices to the Windows client, see Connecting Your VTL Devices (p. 49).

Dell EMC NetWorker doesn't automatically recognize tape gateway devices. To expose your VTL devices to the NetWorker software and get the software to discover them, you manually configure the software. Following, we assume that you have correctly installed the Dell EMC NetWorker software and that you are familiar with the Dell EMC NetWorker Management Console. For more information about the Dell EMC NetWorker Management Console, see the NetWorker Management Console interface section of the EMC NetWorker Administration Guide.

The following screenshot shows the Dell EMC NetWorker V9.x Management Console.

To configure the Dell EMC NetWorker software for VTL devices

1. Start the Dell EMC NetWorker Management Console application, choose Enterprise from the menu, and then choose localhost from the left pane.
2. Open the context (right-click) menu for localhost, and then choose Launch Application.
3. Choose the Devices tab, open the context (right-click) menu for Libraries, and then choose Scan for Devices.
4. In the Scan for Devices wizard, choose Start Scan, and then choose OK from the dialog box that appears.
5. Expand the Libraries folder tree to see all your libraries. This process might take a few seconds to load the devices into the library.
6. Open the context (right-click) menu for your library, and then choose Configure All Libraries.
7. In the Provide General Configuration Information box, choose the configuration settings you want, and then choose Next.
8. In the Select Target Storage Nodes box, verify that a storage node is selected, and then choose Start Configuration. The selected storage node will have Configure selected.
10. Choose your library to see your tapes in the left pane and the corresponding empty volume slots list in the right pane. In this screenshot, the AWS@3.0.0 library is selected.
11. In the volume list, select the volumes you want to enable (selected volumes are highlighted), open the context (right-click) menu for the selected volumes, and then choose Deposit. This action moves the tape from the I/E slot into the volume slot.
12. In the dialog box that appears, choose Yes, and then in the Load the Cartridges into dialog box, choose Yes.
13. If you don't have any more tapes to deposit, choose No or Ignore. Otherwise, choose Yes to deposit additional tapes.
Enabling Import of WORM Tapes into Dell EMC NetWorker

You are now ready to import tapes from your tape gateway into the Dell EMC NetWorker library.

The virtual tapes are write once read many (WORM) tapes, but Dell EMC NetWorker expects non-WORM tapes. For Dell EMC NetWorker to work with your virtual tapes, you must enable import of tapes into non-WORM media pools.

To enable import of WORM tapes into non-WORM media pools

1. On NetWorker Console, choose Media, open the context (right-click) menu for localhost, and then choose Properties.
2. In the NetWorker Server Properties window, choose the Configuration tab.
3. In the Worm tape handling section, clear the WORM tapes only in WORM pools box, and then choose OK.

Backing Up Data to a Tape in Dell EMC NetWorker

Backing up data to a tape is a two-step process.

1. Label the tapes you want to back up your data to, create the target media pool, and add the tapes to the pool.

   You create a media pool and write data to a virtual tape by using the same procedures you do with physical tapes. For detailed information, see the Backing Up Data section of the Dell EMC NetWorker Administration Guide.

2. Write data to the tape. You back up data by using the Dell EMC NetWorker User application instead of the Dell EMC NetWorker Management Console. The Dell EMC NetWorker User application installs as part of the NetWorker installation.

   Note
   You use the Dell EMC NetWorker User application to perform backups, but you view the status of your backup and restore jobs in the EMC Management Console. To view status, choose the Devices menu and view the status in the Log window.

Archiving a Tape in Dell EMC NetWorker

When you archive a tape, tape gateway moves the tape from the Dell EMC NetWorker tape library to the offline storage. You begin tape archival by ejecting a tape from the tape drive to the storage slot. You then withdraw the tape from the slot to the archive by using your backup application—that is, the Dell EMC NetWorker software.

To archive a tape by using Dell EMC NetWorker

1. On the Devices tab in the NetWorker Administration window, choose localhost or your EMC server, and then choose Libraries.
2. Choose the library you imported from your virtual tape library.
3. From the list of tapes that you have written data to, open the context (right-click) menu for the tape you want to archive, and then choose Eject/Withdraw.
4. In the confirmation box that appears, choose OK.

The archiving process can take some time to complete. The initial status of the tape is shown as IN TRANSIT TO VTS. When archiving starts, the status changes to ARCHIVING. When archiving is completed, the tape is no longer listed in the VTL.
Restoring Data from an Archived Tape in Dell EMC NetWorker

Restoring your archived data is a two-step process:

1. Retrieve the archived tape to a tape gateway. For instructions, see Retrieving Archived Tapes (p. 121).
2. Use the Dell EMC NetWorker software to restore the data. You do this by creating a restoring a folder file, as you do when restoring data from physical tapes. For instructions, see the Using the NetWorker User program section of the EMC NetWorker Administration Guide.

Next Step

Cleaning Up Resources You Don’t Need (p. 90)

Testing Your Setup by Using Micro Focus (HPE) Data Protector

You can back up your data to virtual tapes, archive the tapes, and manage your virtual tape library (VTL) devices by using Micro Focus (HPE) Data Protector v9.x. In this topic, you can find basic documentation on how to configure the Micro Focus (HPE) Data Protector software for a tape gateway and perform a backup and restore operation. For detailed information about how to use the Micro Focus (HPE) Data Protector software, see the Hewlett Packard documentation. For more information about compatible backup applications, see Supported Third-Party Backup Applications for a Tape Gateway (p. 17).

Topics

- Configuring Micro Focus (HPE) Data Protector to Work with VTL Devices (p. 68)
- Preparing Virtual Tapes for Use with HPE Data Protector (p. 69)
- Loading Tapes into a Media Pool (p. 71)
- Backing Up Data to a Tape (p. 71)
- Archiving a Tape (p. 72)
- Restoring Data from a Tape (p. 72)

Configuring Micro Focus (HPE) Data Protector to Work with VTL Devices

After you have connected the virtual tape library (VTL) devices to the client, you configure Micro Focus (HPE) Data Protector to recognize your devices. For information about how to connect VTL devices to the client, see Connecting Your VTL Devices (p. 49).

The Micro Focus (HPE) Data Protector software doesn’t automatically recognize tape gateway devices. To have the software recognize these devices, manually add the devices and then discover the VTL devices, as described following.

To add the VTL devices

1. In the Micro Focus (HPE) Data Protector main window, choose the Devices & Media shelf in the list at top left.

   Open the context (right-click) menu for Devices, and choose Add Device.
2. On the Add Device tab, type a value for Device Name. For Device Type, choose SCSI Library, and then choose Next.

3. On the next screen, do the following:
   a. For SCSI address of the library robotic, select your specific address.
   b. For Select what action Data Protector should take if the drive is busy, choose "Abort" or your preferred action.
   c. Choose to enable these options:
      - Barcode reader support
      - Automatically discover changed SCSI address
      - SCSI Reserve/Release (robotic control)
   d. Leave Use barcode as medium label on initialization clear (unchecked), unless your system requires it.
   e. Choose Next to continue.

4. On the next screen, specify the slots that you want to use with HP Data Protector. Use a hyphen ("-"), between numbers to indicate a range of slots, for example 1–6. When you've specified slots to use, choose Next.

5. For the standard type of media used by the physical device, choose LTO_Ultrium, and then choose Finish to complete the setup.

Your tape library is now ready to use. To load tapes into it, see the next section.

Preparing Virtual Tapes for Use with HPE Data Protector

Before you can back up data to a virtual tape, you need to prepare the tape for use. Doing this involves the following actions:

- Load a virtual tape into a tape library
- Load the virtual tape into a slot
- Create a media pool
• Load the virtual tape into media pool

In the following sections, you can find steps to guide you through this process.

**Loading Virtual Tapes into a Tape Library**

Your tape library should now be listed under **Devices**. If you don't see it, press F5 to refresh the screen. When your library is listed, you can load virtual tapes into the library.

**To load virtual tapes into your tape library**

1. Choose the plus sign next to your tape library to display the nodes for robotics paths, drives, and slots.
2. Open the context (right-click) menu for **Drives**, choose **Add Drive**, type a name for your tape, and then choose **Next** to continue.
3. Choose the tape drive you want to add for **SCSI address of data drive**, choose **Automatically discover changed SCSI address**, and then choose **Next**.
4. On the following screen, choose **Advanced**. The **Advanced Options** pop-up screen appears.
   a. On the **Settings** tab, you should consider the following options:
      • **CRC Check** (to detect accidental data changes)
      • **Detect dirty drive** (to ensure the drive is clean before backup)
      • **SCSI Reserve/Release(drive)** (to avoid tape contention)
      For testing purposes, you can leave these options disabled (unchecked).
   b. On the **Sizes** tab, set the **Block size (kB)** to **Default (256)**.
   c. Choose **OK** to close the advanced options screen, and then choose **Next** to continue.
5. On the next screen, choose these options under **Device Policies**:
   • **Device may be used for restore**
   • **Device may be used as source device for object copy**
6. Choose **Finish** to finish adding your tape drive to your tape library.

**Loading Virtual Tapes into Slots**

Now that you have a tape drive in your tape library, you can load virtual tapes into slots.

**To load a tape into a slot**

1. In the tape library tree node, open the node labeled **Slots**. Each slot has a status represented by an icon:
   • A green tape means that a tape is already loaded into the slot.
   • A gray slot means that the slot is empty.
   • A cyan question mark means that the tape in that slot is not formatted.
2. For an empty slot, open the context (right-click) menu, and then choose **Enter**. If you have existing tapes, choose **Enter**. If you have existing tapes, choose one to load into that slot.

**Creating a Media Pool**

A **media pool** is a logical group used to organize your tapes. To set up tape backup, you create a media pool.
To create a media pool

1. In the Devices & Media shelf, open the tree node for Media, open the context (right-click) menu for the Pools node, and then choose Add Media Pool.
2. For Pool name, type a name.
3. For Media Type, choose LTO_Ultrium, and then choose Next.
4. On the following screen, accept the default values, and then choose Next.
5. Choose Finish to finish creating a media pool.

Loading Tapes into a Media Pool

Before you can back up data onto your tapes, you must load the tapes into the media pool that you created.

To load a virtual tape into a media pool

1. On your tape library tree node, choose the Slots node.
2. Choose a loaded tape, one that has a green icon showing a loaded tape. Open the context (right-click) menu and choose Format, and then choose Next.
3. Choose the media pool you created, and then choose Next.
4. For Medium Description, choose Use barcode, and then choose Next.
5. For Options, choose Force Operation, and then choose Finish.

You should now see your chosen slot change from a status of unassigned (gray) to a status of tape inserted (green). A series of messages appear to confirm that your media is initialized.

At this point, you should have everything configured to begin using your virtual tape library with HPE Data Protector. To double-check that this is the case, use the following procedure.

To verify that your tape library is configured for use

- Choose Drives, then open the context (right-click) menu for your drive, and choose Scan.

If your configuration is correct, a message confirms that your media was successfully scanned.

Back up Data to a Tape

When your tapes have been loaded into a media pool, you can back up data to them.

To back up data to a tape

1. Choose the Backup shelf at top left of the screen.
2. Open the context (right-click) menu for Filesystem, and choose Add Backup.
3. On the **Create New Backup** screen, under **Filesystem**, choose **Blank File System Backup**, and then choose **OK**.

4. On the tree node that shows your host system, select the file system or file systems that you want to back up, and choose **Next** to continue.

5. Open the tree node for the tape library you want to use, open the context (right-click) menu for the tape drive you want to use, and then choose **Properties**.

6. Choose your media pool, choose **OK**, and then choose **Next**.

7. For the next three screens, accept the default settings and choose **Next**.

8. On the **Perform finishing steps in your backup/template design** screen, choose **Save as** to save this session. In the pop-up window, give the backup a name and assign it to the group where you want to save your new backup specification.

9. Choose **Start Interactive Backup**.

If the host system contains a database system, you can choose it as your target backup system. The screens and selections are similar to the file-system backup just described.

**Archiving a Tape**

When you archive a tape, tape gateway moves the tape from the tape library to the offline storage. Before you eject and archive a tape, you might want to check the content on it.

**To check a tape's content before archiving it**

1. Choose **Slots** and then choose the tape you want to check.
2. Choose **Objects** and check what content is on the tape.

When you have chosen a tape to archive, use the following procedure.

**To eject and archive a tape**

1. Open the context (right-click) menu for that tape, and choose **Eject**.
2. On the AWS Storage Gateway console, choose your gateway, and then choose **VTL Tape Cartridges** and verify the status of the virtual tape you are archiving.

After the tape is ejected, it will be automatically archived in Amazon Glacier. The archiving process can take some time to complete. The initial status of the tape is shown as **IN TRANSIT TO VTS**. When archiving starts, the status changes to **ARCHIVING**. When archiving is completed, the tape is no longer listed in the VTL.

**Restoring Data from a Tape**

Restoring your archived data is a two-step process.

**To restore data from an archived tape**

1. Retrieve the archived tape to a tape gateway. For instructions, see **Retrieving Archived Tapes** (p. 121).
2. Use HPE Data Protector to restore the data. This process is the same as restoring data from physical tapes.

To restore data from a tape, use the following procedure.
To restore data from a tape

1. Choose the Restore shelf at the top left of the screen.

2. Choose the file system or database system you want to restore. For the backup that you want to restore, make sure that the box is selected. Choose Restore.

3. In the Start Restore Session window, choose Needed Media. Choose All media, and you should see the tape originally used for the backup. Choose that tape, and then choose Close.

4. In the Start Restore Session window, accept the default settings, choose Next, and then choose Finish.

Next Step

Cleaning Up Resources You Don't Need (p. 90)

Testing Your Setup by Using Microsoft System Center 2012 R2 Data Protection Manager

You can back up your data to virtual tapes, archive the tapes, and manage your virtual tape library (VTL) devices by using Microsoft System Center 2012 R2 Data Protection Manager (DPM). In this topic, you can find basic documentation on how to configure the DPM backup application for a tape gateway and perform a backup and restore operation.

For detailed information about how to use DPM, see the DPM documentation on the Microsoft System Center website. For more information about compatible backup applications, see Supported Third-Party Backup Applications for a Tape Gateway (p. 17).

Topics

- Configuring DPM to Recognize VTL Devices (p. 73)
- Importing a Tape into DPM (p. 74)
- Writing Data to a Tape in DPM (p. 75)
- Archiving a Tape by Using DPM (p. 75)
- Restoring Data from a Tape Archived in DPM (p. 76)

Configuring DPM to Recognize VTL Devices

After you have connected the virtual tape library (VTL) devices to the Windows client, you configure DPM to recognize your devices. For information about how to connect VTL devices to the Windows client, see Connecting Your VTL Devices (p. 49).

By default, the DPM server does not recognize tape gateway devices. To configure the server to work with the tape gateway devices, you perform the following tasks:
1. Update the device drivers for the VTL devices to expose them to the DPM server.
2. Manually map the VTL devices to the DPM tape library.

**To update the VTL device drivers**

- In Device Manager, update the driver for the medium changer. For instructions, see *Updating the Device Driver for Your Medium Changer (p. 257)*.

You use the DPMDriveMappingTool to map your tape drives to the DPM tape library.

**To map tape drives to the DPM server tape library**

1. Create at least one tape for your gateway. For information on how to do this on the console, see *Creating Tapes (p. 48)*.
2. Import the tape into the DPM library. For information on how to do this, see *Importing a Tape into DPM (p. 74)*.
3. If the DPMLA service is running, stop it by opening a command terminal and typing the following on the command line.
   
   ```
   net stop DPMLA
   ```

4. Locate the following file on the DPM server: `%ProgramFiles%\System Center 2012 R2\DPM\Config\DPMLA.xml`.

   **Note**
   
   If this file exists, the DPMDriveMappingTool overwrites it. If you want to preserve your original file, create a backup copy.

5. Open a command terminal, change the directory to `%ProgramFiles%\System Center 2012 R2\DPM\DPM\Bin`, and run the following command.

   ```
   C:\Microsoft System Center 2012 R2\DPM\DPM\bin>DPMDriveMappingTool.exe
   ```

   The output for the command looks like the following.

   ```
   Performing Device Inventory ...
   Mapping Drives to Library ...
   Adding Standalone Drives ...
   Writing the Map File ...
   Drive Mapping Completed Successfully.
   ```

**Importing a Tape into DPM**

You are now ready to import tapes from your tape gateway into the DPM backup application library.

**To import tapes into the DPM backup application library**

1. On the DPM server, open the Management Console, choose **Rescan**, and then choose **Refresh**. Doing this displays your medium changer and tape drives.
2. Open the context (right-click) menu for the media changer in the **Library** section, and then choose **Add tape (I/E port)** to add a tape to the **Slots** list.

   **Note**  
   The process of adding tapes can take several minutes to complete.

The tape label appears as **Unknown**, and the tape is not usable. For the tape to be usable, you must identify it.

3. Open the context (right-click) menu for the tape you want to identify, and then choose **Identify unknown tape**.

   **Note**  
   The process of identifying tapes can take a few seconds or a few minutes.

   Microsoft System Center 2012 R2 Data Protection Manager doesn't display barcodes for virtual tapes created in AWS Storage Gateway.

When identification is complete, the tape label changes to **Free**. That is, the tape is free for data to be written to it.

In the following screenshot, the tape in slot 2 has been identified and is free to use but the tape in slot 3 is not.

![Tape Gateway Library](image)

### Writing Data to a Tape in DPM

You write data to a tape gateway virtual tape by using the same protection procedures and policies you do with physical tapes. You create a protection group and add the data you want to back up, and then back up the data by creating a recovery point. For detailed information about how to use DPM, see the [DPM documentation](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/data-protection-manager) on the Microsoft System Center website.

### Archiving a Tape by Using DPM

When you archive a tape, tape gateway moves the tape from the DPM tape library to offline storage. You begin tape archival by removing the tape from the slot using your backup application—that is, DPM.

### To archive a tape in DPM

1. Open the context (right-click) menu for the tape you want to archive, and then choose **Remove tape (I/E port)**.
In the dialog box that appears, choose Yes. Doing this ejects the tape from the medium changer's storage slot and moves the tape into one of the gateway's I/E slots. When a tape is moved into the gateway's I/E slot, it is immediately sent for archiving.

3. On the AWS Storage Gateway console, choose your gateway, and then choose VTL Tape Cartridges and verify the status of the virtual tape you are archiving.

The archiving process can take some time to complete. The initial status of the tape is shown as IN TRANSIT TO VTS. When archiving starts, the status changes to ARCHIVING. When archiving is completed, the tape is no longer listed in the VTL.

Restoring Data from a Tape Archived in DPM

Restoring your archived data is a two-step process.

To restore data from an archived tape

1. Retrieve the archived tape from archive to a tape gateway. For instructions, see Retrieving Archived Tapes (p. 121).
2. Use the DPM backup application to restore the data. You do this by creating a recovery point, as you do when restoring data from physical tapes. For instructions, see Recovering Client Computer Data on the DPM website.

Next Step

Cleaning Up Resources You Don't Need (p. 90)

Testing Your Setup by Using Symantec NetBackup Version 7.x

You can back up your data to virtual tapes, archive the tapes, and manage your virtual tape library (VTL) devices by using Symantec NetBackup version 7.x. In this topic, you can find basic documentation on how to configure the NetBackup application for a tape gateway and perform a backup and restore operation. For detailed information about how to use NetBackup, see the Veritas Services and Operations Readiness Tools (SORT) on the Veritas website. For Symantec support information on hardware compatibility, see the NetBackup 7.0 - 7.6.x Hardware Compatibility List on the Veritas website.

For more information about compatible backup applications, see Supported Third-Party Backup Applications for a Tape Gateway (p. 17).

Topics

- Configuring NetBackup Storage Devices (p. 77)
- Backing Up Data to a Tape (p. 80)
- Archiving the Tape (p. 85)
- Restoring Data from the Tape (p. 87)
Configuring NetBackup Storage Devices

After you have connected the virtual tape library (VTL) devices to the Windows client, you configure Symantec NetBackup version 7.x storage to recognize your devices. For information about how to connect VTL devices to the Windows client, see Connecting Your VTL Devices (p. 49).

To configure NetBackup to use storage devices on your tape gateway

1. Open the NetBackup Administration Console and run it as an administrator.

2. Choose Configure Storage Devices to open the Device Configuration wizard.

3. Choose Next. The NetBackup application detects your computer as a device host.

4. In the Device Hosts column, select your computer, and then choose Next. The NetBackup application scans your computer for devices and discovers all devices.

5. In the Scanning Hosts page, choose Next, and then choose Next. The NetBackup application finds all 10 tape drives and the medium changer on your computer.
6. In the **Backup Devices** window, choose **Next**.
7. In the **Drag and Drop Configuration** window, verify that your medium changer is selected, and then choose **Next**.
8. In the dialog box that appears, choose **Yes** to save the configuration on your computer. The NetBackup application updates the device configuration.
9. When the update is completed, choose **Next** to make the devices available to the NetBackup application.
10. In the **Finished!** window, choose **Finish**.

**To verify your devices in the NetBackup application**

1. In the NetBackup Administration Console, expand the **Media and Device Management** node, and then expand the **Devices** node. Choose **Drives** to display all the tape drives.

   ![Image of Backup Devices window]

2. In the **Devices** node, choose **Robots** to display all your medium changers. In the NetBackup application, the medium changer is called a **robot**.
3. In the **All Robots** pane, open the context (right-click) menu for **TLD(0)** (that is, your robot), and then choose **Inventory Robot**.
4. In the **Robot Inventory** window, verify that your host is selected from the **Device-Host** list located in the **Select robot** category.
5. Verify that your robot is selected from the **Robot** list.
6. In the **Robot Inventory** window, select **Update volume configuration**, select **Preview changes**, select **Empty media access port prior to update**, and then choose **Start**.
The process then inventories your medium changer and virtual tapes in the NetBackup Enterprise Media Management (EMM) database. NetBackup stores media information, device configuration, and tape status in the EMM.

7. In the **Robot Inventory** window, choose **Yes** once the inventory is complete. Choosing **Yes** here updates the configuration and moves virtual tapes found in import/export slots to the virtual tape library.

For example, the following screenshot shows three virtual tapes found in the import/export slots.

8. Close the **Robot Inventory** window.

9. In the **Media** node, expand the **Robots** node and choose **TLD(0)** to show all virtual tapes that are available to your robot (medium changer).
Note
If you have previously connected other devices to the NetBackup application, you might have multiple robots. Make sure that you select the right robot.

Now that you have connected your devices and made them available to your backup application, you are ready to test your gateway. To test your gateway, you back up data onto the virtual tapes you created and archive the tapes.

Backing Up Data to a Tape
You test the tape gateway setup by backing up data onto your virtual tapes.

Note
You should back up only a small amount of data for this Getting Started exercise, because there are costs associated with storing, archiving, and retrieving data. For pricing information, see Pricing on the AWS Storage Gateway detail page.

To create a volume pool
A volume pool is a collection of virtual tapes to use for a backup.

1. Start the NetBackup Administration Console.
2. Expand the Media node, open the context (right-click) menu for Volume Pool, and then choose New. The New Volume Pool dialog box appears.

3. For Name, type a name for your volume pool.
4. For Description, type a description for the volume pool, and then choose OK. The volume pool you just created is added to the volume pool list.

The following screenshot shows a list of volume pools.
To add virtual tapes to a volume pool

1. Expand the Robots node, and select the TLD(0) robot to display the virtual tapes this robot is aware of.
   If you have previously connected a robot, your tape gateway robot might have a different name.

2. From the list of virtual tapes, open the context (right-click) menu for the tape you want to add to the volume pool, and choose Change to open the Change Volumes dialog box. The following screenshot shows the Change Volumes dialog box.

3. For Volume Pool, choose New pool.

4. For New pool, select the pool you just created, and then choose OK.

   You can verify that your volume pool contains the virtual tape that you just added by expanding the Media node and choosing your volume pool.

To create a backup policy

The backup policy specifies what data to back up, when to back it up, and which volume pool to use.
1. Choose your **Master Server** to return to the Symantec NetBackup console.

   The following screenshot shows the NetBackup console with **Create a Policy** selected.

   ![NetBackup Console with Create a Policy selected]

2. Choose **Create a Policy** to open the **Policy Configuration Wizard** window.

3. Select **File systems, databases, applications**, and choose **Next**.

4. For **Policy Name**, type a name for your policy and verify that **MS-Windows** is selected from the **Select the policy type** list, and then choose **Next**.

5. In the **Client List** window, choose **Add**, type the host name of your computer in the **Name** column, and then choose **Next**. This step applies the policy you are defining to localhost (your client computer).

6. In the **Files** window, choose **Add**, and then choose the folder icon.

7. In the **Browse** window, browse to the folder or files you want to back up, choose **OK**, and then choose **Next**.
8. In the **Backup Types** window, accept the defaults, and then choose **Next**.

   **Note**
   If you want to initiate the backup yourself, select **User Backup**.

9. In the **Frequency and Retention** window, select the frequency and retention policy you want to apply to the backup. For this exercise, you can accept all the defaults and choose **Next**.

![Policy Configuration Wizard](image)

10. In the **Start** window, select **Off hours**, and then choose **Next**. This selection specifies that your folder should be backed up during off hours only.

![Start Window](image)

11. In the **Policy Configuration** wizard, choose **Finish**.

The policy runs the backups according to the schedule. You can also perform a manual backup at any time, which we do in the next step.

**To perform a manual backup**

1. On the navigation pane of the NetBackup console, expand the **NetBackup Management** node.
2. Expand the **Policies** node.
3. Open the context (right-click) menu for your policy, and choose **Manual Backup**.
4. In the Manual Backup window, select a schedule, select a client, and then choose OK.

5. In the Manual Backup Started dialog box that appears, choose OK.

6. On the navigation pane, choose Activity Monitor to view the status of your backup in the Job ID column.

To find the barcode of the virtual tape where NetBackup wrote the file data during the backup, look in the Job Details window as described in the following procedure. You need this barcode in the procedure in the next section, where you archive the tape.

To find the barcode of a tape

1. In Activity Monitor, open the context (right-click) menu for the identifier of your backup job in the Job ID column, and then choose Details.
2. In the Job Details window, choose the Detailed Status tab.
3. In the **Status** box, locate the media ID. For example, in the following screenshot, the media ID is **87A222**. This ID helps you determine which tape you have written data to.

You have now successfully deployed a tape gateway, created virtual tapes, and backed up your data. Next, you can archive the virtual tapes and retrieve them from the archive.

**Archiving the Tape**

When you archive a tape, tape gateway moves the tape from your gateway’s virtual tape library (VTL) to the archive, which provides offline storage. You initiate tape archival by ejecting the tape using your backup application.

**To archive a virtual tape**

1. In the NetBackup Administration console, expand the **Media and Device Management** node, and expand the **Media** node.
2. Expand **Robots** and choose **TLD(0)**.
3. Open the context (right-click) menu for the virtual tape you want to archive, and choose **Eject Volume From Robot**.
4. In the **Eject Volumes** window, make sure the **Media ID** matches the virtual tape you want to eject, and then choose **Eject**.
5. In the dialog box, choose Yes. The dialog box is shown following.

When the eject process is completed, the status of the tape in the **Eject Volumes** dialog box indicates that the eject succeeded.
6. Choose Close to close the Eject Volumes window.

7. In the AWS Storage Gateway console, verify the status of the tape you are archiving in the gateway's VTL. It can take some time to finish uploading data to AWS. During this time, the ejected tape is listed in the gateway's VTL with the status **IN TRANSIT TO VTS**. When archiving starts, the status is **ARCHIVING**. Once data upload has completed, the ejected tape is no longer listed in the VTL.

8. To verify that the virtual tape is no longer listed in your gateway, choose your gateway, and then choose **VTL Tape Cartridges**.

9. In the navigation pane of the AWS Storage Gateway console, choose **Tapes**. Verify that your archived tape's status is **ARCHIVED**.

---

## Restoring Data from the Tape

Restoring your archived data is a two-step process.

**To restore data from an archived tape**

1. Retrieve the archived tape to a tape gateway. For instructions, see Retrieving Archived Tapes (p. 121).
2. Use the Backup, Archive, and Restore software installed with the Symantec NetBackup application. This process is the same as restoring data from physical tapes. For instructions, see Veritas Services and Operations Readiness Tools (SORT) on the Veritas website.

---

### Next Step

Cleaning Up Resources You Don't Need (p. 90)

## Testing Your Setup by Using Veeam Backup & Replication

You can back up your data to virtual tapes, archive the tapes, and manage your virtual tape library (VTL) devices by using Veeam Backup & Replication V7, V8, or V9 Update 2 or later. In this topic, you can find basic documentation on how to configure the Veeam Backup & Replication software for a tape gateway and perform a backup and restore operation. For detailed information about how to use the Veeam software, see the Veeam Backup & Replication documentation in the Veeam Help Center. For more information about compatible backup applications, see Supported Third-Party Backup Applications for a Tape Gateway (p. 17).

### Topics

- Configuring Veeam to Work with VTL Devices (p. 87)
- Importing a Tape into Veeam (p. 88)
- Backing Up Data to a Tape in Veeam (p. 89)
- Archiving a Tape by Using Veeam (p. 89)
- Restoring Data from a Tape Archived in Veeam (p. 89)

### Configuring Veeam to Work with VTL Devices

After you have connected your virtual tape library (VTL) devices to the Windows client, you configure Veeam Backup & Replication to recognize your devices. For information about how to connect VTL devices to the Windows client, see Connecting Your VTL Devices (p. 49).

### Updating VTL Device Drivers

By default, the Veeam V7 and V8 backup application does not recognize tape gateway devices. To configure the software to work with tape gateway devices, you update the device drivers for the VTL...
devices to expose them to the Veeam software and then discover the VTL devices. In Device Manager, update the driver for the medium changer. For instructions, see Updating the Device Driver for Your Medium Changer (p. 257).

Discovering VTL Devices

For the Veeam 9 backup application, you must use native SCSI commands instead of a Windows driver to discover your tape library if your media changer is unknown. For detailed instructions, see Working with Tape Libraries.

To discover VTL devices

1. In the Veeam software, choose Backup Infrastructure. When the tape gateway is connected, virtual tapes are listed in the Backup Infrastructure tab.
   
   **Note**
   
   Depending on the version of the Veeam Backup & Replication you are using, the user interface might differ somewhat from that shown in the screenshots in this documentation.

2. Expand the Tape tree to see your tape drives and medium changer.

3. Expand the medium changer tree. If your tape drives are mapped to the medium changer, the drives appear under Drives. Otherwise, your tape library and tape drives appear as separate devices.

   If the drives are not mapped automatically, follow the instructions on the Veeam website to map the drives.

Importing a Tape into Veeam

You are now ready to import tapes from your tape gateway into the Veeam backup application library.

To import a tape into the Veeam library

1. Open the context (right-click) menu for the medium changer, and choose Import to import the tapes to the I/E slots.

2. Open the context (right-click) menu for the medium changer, and choose Inventory Library to identify unrecognized tapes. When you load a new virtual tape into a tape drive for the first time, the tape is not recognized by the Veeam backup application. To identify the unrecognized tape, you inventory the tapes in the tape library.
Backing Up Data to a Tape in Veeam

Backing data to a tape is a two-step process:

1. You create a media pool and add the tape to the media pool.
2. You write data to the tape.

You create a media pool and write data to a virtual tape by using the same procedures you do with physical tapes. For detailed information about how to back up data, see the Veeam documentation in the Veeam Help Center.

Archiving a Tape by Using Veeam

When you archive a tape, tape gateway moves the tape from the Veeam tape library to the offline storage. You begin tape archival by ejecting from the tape drive to the storage slot and then exporting the tape from the slot to the archive by using your backup application—that is, the Veeam software.

To archive a tape in the Veeam library

1. Choose Backup Infrastructure, and choose the media pool that contains the tape you want to archive.
2. Open the context (right-click) menu for the tape that you want to archive, and then choose Eject Tape.
3. For Ejecting tape, choose Close. The location of the tape changes from a tape drive to a slot.
4. Open the context (right-click) menu for the tape again, and then choose Export. The status of the tape changes from Tape drive to Offline.
5. For Exporting tape, choose Close. The location of the tape changes from Slot to Offline.
6. On the AWS Storage Gateway console, choose your gateway, and then choose VTL Tape Cartridges and verify the status of the virtual tape you are archiving.

The archiving process can take some time to complete. The initial status of the tape is shown as IN TRANSIT TO VTS. When archiving starts, the status changes to ARCHIVING. When archiving is completed, the tape is no longer listed in the VTL.

Restoring Data from a Tape Archived in Veeam

Restoring your archived data is a two-step process.
To restore data from an archived tape

1. Retrieve the archived tape from archive to a tape gateway. For instructions, see Retrieving Archived Tapes (p. 121).

2. Use the Veeam software to restore the data. You do this by creating a restoring a folder file, as you do when restoring data from physical tapes. For instructions, see Restoring Data from Tape in the Veeam Help Center.

Next Step

Cleaning Up Resources You Don't Need (p. 90)

Where Do I Go from Here?

After your tape gateway is in production, you can perform several maintenance tasks, such as adding and removing tapes, monitoring and optimizing gateway performance, and troubleshooting. For general information about these management tasks, see Managing Your Gateway (p. 91).

You can perform some of the tape gateway maintenance tasks on the AWS Management Console, such as configuring your gateway's bandwidth rate limits and managing gateway software updates. If your tape gateway is deployed on-premises, you can perform some maintenance tasks on the gateway's local console. These include routing your tape gateway through a proxy and configuring your gateway to use a static IP address. If you are running your gateway as an Amazon EC2 instance, you can perform specific maintenance tasks on the Amazon EC2 console, such as adding and removing Amazon EBS volumes. For more information on maintaining your tape gateway, see Managing Your Tape Gateway (p. 120).

If you plan to deploy your gateway in production, you should take your real workload into consideration in determining the disk sizes. For information on how to determine real-world disk sizes, see Managing Local Disks for Your AWS Storage Gateway (p. 151). Also, consider cleaning up if you don't plan to continue using your tape gateway. Cleaning up lets you avoid incurring charges. For information on cleanup, see Cleaning Up Resources You Don't Need (p. 90).

Cleaning Up Resources You Don't Need

If you created the gateway as an example exercise or a test, consider cleaning up to avoid incurring unexpected or unnecessary charges.

If you plan to continue using your tape gateway, see additional information in Where Do I Go from Here? (p. 90)

To clean up resources you don't need

1. Delete tapes from both your gateway's virtual tape library (VTL) and archive. For more information, see Deleting Your Gateway by Using the AWS Storage Gateway Console and Removing Associated Resources (p. 197).
   a. Archive any tapes that have the RETRIEVED status in your gateway's VTL. For instructions, see Archiving Tapes (p. 259).
   b. Delete any remaining tapes from your gateway's VTL. For instructions, see Deleting Tapes (p. 122).
   c. Delete any tapes you have in the archive. For instructions, see Deleting Tapes (p. 122).
2. Unless you plan to continue using the tape gateway, delete it: For instructions, see Deleting Your Gateway by Using the AWS Storage Gateway Console and Removing Associated Resources (p. 197).
3. Delete the AWS Storage Gateway VM from your on-premises host. If you created your gateway on an Amazon EC2 instance, terminate the instance.
Managing Your Gateway

Managing your gateway includes tasks such as configuring cache storage and upload buffer space, working with volumes or virtual tapes, and doing general maintenance. If you haven't created a gateway, see Getting Started (p. 9).

Topics
- Managing Your File Gateway (p. 91)
- Managing Your Volume Gateway (p. 99)
- Managing Your Tape Gateway (p. 120)

Managing Your File Gateway

Following, you can find information about how to manage your file gateway resources.

Topics
- Adding a File Share (p. 91)
- Deleting a File Share (p. 93)
- Updating a File Share (p. 95)
- Refreshing Objects in Your Amazon S3 Bucket (p. 97)
- Understanding File Share Status (p. 98)
- File Share Best Practices (p. 98)

Adding a File Share

After your file gateway is activated and running, you can add additional file shares and grant access to Amazon S3 buckets. Buckets that you can grant access to include buckets in a different AWS account than your file share. For information about how to add a file share, see Creating a File Share (p. 24).

Topics
- Granting Access to an Amazon S3 Bucket (p. 91)
- Using a File Share for Cross-Account Access (p. 92)

Granting Access to an Amazon S3 Bucket

When you create a file share, your file gateway requires access to upload files into your Amazon S3 bucket. To grant this access, your file gateway assumes an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that is associated with an IAM policy that grants this access.

The role requires this IAM policy and a security token service trust (STS) relationship for it. The policy determines which actions the role can perform. In addition, your S3 bucket must have an access policy that allows the IAM role to access the S3 bucket.

You can create the role and access policy yourself, or your file gateway can create them for you. If your file gateway creates the policy for you, the policy contains a list of S3 actions. For information about roles and permissions, see Creating a Role to Delegate Permissions to an AWS Service in the IAM User Guide.

The following example is a trust policy that allows your file gateway to assume an IAM role.
If you don’t want your file gateway to create a policy on your behalf, you create your own policy and attach it to your file share. For more information about how to do this, see Creating a File Share (p. 24).

The following example policy allows your file gateway to perform all the Amazon S3 actions listed in the policy. The first part of the statement allows all the actions listed to be performed on the S3 bucket named TestBucket. The second part allows the listed actions on all objects in TestBucket.

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::TestBucket",
      "Effect": "Allow"
    },
    {
      "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::TestBucket/**",
      "Effect": "Allow"
    }
  ]
}
```

**Using a File Share for Cross-Account Access**

Cross-account access is when an AWS account and users for that account are granted access to resources that belong to another AWS account. With file gateways, you can use a file share in one AWS account to access objects in an Amazon S3 bucket that belongs to a different AWS account.
To use a file share owned by one AWS account to access an S3 bucket in a different AWS account

1. Make sure that the S3 bucket owner has granted your AWS account access to the S3 bucket that you need to access and the objects in that bucket. For information about how to grant this access, see Example 2: Bucket Owner Granting Cross-Account Bucket Permissions in the Amazon Simple Storage Service Developer Guide. For a list of the required permissions, see Granting Access to an Amazon S3 Bucket (p. 91).

2. Make sure that the IAM role that your file share uses to access the S3 bucket includes permissions for operations such as s3:GetObjectAcl and s3:PutObjectAcl. In addition, make sure that the IAM role includes a trust policy that allows your account to assume that IAM role. For an example of such a trust policy, see Granting Access to an Amazon S3 Bucket (p. 91).


4. Choose Give bucket owner full control in the Object metadata settings in the Configure file share setting dialog box. For more information on creating or updating a file share, see Creating a File Share (p. 24) or Updating a File Share (p. 95).

When you have created or updated your file share for cross-account access and mounted the file share on-premises, we highly recommend that you test your setup. You can do this by listing directory contents or writing test files and making sure the files show up as objects in the S3 bucket.

Important
Make sure to set up the policies correctly to grant cross-account access to the account used by your file share. If you don’t, updates to files through your on-premises applications don’t propagate to the Amazon S3 bucket that you’re working with.

Resources
For additional information about access policies and access control lists, see the following:

Guidelines for Using the Available Access Policy Options in the Amazon Simple Storage Service Developer Guide

Access Control List (ACL) Overview in the Amazon Simple Storage Service Developer Guide

Deleting a File Share

If you no longer need a file share, you can delete it from the AWS Storage Gateway Management Console. When you delete a file share, the gateway is detached from the Amazon S3 bucket that the file share maps to. However, the S3 bucket and its contents aren’t deleted.

If your gateway is uploading data to a S3 bucket when you delete a file share, the delete process doesn’t complete until all the data is uploaded. The file share has the DELETING status until the data is completely uploaded.

If you want your data to be completely uploaded, use the To delete a file share procedure directly following. If you don’t want to wait for your data to be completely uploaded, see the To forcibly delete a file share procedure later in this topic.

To delete a file share


2. Choose File shares, and choose the file share you want to delete.
3. For **Actions**, choose **Delete file share**. The following confirmation dialog box appears.

   ![Confirmation dialog box](image)

4. In the confirmation dialog box, select the check box for the file share or shares that you want to delete, and then choose **Delete**.

   ![Confirmation dialog box](image)

In certain cases, you might not want to wait until all the data written to files on the Network File System (NFS) file share is uploaded before deleting the file share. For example, you might want to intentionally discard data that was written but has not yet been uploaded. In another example, the Amazon S3 bucket or objects that back the file share might have already been deleted, meaning that uploading the specified data is no longer possible.

In these cases, you can forcibly delete the file share by using the AWS Management Console or the `DeleteFileShare` API operation. This operation aborts the data upload process. When it does, the file share enters the FORCE_DELETING status. To forcibly delete a file share from the console, see the procedure following.

**To forcibly delete a file share**

2. Choose **File shares**, and choose the file share you want to forcibly delete and wait for a few seconds. A delete message is displayed in the **Details** tab.

   ![Delete message](image)

   **Note**

   You cannot undo the force delete operation.

3. In the message that appears in **Details** tab, verify the ID of the file share you want to forcibly delete, select the confirmation box, and choose **Force delete now**.

   ![Force delete now](image)

   You can also use the `DeleteFileShare` API operation to forcibly delete the file share.
Updating a File Share

You can update the default file share settings, the clients allowed to connect to your file share, and the metadata defaults for your file share.

Editing the File Share Settings

You can edit the default storage class for your Amazon S3 bucket, the squash level setting, and the Export as option for your file share. Possible Export as options include, for example, Read-write.

To edit the file share settings

2. Choose File shares, and then choose the file share that you want to update.
3. For Actions, choose Edit file share settings.
4. Do one or more of the following:
   - For Storage class for new objects, choose a default storage class for your S3 bucket, and choose Save.

Possible values for the storage class for new objects are the following:
   - S3 Standard – Store your frequently accessed object data redundantly in multiple Availability Zones that are geographically separated.
   - S3 Standard_IA – Store your infrequently accessed object data redundantly in multiple Availability Zones that are geographically separated.
   - S3 One Zone_IA – Store your infrequently accessed object data a single Availability Zone.

For more information, see Storage Classes in the Amazon Simple Storage Service Developer Guide.

   - For Object metadata, choose the metadata you want to use:
     - Choose Guess MIME type to enable guessing of the MIME type for uploaded objects based on file extensions.
     - Choose Give bucket owner full control to give full control to the owner of the S3 bucket that maps to the file NFS file share. For more information on using your file share to access objects in a bucket owned by another account, see Using a File Share for Cross-Account Access (p. 92).
     - Choose Enable requester pays if you are using this file share on a bucket that requires the requester or reader instead of bucket owner to pay for access charges. For more information, see Requester Pays Buckets.

   - For Squash level, choose the squash level setting you want for your file share, and then choose Save. Possible values are the following:
     - Root squash (default) – Access for the remote superuser (root) is mapped to UID (65534) and GID (65534).
     - No root squash – The remote superuser (root) receives access as root.
     - All squash – All user access is mapped to UID (65534) and GID (65534).

The default value for squash level is Root squash.

   - For Export as, choose an option for your file share, and then choose Save. The default value is Read-write.

Note
For file shares mounted on a Microsoft Windows client, if you select Read-only for Export as, you might see an error preventing you from creating the file share. This is because Windows does not support Read-only exports. To resolve this issue, you can create a Read-write file share instead.
the folder. This error message is a known issue with NFS version 3. You can ignore the message.

**Editing Metadata Defaults**

If you don’t set metadata values for your files or directories in your bucket, your file gateway sets default metadata values. These values include Unix permissions for files and folders. You can edit the metadata defaults on the AWS Storage Gateway Management Console.

When your file gateway stores files and folders in Amazon S3, the Unix file permissions are stored in object metadata. When your file gateway discovers objects that weren't stored by the file gateway, these objects are assigned default Unix file permissions. You can find the default Unix permissions in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metadata</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Directory permissions</td>
<td>The Unix directory mode in the form &quot;nnnn&quot;. For example, &quot;0666&quot; represents the access mode for all directories inside the file share. The default value is 0777.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File permissions</td>
<td>The Unix file mode in the form &quot;nnnn&quot;. For example, &quot;0666&quot; represents the file mode inside the file share. The default value is 0666.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User ID</td>
<td>The default owner ID for files in the file share. The default value is 65534.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group ID</td>
<td>The default group ID for the file share. The default value is 65534.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To edit metadata defaults

2. Choose **File shares**, and then choose the file share you want to update.
3. For **Actions**, choose **Edit file metadata defaults**.
4. In the **Edit file metadata defaults** dialog box, provide the metadata information and choose **Save**.
Refreshing Objects in Your Amazon S3 Bucket

As your NFS client performs file system operations, your gateway maintains an inventory of the objects in the Amazon S3 bucket associated with your file share. Your gateway uses this cached inventory to reduce the latency and frequency of S3 requests.

To refresh the S3 bucket for your file share, you can use the AWS Storage Gateway console or the RefreshCache operation in the AWS Storage Gateway API.

To refresh objects in a S3 bucket from the console

2. Choose **File shares**, and then choose the file share associated with the S3 bucket that you want to refresh.

3. For **Actions**, choose **Refresh cache**. The time that it takes to refresh depends on the number of objects that the S3 bucket contains.

### Understanding File Share Status

Each file share has an associated status that tells you at a glance what the health of the file share is. Most of the time, the status indicates that the file share is functioning normally and that no action is needed on your part. In some cases, the status indicates a problem that might or might not require action on your part.

You can see file share status on the AWS Storage Gateway console. File share status appears in the **Status** column for each file share in your gateway. A file share that is functioning normally has the status of **AVAILABLE**.

In the following table, you can find a description of each file share status, and if and when you should act based on the status. A file share should have **AVAILABLE** status all or most of the time it’s in use.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AVAILABLE</td>
<td>The file share is configured properly and is available to use. The <strong>AVAILABLE</strong> status is the normal running status for a file share.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATING</td>
<td>The file share is being created and is not ready for use. The <strong>CREATING</strong> status is transitional. No action is required. If file share is stuck in this status, it’s probably because the gateway VM lost connection to AWS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPDATING</td>
<td>The file share configuration is being updated. If a file share is stuck in this status, it’s probably because the gateway VM lost connection to AWS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DELETING</td>
<td>The file share is being deleted. The file share is not deleted until all data is uploaded to AWS. The <strong>DELETING</strong> status is transitional, and no action is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FORCE_DELETING</td>
<td>The file share is being deleted forcibly. The file share is deleted immediately and uploading to AWS is aborted. The <strong>FORCE_DELETING</strong> status is transitional, and no action is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNAVAILABLE</td>
<td>The file share is in an unhealthy state. Certain issues can cause the file share to go into an unhealthy state. For example, role policy errors can cause this, or if the file share maps to a Amazon S3 bucket that doesn’t exist. When the issue that caused the unhealthy state is resolved, the file returns to <strong>AVAILABLE</strong> state.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### File Share Best Practices

In this section, you can find information about best practices for creating file shares.

**Topics**

- Preventing Multiple File Shares Writing to Your Amazon S3 Bucket (p. 99)
- Allowing Specific NFS Clients to Mount Your File Share (p. 99)
Preventing Multiple File Shares Writing to Your Amazon S3 Bucket

When you create a file share, we recommend that you configure your Amazon S3 bucket so that only one file share can write to it. If you configure your S3 bucket to be written to by multiple file shares, unpredictable results can occur. To prevent this, create an S3 bucket policy that denies all roles except the role used for the file share to put or delete objects in the bucket. Then attach this policy to the S3 bucket.

The following example policy denies all roles except the role that created the bucket to write to the S3 bucket. The s3:DeleteObject and s3:PutObject actions are denied for all roles except "TestUser". The policy applies to all objects in the "arn:aws:s3:::test-bucket/*" bucket.

```json
{
   "Version":"2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [ 
   {
      "Sid":"DenyMultiWrite",
      "Effect":"Deny",
      "Principal":"*",
      "Action": [ 
      "s3:DeleteObject",
      "s3:PutObject"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::TestBucket/*",
      "Condition": {
      "StringNotLike": {
      "aws:userid": "TestUser:*"
      }
      }
   }
   ]
}
```

Allowing Specific NFS Clients to Mount Your File Share

We recommend that you change the allowed NFS client settings for your file share. If you don't, any client on your network can mount your file share. For information about how to edit your NFS client settings, see Editing Allowed NFS Clients (p. 97).

Managing Your Volume Gateway

Following, you can find information about how to manage your volume gateway resources.

Cached volumes are volumes in Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) that are exposed as iSCSI targets on which you can store your application data. You can find information following about how to add and delete volumes for your cached setup. You can also learn how to add and remove Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) volumes in Amazon EC2 gateways.

Topics
- Adding a Volume (p. 100)
- Expanding the Size of a Volume (p. 100)
- Cloning a Volume (p. 100)
- Viewing Volume Usage (p. 103)
Important
If a cached volume keeps your primary data in Amazon S3, you should avoid processes that read or write all data on the entire volume. For example, we don't recommend using virus-scanning software that scans the entire cached volume. Such a scan, whether done on demand or scheduled, causes all data stored in Amazon S3 to be downloaded locally for scanning, which results in high bandwidth usage. Instead of doing a full disk scan, you can use real-time virus scanning—that is, scanning data as it is read from or written to the cached volume.

Resizing a volume is not supported. To change the size of a volume, create a snapshot of the volume, and then create a new cached volume from the snapshot. The new volume can be bigger than the volume from which the snapshot was created. For steps describing how to remove a volume, see To remove a volume (p. 104). For steps describing how to add a volume and preserve existing data, see Deleting a Volume (p. 103).

All cached volume data and snapshot data is stored in Amazon S3 and is encrypted at rest using server-side encryption (SSE). However, you cannot access this data by using the Amazon S3 API or other tools such as the Amazon S3 console.

Adding a Volume

As your application needs grow, you might need to add more volumes to your gateway. As you add more volumes, you must consider the size of the cache storage and upload buffer you allocated to the gateway. The gateway must have sufficient buffer and cache space for new volumes. For more information, see Adding and Removing Upload Buffer (p. 153).

You can add volumes using the AWS Storage Gateway console or AWS Storage Gateway API. For information on using the AWS Storage Gateway API to add volumes, see CreateCachediSCSIVolume. For instructions on how to add a volume using the AWS Storage Gateway console, see Creating a Volume (p. 34).

Expanding the Size of a Volume

As your application needs grow, you might want to expand your volume instead of adding more volumes to your gateway. In this case, you can do one of the following:

- Create a snapshot of the volume you want to expand and then use the snapshot to create a new volume of a larger size. For information about how to create a snapshot, see Creating a One-Time Snapshot (p. 104). For information about how to use a snapshot to create a new volume, see Creating a Volume (p. 34).
- Use the cached volume you want to expand to clone a new volume of a larger size. For information about how to clone a volume, see Cloning a Volume (p. 100). For information about how to create a volume, see Creating a Volume (p. 34).

Cloning a Volume

You can create a new volume from any existing cached volume in the same AWS Region. The new volume is created from the most recent recovery point of the selected volume. A volume recovery point is a point...
in time at which all data of the volume is consistent. To clone a volume, you choose the **Clone from last recovery point** option in the **Create volume** dialog box, then select the volume to use as the source. The following screenshot shows the **Create volume** dialog box.

Cloning from an existing volume is faster and more cost-effective than creating an Amazon EBS snapshot. Cloning does a byte-to-byte copy of your data from the source volume to the new volume, using the most recent recovery point from the source volume. Storage Gateway automatically creates recovery points for your cached volumes. To see when the last recovery point was created, check the **TimeSinceLastRecoveryPoint** metric in Amazon CloudWatch.

The cloned volume is independent of the source volume. That is, changes made to either volume after cloning have no effect on the other. For example, if you delete the source volume, it has no effect on the cloned volume. You can clone a source volume while initiators are connected and it is in active use. Doing so doesn't affect the performance of the source volume. For information about how to clone a volume, see **Creating a Volume** (p. 34).

You can also use the cloning process in recovery scenarios. For more information, see **Your Cached Gateway is Unreachable And You Want to Recover Your Data** (p. 232).

**Cloning From a Volume Recovery Point**

The following procedure shows you how to clone a volume from a volume recovery point and use that volume.

**To clone and use a volume from an unreachable gateway**

2. On the AWS Storage Gateway console, choose **Create volume**.
3. In the **Create volume** dialog box, choose a gateway for **Gateway**.
4. For **Capacity**, type the capacity for your volume. The capacity must be at least the same size as the source volume.
5. Choose **Clone from last recovery point** and select a volume ID for **Source volume**. The source volume can be any cached volume in the selected AWS Region.
6. Type a name for **iSCSI target name**.

   The target name can contain lowercase letters, numbers, periods (.), and hyphens (-). This target name appears as the **iSCSI target node** name in the **Targets** tab of the **iSCSI Microsoft initiator** UI after discovery. For example, the name `target1` appears as `iqn.1007-05.com.amazon:target1`. Ensure that the target name is globally unique within your storage area network (SAN).

7. Verify that the **Network interface** setting is the IP address of your gateway, or choose an IP address for **Network interface**.

   If you have defined your gateway to use multiple network adapters, choose the IP address that your storage applications use to access the volume. Each network adapter defined for a gateway represents one IP address that you can choose.

   If the gateway VM is configured for more than one network adapter, the **Create volume** dialog box displays a list for **Network interface**. In this list, one IP address appears for each adapter configured for the gateway VM. If the gateway VM is configured for only one network adapter, no list appears because there's only one IP address.

8. Choose **Create volume**. The **Configure CHAP Authentication** dialog box appears. You can configure CHAP later. For information, see Configuring CHAP Authentication for Your iSCSI Targets (p. 275).

The next step is to connect your volume to your client. For more information, see Connecting Your Volumes to Your Client (p. 36).

### Creating a Recovery Snapshot

The following procedure shows you how to create a snapshot from a volume recovery point and using that snapshot. You can take snapshots on a one-time, ad hoc basis or set up a snapshot schedule for the volume.

**To create and use a recovery snapshot of a volume from an unreachable gateway**

2. In the navigation pane, choose **Gateways**.
3. Choose the unreachable gateway, and then choose the Details tab.

A recovery snapshot message is displayed in the tab.

4. Choose Create recovery snapshot to open the Create recovery snapshot dialog box.

5. From the list of volumes displayed, choose the volume you want to recover, and then choose Create snapshots.

AWS Storage Gateway initiates the snapshot process.

6. Find and restore the snapshot.

Viewing Volume Usage

When you write data to a volume, you can view the amount of data stored on the volume in the AWS Storage Gateway Management Console. The Details tab for each volume shows the volume usage information.

To view amount of data written to a volume

2. In the navigation pane, choose Volumes and then choose the volume you are interested in.
3. Choose the Details tab.

The following fields provide information about the volume:

- **Size**: The total capacity of the selected volume.
- **Used**: The size of data stored on the volume.

**Note**
These values are not available for volumes created before May 13, 2015, until you store data on the volume.

Deleting a Volume

You might need to delete a volume as your application needs change—for example, if you migrate your application to use a larger storage volume. Before you delete a volume, make sure that there are no applications currently writing to the volume. Also, make sure that there are no snapshots in progress for the volume. If a snapshot schedule is defined for the volume, you can check it on the Snapshot Schedules tab of the AWS Storage Gateway console. For more information, see Editing a Snapshot Schedule (p. 104).

You can delete volumes using the AWS Storage Gateway console or the AWS Storage Gateway API. For information on using the AWS Storage Gateway API to remove volumes, see Delete Volume. The following procedure demonstrates using the console.
Before you delete a volume, back up your data or take a snapshot of your critical data. For stored volumes, your local disks aren’t erased. After you delete a volume, you can’t get it back.

To remove a volume

2. On the Volumes tab, choose the volume and choose the confirmation box. Make sure that the volume listed is the volume you intend to delete.
3. Choose Delete to delete the volume.

Creating a One-Time Snapshot

In addition to scheduled snapshots, for volume gateways you can take one-time, ad hoc snapshots. By doing this, you can back up your storage volume immediately without waiting for the next scheduled snapshot.

To take a one-time snapshot of your storage volume

2. In the navigation pane, choose Volumes, and then choose the volume you want to create the snapshot from.
3. On the Actions menu, choose Create snapshot.
4. In the Create snapshot dialog box, type the snapshot description, and then choose Create snapshot.

You can verify that the snapshot was created using the console.

Your snapshot is listed in the Snapshots in the same row as the volume.

Editing a Snapshot Schedule

For stored volumes, AWS Storage Gateway creates a default snapshot schedule of once a day. This schedule helps ensure that your gateway can keep up with the rate of incoming write operations on your local storage volumes.
Note
You can't remove the default snapshot schedule. Stored volumes require at least one snapshot schedule. However, you can change a snapshot schedule by specifying either the time the snapshot occurs each day or the frequency (every 1, 2, 4, 8, 12, or 24 hours), or both.

For cached volumes, AWS Storage Gateway doesn't create a default snapshot schedule. No default schedule is created because your data is stored in Amazon S3, so you don't need snapshots or a snapshot schedule for disaster recovery purposes. However, you can set up a snapshot schedule at any time if you need to. Creating snapshot for your cached volume provides an additional way to recover your data if necessary.

By using the following steps, you can edit the snapshot schedule for a volume.

To edit the snapshot schedule for a volume
2. In the navigation pane, choose Volumes, and then choose the volume the snapshot was created from.
3. On the Actions menu, choose Edit snapshot schedule.
4. In the Edit snapshot schedule dialog box, modify the schedule, and then choose Save.

Deleting a Snapshot

You can delete a snapshot of your storage volume. For example, you might want to do this if you have taken many snapshots of a storage volume over time and you don't need the older snapshots. Because snapshots are incremental backups, if you delete a snapshot, only the data that is not needed in other snapshots is deleted.

Topics
- Deleting Snapshots by Using the AWS SDK for Java (p. 105)
- Deleting Snapshots by Using the AWS SDK for .NET (p. 108)
- Deleting Snapshots by Using the AWS Tools for Windows PowerShell (p. 112)

On the Amazon EBS console, you can delete snapshots one at a time. For information about how to delete snapshots using the Amazon EBS console, see Deleting an Amazon EBS Snapshot in the Amazon EC2 User Guide.

To delete multiple snapshots at a time, you can use one of the AWS SDKs that supports AWS Storage Gateway operations. For examples, see Deleting Snapshots by Using the AWS SDK for Java (p. 105), Deleting Snapshots by Using the AWS SDK for .NET (p. 108), and Deleting Snapshots by Using the AWS Tools for Windows PowerShell (p. 112).

Deleting Snapshots by Using the AWS SDK for Java

To delete many snapshots associated with a volume, you can use a programmatic approach. The example following demonstrates how to delete snapshots using the AWS SDK for Java. To use the example code, you should be familiar with running a Java console application. For more information, see Getting Started in the AWS SDK for Java Developer Guide. If you need to just delete a few snapshots, use the console as described in Deleting a Snapshot (p. 105).
Example: Deleting Snapshots by Using the AWS SDK for Java

The following Java code example lists the snapshots for each volume of a gateway and whether the snapshot start time is before or after a specified date. It uses the AWS SDK for Java API for AWS Storage Gateway and Amazon EC2. The Amazon EC2 API includes operations for working with snapshots.

Update the code to provide the service endpoint, your gateway Amazon Resource Name (ARN), and the number of days back you want to save snapshots. Snapshots taken before this cutoff are deleted. You also need to specify the Boolean value `viewOnly`, which indicates whether you want to view the snapshots to be deleted or to actually perform the snapshot deletions. Run the code first with just the view option (that is, with `viewOnly` set to `true`) to see what the code deletes. For a list of AWS service endpoints you can use with AWS Storage Gateway, see Regions and Endpoints in the AWS General Reference.

```java
import java.io.IOException;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.Calendar;
import java.util.Collection;
import java.util.Date;
import java.util.GregorianCalendar;
import java.util.List;
import com.amazonaws.auth.PropertiesCredentials;
import com.amazonaws.services.ec2.AmazonEC2Client;
import com.amazonaws.services.ec2.model.DeleteSnapshotRequest;
import com.amazonaws.services.ec2.model.DescribeSnapshotsRequest;
import com.amazonaws.services.ec2.model.DescribeSnapshotsResult;
import com.amazonaws.services.ec2.model.Filter;
import com.amazonaws.services.ec2.model.Snapshot;
import com.amazonaws.services.storagegateway.AWSStorageGatewayClient;
import com.amazonaws.services.storagegateway.model.ListVolumesRequest;
import com.amazonaws.services.storagegateway.model.ListVolumesResult;
import com.amazonaws.services.storagegateway.model.VolumeInfo;

public class ListDeleteVolumeSnapshotsExample {
    public static AWSStorageGatewayClient sgClient;
    public static AmazonEC2Client ec2Client;

    static String serviceURLSG = "https://storagegateway.us-east-1.amazonaws.com";
    static String serviceURLEC2 = "https://ec2.us-east-1.amazonaws.com";

    // The gatewayARN
    public static String gatewayARN = "*** provide gateway ARN ***";

    // The number of days back you want to save snapshots. Snapshots before this cutoff are deleted
    // if viewOnly = false.
    public static int daysBack = 10;

    // true = show what will be deleted; false = actually delete snapshots that meet the
daysBack criteria
    public static boolean viewOnly = true;

    public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException {
        // Create a storage gateway and amazon ec2 client
        sgClient = new AWSStorageGatewayClient(new PropertiesCredentials(
            ListDeleteVolumeSnapshotsExample.class.getResourceAsStream("AwsCredentials.properties")));
        sgClient.setEndpoint(serviceURLSG);
        ec2Client = new AmazonEC2Client(new PropertiesCredentials(
```
```java
List<VolumeInfo> volumes = ListVolumesForGateway();
DeleteSnapshotsForVolumes(volumes, daysBack);

public static List<VolumeInfo> ListVolumesForGateway()
{
    List<VolumeInfo> volumes = new ArrayList<VolumeInfo>;
    String marker = null;
    do {
        ListVolumesRequest request = new ListVolumesRequest().withGatewayARN(gatewayARN);
        ListVolumesResult result = sgClient.listVolumes(request);
        marker = result.getMarker();
        for (VolumeInfo vi : result.getVolumeInfos())
        {
            volumes.add(vi);
            System.out.println(OutputVolumeInfo(vi));
        }
    } while (marker != null);
    return volumes;
}

private static void DeleteSnapshotsForVolumes(List<VolumeInfo> volumes,
                                             int daysBack)
{
    // Find snapshots and delete for each volume
    for (VolumeInfo vi : volumes)
    {
        String volumeARN = vi.getVolumeARN();
        String volumeId = volumeARN.substring(volumeARN.lastIndexOf("/")+1).toLowerCase();
        Collection<Filter> filters = new ArrayList<Filter>();
        Filter filter = new Filter().withName("volume-id").withValues(volumeId);
        filters.add(filter);

        DescribeSnapshotsRequest describeSnapshotsRequest =
        new DescribeSnapshotsRequest().withFilters(filters);
        DescribeSnapshotsResult describeSnapshotsResult =
        ec2Client.describeSnapshots(describeSnapshotsRequest);
        List<Snapshot> snapshots = describeSnapshotsResult.getSnapshots();
        System.out.println("volume-id = " + volumeId);
        for (Snapshot s : snapshots){
            StringBuilder sb = new StringBuilder();
            boolean meetsCriteria = !CompareDates(daysBack, s.getStartTime());
            sb.append(s.getSnapshotId() + ", " + s.getStartTime().toString());
            sb.append("meets criteria for delete? " + meetsCriteria);
            sb.append("deleted? ");
            if (!viewOnly & meetsCriteria) {
                sb.append("yes");
                DeleteSnapshotRequest deleteSnapshotRequest =
                new DeleteSnapshotRequest().withSnapshotId(s.getSnapshotId());
                ec2Client.deleteSnapshot(deleteSnapshotRequest);
            } else {
                sb.append("no");
            }
            System.out.println(sb.toString());
        }
    }
```
Deleting Snapshots by Using the AWS SDK for .NET

To delete many snapshots associated with a volume, you can use a programmatic approach. The following example demonstrates how to delete snapshots using the AWS SDK for .NET version 2 and 3. To use the example code, you should be familiar with running a .NET console application. For more information, see Getting Started in the AWS SDK for .NET Developer Guide. If you need to just delete a few snapshots, use the console as described in Deleting a Snapshot (p. 105).

Example: Deleting Snapshots by Using the AWS SDK for .NET

In the following C# code example, an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) user can list the snapshots for each volume of a gateway. The user can then determine whether the snapshot start time is before or after a specified date (retention period) and delete snapshots that have passed the retention period. The example uses the AWS SDK for .NET API for AWS Storage Gateway and Amazon EC2. The Amazon EC2 API includes operations for working with snapshots.

The following code example uses the AWS SDK for .NET version 2 and 3. You can migrate older versions of .NET to the newer version. For more information, see Migrating Your Code to the Latest Version of the AWS SDK for .NET.

Update the code to provide the service endpoint, your gateway Amazon Resource Name (ARN), and the number of days back you want to save snapshots. Snapshots taken before this cutoff are deleted. You also need to specify the Boolean value `viewOnly`, which indicates whether you want to view the snapshots to be deleted or to actually perform the snapshot deletions. Run the code first with just the view option (that is, with `viewOnly` set to `true`) to see what the code deletes. For a list of AWS service endpoints you can use with AWS Storage Gateway, see Regions and Endpoints in the AWS General Reference.

First, you create an IAM user and attach the minimum IAM policy to the IAM user. Then you schedule automated snapshots for your gateway.

The following code creates the minimum policy that allows an IAM user to delete snapshots. In this example, the policy is named `sgw-delete-snapshot`.

```java
private static String OutputVolumeInfo(VolumeInfo vi) {
    String volumeInfo = String.format(
        "Volume Info:
        " +
        "  ARN: %s
        " +
        "  Type: %s",
        vi.getVolumeARN(),
        vi.getVolumeType());
    return volumeInfo;
}

// Returns the date in two formats as a list
public static boolean CompareDates(int daysBack, Date snapshotDate) {
    Date today = new Date();
    Calendar cal = new GregorianCalendar();
    cal.setTime(today);
    cal.add(Calendar.DAY_OF_MONTH, -daysBack);
    Date cutoffDate = cal.getTime();
    return (snapshotDate.compareTo(cutoffDate) > 0) ? true : false;
}
```
The following C# code finds all snapshots in the specified gateway that match the volumes and the specified cut-off period and then deletes them.

```csharp
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Text;
using Amazon.EC2;
using Amazon.EC2.Model;
using Amazon.StorageGateway.Model;
using Amazon.StorageGateway;

namespace DeleteStorageGatewaySnapshotNS
{
    class Program
    {
        /*
        * Replace the variables below to match your environment.
        */
        /* IAM AccessKey */
        static String AwsAccessKey = "AKIA................";

        /* IAM SecretKey */
        static String AwsSecretKey = "***********************";

        /* AWS Account number, 12 digits, no hyphen */
        static String OwnerID = "123456789012";

        /* Your Gateway ARN. Use a Storage Gateway ID, sgw-XXXXXXXX */

        /* Snapshot status: "completed", "pending", "error" */
        static String SnapshotStatus = "completed";

        /* AWS Region where your gateway is activated */
        static String AwsRegion = "ap-southeast-2";
    }
}
/* Minimum age of snapshots before they are deleted (retention policy) */
static int daysBack = 30;

/*
 * Do not modify the four lines below.
 */
static AmazonEC2Config ec2Config;
static AmazonEC2Client ec2Client;
static AmazonStorageGatewayClient sgClient;
static AmazonStorageGatewayConfig sgConfig;

static void Main(string[] args)
{
    // Create an EC2 client.
    ec2Config = new AmazonEC2Config();
    ec2Config.ServiceURL = "https://ec2." + AwsRegion + ".amazonaws.com";
    ec2Client = new AmazonEC2Client(AwsAccessKey, AwsSecretKey, ec2Config);

    // Create a Storage Gateway client.
    sgConfig = new AmazonStorageGatewayConfig();
    sgClient = new AmazonStorageGatewayClient(AwsAccessKey, AwsSecretKey, sgConfig);

    List<VolumeInfo> StorageGatewayVolumes = ListVolumesForGateway();
    List<Snapshot> StorageGatewaySnapshots = ListSnapshotsForVolumes(StorageGatewayVolumes, daysBack);
    DeleteSnapshots(StorageGatewaySnapshots);
}

/*
 * List all volumes for your gateway
 * returns: A list of VolumeInfos, or null.
 */
private static List<VolumeInfo> ListVolumesForGateway()
{
    ListVolumesResponse response = new ListVolumesResponse();
    try
    {
        ListVolumesRequest request = new ListVolumesRequest();
        request.GatewayARN = GatewayARN;
        response = sgClient.ListVolumes(request);

        foreach (VolumeInfo vi in response.VolumeInfos)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(OutputVolumeInfo(vi));
        }
    }
    catch (AmazonStorageGatewayException ex)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
    }
    return response.VolumeInfos;
}

/*
 * Gets the list of snapshots that match the requested volumes
 * and cutoff period.
 */
private static List<Snapshot> ListSnapshotsForVolumes(List<VolumeInfo> volumes, int snapshotAge)
{
    List<Snapshot> SelectedSnapshots = new List<Snapshot>();
    return SelectedSnapshots;
}
try {
    foreach (VolumeInfo vi in volumes) {
        String volumeARN = vi.VolumeARN;
        String volumeID = volumeARN.Substring(volumeARN.LastIndexOf("/") + 1).ToLower();

        DescribeSnapshotsRequest describeSnapshotsRequest = new DescribeSnapshotsRequest();

        Filter ownerFilter = new Filter();
        List<String> ownerValues = new List<String>();
        ownerValues.Add(OwnerID);
        ownerFilter.Name = "owner-id";
        ownerFilter.Values = ownerValues;
        describeSnapshotsRequest.Filters.Add(ownerFilter);

        Filter statusFilter = new Filter();
        List<String> statusValues = new List<String>();
        statusValues.Add(SnapshotStatus);
        statusFilter.Name = "status";
        statusFilter.Values = statusValues;
        describeSnapshotsRequest.Filters.Add(statusFilter);

        Filter volumeFilter = new Filter();
        List<String> volumeValues = new List<String>();
        volumeValues.Add(volumeID);
        volumeFilter.Name = "volume-id";
        volumeFilter.Values = volumeValues;
        describeSnapshotsRequest.Filters.Add(volumeFilter);

        DescribeSnapshotsResponse describeSnapshotsResponse = ec2Client.DescribeSnapshots(describeSnapshotsRequest);
        List<Snapshot> snapshots = describeSnapshotsResponse.Snapshots;

        Console.WriteLine("volume-id = " + volumeID);
        foreach (Snapshot s in snapshots) {
            if (IsSnapshotPastRetentionPeriod(snapshotAge, s.StartTime)) {
                Console.WriteLine(s.SnapshotId + ", " + s.VolumeId + ", ", s.StartTime + ", " + s.Description);
                SelectedSnapshots.Add(s);
            }
        }
    }
} catch (AmazonEC2Exception ex) {
    Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
} return SelectedSnapshots;
} /* Deletes a list of snapshots. */
private static void DeleteSnapshots(List<Snapshot> snapshots)
{ try {
    foreach (Snapshot s in snapshots)
    {
Deleting Snapshots

DeleteSnapshotRequest deleteSnapshotRequest = new
DeleteSnapshotRequest(s.SnapshotId);
DeleteSnapshotResponse response =
ec2Client.DeleteSnapshot(deleteSnapshotRequest);
Console.WriteLine("Volume: " +
  s.VolumeId +
  " => Snapshot: " +
  s.SnapshotId +
  " Response: "
  + response.HttpStatusCode.ToString());
}
}
catch (AmazonEC2Exception ex)
{
  Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
}
}

/*
* Checks if the snapshot creation date is past the retention period.
*/
private static Boolean IsSnapshotPastRetentionPeriod(int daysBack, DateTime
snapshotDate)
{
  DateTime cutoffDate = DateTime.Now.Add(new TimeSpan(-daysBack, 0, 0, 0));
  return (DateTime.Compare(snapshotDate, cutoffDate) < 0) ? true : false;
}

/*
* Displays information related to a volume.
*/
private static String OutputVolumeInfo(VolumeInfo vi)
{
  String volumeInfo = String.Format(
    "Volume Info:\n" +
    "  ARN: {0}\n" +
    "  Type: {1}\n",
    vi.VolumeARN,
    vi.VolumeType);
  return volumeInfo;
}

Deleting Snapshots by Using the AWS Tools for Windows PowerShell

To delete many snapshots associated with a volume, you can use a programmatic approach. The example following demonstrates how to delete snapshots using the AWS Tools for Windows PowerShell. To use the example script, you should be familiar with running a PowerShell script. For more information, see Getting Started in the AWS Tools for Windows PowerShell. If you need to delete just a few snapshots, use the console as described in Deleting a Snapshot (p. 105).

Example : Deleting Snapshots by Using the AWS Tools for Windows PowerShell

The following PowerShell script example lists the snapshots for each volume of a gateway and whether the snapshot start time is before or after a specified date. It uses the AWS Tools for Windows PowerShell cmdlets for AWS Storage Gateway and Amazon EC2. The Amazon EC2 API includes operations for working with snapshots.

You need to update the script and provide your gateway Amazon Resource Name (ARN) and the number of days back you want to save snapshots. Snapshots taken before this cutoff are deleted. You also need...
to specify the Boolean value `viewOnly`, which indicates whether you want to view the snapshots to be deleted or to actually perform the snapshot deletions. Run the code first with just the view option (that is, with `viewOnly` set to `true`) to see what the code deletes.

```powershell
# DESCRIPTION
Delete snapshots of a specified volume that match given criteria.

# NOTES
PREREQUISITES:
2) Credentials and AWS Region stored in session using Initialize-AWSDefault.
   For more info see, http://docs.aws.amazon.com/powershell/latest/userguide/specifying-your-aws-credentials.html

# EXAMPLE
powershell.exe .\SG_DeleteSnapshots.ps1
#>

# Criteria to use to filter the results returned.
$daysBack = 18
$gatewayARN = "**** provide gateway ARN ****"
$viewOnly = $true;

#ListVolumes
$volumesResult = Get-SGVolume -GatewayARN $gatewayARN
$volumes = $volumesResult.VolumeInfos
Write-Output("nVolume List")
foreach ($volumes in $volumesResult)
{
  Write-Output("nVolume Info:")
  Write-Output("ARN:  " + $volumes.VolumeARN)
  Write-Output("Type: " + $volumes.VolumeType)
}

Write-Output("nWhich snapshots meet the criteria?")
foreach ($volume in $volumesResult)
{
  $volumeARN = $volume.VolumeARN
  $volumeId = ($volumeARN-split"/")[3].ToLower()
  $filter = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter
  $filter.Name = "volume-id"
  $filter.Value.Add($volumeId)
  $snapshots = get-EC2Snapshot -Filter $filter
  Write-Output("nFor volume-id = " + $volumeId)
  foreach ($s in $snapshots)
  {
    $d = ([DateTime]::Now).AddDays(-$daysBack)
    $meetsCriteria = $false
    if ([DateTime]::Compare($d, $s.StartTime) -gt 0)
    {
      $meetsCriteria = $true
    }
    $sb = $s.SnapshotId + ", " + $s.StartTime + ", meets criteria for delete? " + $meetsCriteria
    if (!$viewOnly -AND $meetsCriteria)
    {
      $resp = Remove-EC2Snapshot -SnapshotId $s.SnapshotId
      #Can get RequestId from response for troubleshooting.
      $sb = $sb + ", deleted? yes"
    }
  }
}
```
Understanding Volume Status

Each volume has an associated status that tells you at a glance what the health of the volume is. Most of the time, the status indicates that the volume is functioning normally and that no action is needed on your part. In some cases, the status indicates a problem with the volume that might or might not require action on your part. You can find information following to help you decide when you need to act.

Topics
- Understanding Cached Volume Status Transitions (p. 117)
- Understanding Stored Volume Status Transitions (p. 119)

You can see volume status on the AWS Storage Gateway console or by using one of the Storage Gateway API operations, for example DescribeCachediSCSIVolumes or DescribeStorediSCSIVolumes. The following example shows volume status on the Storage Gateway console. Volume status appears in the Status column for each storage volume on your gateway. A volume that is functioning normally has a status of AVAILABLE.

In the following table, you can find a description of each storage volume status, and if and when you should act based on each status. The AVAILABLE status is the normal status of a volume. A volume should have this status all or most of the time it’s in use.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AVAILABLE</td>
<td>The volume is available for use. This status is the normal running status for a volume.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When a BOOTSTRAPPING phase is completed, the volume returns to AVAILABLE state. That is, the gateway has synchronized any changes made to the volume since it first entered PASS THROUGH status.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOOTSTRAPPING</td>
<td>The gateway is synchronizing data locally with a copy of the data stored in AWS. You typically don't need to take action for this status, because the storage volume automatically sees the AVAILABLE status in most cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The following are scenarios when a volume status is BOOTSTRAPPING:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A gateway has unexpectedly shut down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A gateway's upload buffer has been exceeded. In this scenario, bootstrapping occurs when your volume has the PASS THROUGH status and the amount of free upload buffer increases sufficiently. You can provide additional upload buffer space as one way to increase the percentage of free upload buffer space. In this particular scenario, the storage volume goes from PASS THROUGH to BOOTSTRAPPING to AVAILABLE status. You can continue to use this volume during this bootstrapping period. However, you can't take snapshots of the volume at this point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• You are creating a stored volume gateway and preserving existing local disk data. In this scenario, your gateway starts uploading all of the data to AWS. The volume has the BOOTSTRAPPING status until all of the data from the local disk is copied to AWS. You can use the volume during this</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

API Version 2013-06-30
114
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bootstrapping period. However, you can't take snapshots of the volume at this point.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATING</td>
<td>The volume is currently being created and is not ready for use. The CREATING status is transitional. No action is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DELETING</td>
<td>The volume is currently being deleted. The DELETING status is transitional. No action is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRRECOVERABLE</td>
<td>An error occurred from which the volume cannot recover. For information on what to do in this situation, see Troubleshooting Volume Issues (p. 231).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Status

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| PASS THROUGH | Data maintained locally is out of sync with data stored in AWS. Data written to a volume while the volume is in PASS THROUGH status remains in the cache until the volume status is BOOTSTRAPPING, and starts to upload to AWS when BOOTSTRAPPING status begins. The PASS THROUGH status can occur for several reasons, listed following:  
  - The PASS THROUGH status occurs if your gateway has run out of upload buffer space. Your applications can continue to read from and write data to your storage volumes while the volumes have the PASS THROUGH status. However, the gateway isn't writing any of your volume data to its upload buffer or uploading any of this data to AWS. The gateway continues to upload any data written to the volume before the volume entered the PASS THROUGH status. Any pending or scheduled snapshots of a storage volume fail while the volume has the PASS THROUGH status. For information about what to do when your storage volume has the PASS THROUGH status because the upload buffer has been exceeded, see Troubleshooting Volume Issues (p. 231).  
  - The PASS THROUGH status occurs when there is more than one storage volume bootstrapping at once. Only one gateway storage volume can bootstrap at a time. For example, suppose that you create two storage volumes and choose to preserve existing data on both of them. In this case, the second storage volume has the PASS THROUGH status until the first storage volume finishes bootstrapping. In this scenario, you don't need to act. Each storage volume changes to the AVAILABLE status automatically when it is finished being created. You can read and write to the storage volume while it has the PASS THROUGH or BOOTSTRAPPING status.  
  - Infrequently, the PASS THROUGH status can indicate that a disk allocated for upload buffer use has failed. For information about what action to take in this scenario, see Troubleshooting Volume Issues (p. 231).  
  - The PASS THROUGH status can occur when a volume is in ACTIVE or BOOTSTRAPPING state. In this case, the volume receives a write, but the upload buffer has insufficient capacity to record (log) that write.  
  - The PASS THROUGH status occurs when a volume is in any state and the gateway is not shut down cleanly. This type of shutdown can happen because the software crashed or the VM was powered off. In this case, a volume in any state transitions to PASS THROUGH status. |

To return to ACTIVE status, a volume in PASS THROUGH must complete the BOOTSTRAPPING phase. During BOOTSTRAPPING, the volume re-establishes synchronization with AWS, so that it can resume the record (log) of changes to the volume, and re-enable CreateSnapshot functionality. During BOOTSTRAPPING, writes to the volume are recorded in upload buffer.

Understanding Volume Status

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RESTORING</td>
<td>The volume is being restored from an existing snapshot. This status applies only for stored volumes. For more information, see How AWS Storage Gateway Works (Architecture) (p. 2). If you restore two storage volumes at the same time, both storage volumes show RESTORING as their status. Each storage volume changes to the AVAILABLE status automatically when it is finished being created. You can read and write to a storage volume and take a snapshot of it while it has the RESTORING status.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESTORING PASS THROUGH</td>
<td>The volume is being restored from an existing snapshot and has encountered an upload buffer issue. This status applies only for stored volumes. For more information, see How AWS Storage Gateway Works (Architecture) (p. 2). One reason that can cause the RESTORING PASS THROUGH status is if your gateway has run out of upload buffer space. Your applications can continue to read from and write data to your storage volumes while they have the RESTORING PASS THROUGH status. However, you can’t take snapshots of a storage volume during the RESTORING PASS THROUGH status period. For information about what action to take when your storage volume has the RESTORING PASS THROUGH status because upload buffer capacity has been exceeded, see Troubleshooting Volume Issues (p. 231). Infrequently, the RESTORING PASS THROUGH status can indicate that a disk allocated for an upload buffer has failed. For information about what action to take in this scenario, see Troubleshooting Volume Issues (p. 231).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPLOAD BUFFER NOT CONFIGURED</td>
<td>You can’t create or use the volume because the gateway doesn’t have an upload buffer configured. For information on how to add upload buffer capacity for volumes in a cached volume setup, see Adding and Removing Upload Buffer (p. 153). For information on how to add upload buffer capacity for volumes in a stored volume setup, see Adding and Removing Upload Buffer (p. 153).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Understanding Cached Volume Status Transitions

Use the following state diagram to understand the most common transitions between statuses for volumes in cached gateways. You don’t need to understand the diagram in detail to use your gateway effectively. Rather, the diagram provides detailed information if you are interested in knowing more about how volume gateways work.

The diagram doesn’t show the UPLOAD BUFFER NOT CONFIGURED status or the DELETING status. Volume states in the diagram appear as green, yellow, and red boxes. You can interpret the colors as described following.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Color</th>
<th>Volume Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Green</td>
<td>The gateway is operating normally. The volume status is AVAILABLE or eventually becomes AVAILABLE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yellow</td>
<td>The volume has the PASS THROUGH status, which indicates there is a potential issue with the storage volume. If this status appears because the upload buffer space has run out, your applications can continue to read from and write data to the storage volume, but you can’t take snapshots of the storage volume during this time. For information about what action to take in this scenario, see Troubleshooting Volume Issues (p. 231). Infrequently, the PASS THROUGH status can indicate that a disk allocated for an upload buffer has failed. For information about what action to take in this scenario, see Troubleshooting Volume Issues (p. 231).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Understanding Volume Status

### Color

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Color</th>
<th>Volume Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Green</td>
<td>buffer space is filled, then in some cases buffer space becomes available again. At that point, the storage volume self-corrects to the AVAILABLE status. In other cases, you might have to add more upload buffer space to your gateway to allow the storage volume status to become AVAILABLE. For information on how to troubleshoot a case when upload buffer capacity has been exceeded, see Troubleshooting Volume Issues (p. 231). For information on how to add upload buffer capacity, see Adding and Removing Upload Buffer (p. 153).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td>The storage volume has the IRRECOVERABLE status. In this case, you should delete the volume. For information on how to do this, see To remove a volume (p. 104).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the diagram, a transition between two states is depicted with a labeled line. For example, the transition from the CREATING status to the AVAILABLE status is labeled as *Create Basic Volume or Create Volume from Snapshot*. This transition represents creating a cached volume. For more information about creating storage volumes, see Adding a Volume (p. 100).

![Diagram showing volume states and transitions](image)

**Key**

- **Gateway Operating Normally**
- **Temporary State or Irrecoverable Condition**
- **Irrecoverable**

* e.g. run out of upload buffer
** e.g. lost connectivity

**Note**

The volume status of PASS THROUGH appears as yellow in this diagram. However, this doesn't match the color of this status icon in the Status box of the Storage Gateway console.
Understanding Stored Volume Status Transitions

Use the following state diagram to understand the most common transitions between statuses for volumes in stored gateways. You don't need to understand the diagram in detail to use your gateway effectively. Rather, the diagram provides detailed information if you are interested in understanding more about how volume gateways work.

The diagram doesn't show the UPLOAD BUFFER NOT CONFIGURED status or the DELETING status. Volume states in the diagram appear as green, yellow, and red boxes. You can interpret the colors as described following.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Color</th>
<th>Volume Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Green</td>
<td>The gateway is operating normally. The volume status is AVAILABLE or eventually becomes AVAILABLE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yellow</td>
<td>When you are creating a storage volume and preserving data, then the path from the CREATING status to the PASS THROUGH status occurs if another volume is bootstrapping. In this case, the volume with the PASS THROUGH status goes to the BOOTSTRAPPING status and then to the AVAILABLE status when the first volume is finished bootstrapping. Other than the specific scenario mentioned, yellow (PASS THROUGH status) indicates that there is a potential issue with the storage volume, the most common one being an upload buffer issue. If upload buffer capacity has been exceeded, then in some cases buffer space becomes available again. At that point, the storage volume self-corrects to the AVAILABLE status. In other cases, you might have to add more upload buffer capacity to your gateway to return the storage volume to the AVAILABLE status. For information on how to troubleshoot a case when upload buffer capacity has been exceeded, see Troubleshooting Volume Issues (p. 231). For information on how to add upload buffer capacity, see Adding and Removing Upload Buffer (p. 153).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td>The storage volume has the IRRECOVERABLE status. In this case, you should delete the volume. For information on how to do this, see Deleting a Volume (p. 103).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the following diagram, a transition between two states is depicted with a labeled line. For example, the transition from the CREATING status to the AVAILABLE status is labeled as Create Basic Volume and represents creating a storage volume without preserving data or creating the volume from a snapshot.
Managing Your Tape Gateway

Following, you can find information about how to manage your tape gateway resources.

Topics
- Adding Virtual Tapes (p. 120)
- Retrieving Archived Tapes (p. 121)
- Viewing Tape Usage (p. 121)
- Deleting Tapes (p. 122)
- Disabling Your Tape Gateway (p. 122)
- Understanding Tape Status (p. 123)

Adding Virtual Tapes

You can add tapes in your tape gateway when you need them. For information about how to create tapes, see Creating Tapes (p. 48). After your tape is created, information about your tape is displayed in the columns and in the Details tab of your tape library. For information about tape gateway tape limits, see AWS Storage Gateway Limits (p. 292).
Retrieving Archived Tapes

To access data stored on an archived virtual tape, you must first retrieve the tape that you want to your tape gateway. Your tape gateway provides one virtual tape library (VTL) for each gateway. You can restore a tape to a tape gateway.

If you have multiple tape gateways in an AWS Region, you can retrieve a tape to only one gateway.

The retrieved tape is write-protected; you can only read the data on the tape.

Important
It takes up to three to five hours for the tape to be available in your tape gateway.

Note
There is a charge for retrieving tapes from archive. For detailed pricing information, see AWS Storage Gateway Pricing.

To retrieve an archived tape to your gateway

2. In the navigation pane, choose Tapes. To display all virtual tapes that have been archived by all your gateways, use search.
3. Choose the virtual tape you want to retrieve, and choose Retrieve Tape for Actions.
   
   Note
   The status of the virtual tape that you want to retrieve must be ARCHIVED.

4. In the Retrieve tape dialog box, for Barcode, verify that the barcode identifies the virtual tape you want to retrieve.
5. For Gateway, choose the gateway that you want to retrieve the archived tape to, and then choose Retrieve tape.

The status of the tape changes from ARCHIVED to RETRIEVING. At this point, your data is being moved from the virtual tape shelf (backed by Amazon Glacier) to the virtual tape library (backed by Amazon S3). After all the data is moved, the status of the virtual tape in the archive changes to RETRIEVED.

Note
Retrieved virtual tapes are read-only.

Viewing Tape Usage

When you write data to a tape, you can view the amount of data stored on the tape in the AWS Storage Gateway Management Console. The Details tab for each tape shows the tape usage information.

To view the amount of data stored on a tape

2. In the navigation pane, choose Tapes and select the tape that you are interested in.
3. Choose the Details tab.
4. The following fields provide information about the tape:
   
   • **Size**: The total capacity of the selected tape.
   • **Used**: The size of data written to the tape by your backup application.
Deleting Tapes

You can delete virtual tapes from your tape gateway by using the AWS Storage Gateway console.

Note
If the tape you want to delete from your tape gateway has a status of RETRIEVED, you must first eject the tape using your backup application before deleting the tape. For instructions on how to eject a tape using the Symantec NetBackup software, see Archiving the Tape (p. 85). After the tape is ejected, the tape status changes back to ARCHIVED. You can then delete the tape.

Note
This value is not available for tapes created before May 13, 2015.

To delete a virtual tape

2. In the navigation pane, choose Tapes.
3. Choose the virtual tape that you want to delete.
4. On the Actions menu, choose Delete tape. A confirmation box appears, as shown following.

![Confirmation box](image)

5. Make sure that the tape listed is the tape you intend to delete, select the confirmation check box, and then choose Delete.

After the tape is deleted, it disappears from the tape gateway.

Disabling Your Tape Gateway

You disable a tape gateway if the tape gateway has failed and you want to recover the tapes from the failed gateway to another gateway.

To recover the tapes, you must first disable the failed gateway. Disabling a tape gateway locks down the virtual tapes in that gateway. That is, any data that you might write to these tapes after disabling
the gateway isn't sent to AWS. You can only disable a gateway on the Storage Gateway console if the gateway is no longer connected to AWS. If the gateway is connected to AWS, you can't disable the tape gateway.

You disable a tape gateway as part of data recovery. For more information about recovering tapes, see You Need to Recover a Virtual Tape from a Malfunctioning Tape Gateway (p. 235).

To disable your gateway
2. In the navigation pane, choose Gateways, and then choose the failed gateway.
3. Choose the Details tab for the gateway to display the disable gateway message.
4. Choose Create recovery tapes.
5. Choose Disable gateway.

Understanding Tape Status

Each tape has an associated status that tells you at a glance what the health of the tape is. Most of the time, the status indicates that the tape is functioning normally and that no action is needed on your part. In some cases, the status indicates a problem with the tape that might require action on your part. You can find information following to help you decide when you need to act.

Topics
• Understanding Tape Status Information in a VTL (p. 123)
• Determining Tape Status in an Archive (p. 124)

Understanding Tape Status Information in a VTL

A tape's status must be AVAILABLE for you to read or write to the tape. The following table lists and describes possible status values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Tape Data Is Stored In</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CREATING</td>
<td>The virtual tape is being created. The tape can't be loaded into a tape drive, because the tape is being created.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AVAILABLE</td>
<td>The virtual tape is created and ready to be loaded into a tape drive.</td>
<td>Amazon S3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN TRANSIT TO VTS</td>
<td>The virtual tape has been ejected and is being uploaded for archive. At this point, your tape gateway is uploading data to AWS. If the amount of data being uploaded is small, this status might not appear. When the upload is completed, the status changes to ARCHIVING.</td>
<td>Amazon S3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARCHIVING</td>
<td>The virtual tape is being moved by your tape gateway to the archive, which is backed by Amazon Glacier. This process happens after the data upload to AWS is completed.</td>
<td>Data is being moved from Amazon S3 to Amazon Glacier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DELETING</td>
<td>The virtual tape is being deleted.</td>
<td>Data is being deleted from Amazon S3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Status

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DELETED</td>
<td>The virtual tape has been successfully deleted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RETRIEVING</td>
<td>The virtual tape is being retrieved from the archive to your tape gateway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The virtual tape can be retrieved only to a tape gateway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RETRIEVED</td>
<td>The virtual tape is retrieved from the archive. The retrieved tape is write-protected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RECOVERED</td>
<td>The virtual tape is recovered and is read-only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When your tape gateway is not accessible for any reason, you can recover virtual tapes associated with that tape gateway to another tape gateway. To recover the virtual tapes, first disable the inaccessible tape gateway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRRECOVERABLE</td>
<td>The virtual tape can’t be read from or written to. This status indicates an error in your tape gateway.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Determining Tape Status in an Archive

You can use the following procedure to determine the status of a virtual tape in an archive.

**To determine the status of a virtual tape**

2. In the navigation pane, choose Tapes.
3. In the Status column of the tape library grid, check the status of the tape.

   The tape status also appears in the Details tab of each virtual tape.

Following, you can find a description of the possible status values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ARCHIVED</td>
<td>The virtual tape has been ejected and is uploaded to the archive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RETRIEVING</td>
<td>The virtual tape is being retrieved from the archive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The virtual tape can be retrieved only to a tape gateway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RETRIEVED</td>
<td>The virtual tape has been retrieved from the archive. The retrieved tape is read-only.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For additional information about how to work with tapes and VTL devices, see Working With Tapes (p. 258).
Monitoring Your Gateway and Resources

In this section, you can find information about how to monitor a gateway, including monitoring resources associated with the gateway and monitoring the upload buffer and cache storage. You use the AWS Management Console to view metrics for your gateway. For example, you can view the number of bytes used in read and write operations, the time spent in read and write operations, and the time taken to retrieve data from the AWS cloud. With metrics, you can track the health of your gateway and set up alarms to notify you when one or more metrics fall outside a defined threshold.

Topics
- Understanding Gateway Metrics (p. 125)
- Monitoring the Upload Buffer (p. 129)
- Monitoring Cache Storage (p. 131)
- Monitoring Your File Share (p. 132)
- Monitoring Your Volume Gateway (p. 136)
- Monitoring Your Tape Gateway (p. 144)
- Logging AWS Storage Gateway API Calls by Using AWS CloudTrail (p. 147)

AWS Storage Gateway provides Amazon CloudWatch metrics at no additional charge. Storage Gateway metrics are recorded for a period of two weeks. By using these metrics, you can access historical information and get a better perspective on how your gateway and volumes are performing. For detailed information about CloudWatch, see the Amazon CloudWatch User Guide.

Understanding Gateway Metrics

For the discussion in this topic, we define gateway metrics as metrics that are scoped to the gateway—that is, they measure something about the gateway. Because a gateway contains one or more volumes, a gateway-specific metric is representative of all volumes on the gateway. For example, the CloudBytesUploaded metric is the total number of bytes that the gateway sent to the cloud during the reporting period. This metric includes the activity of all the volumes on the gateway.

When working with gateway metric data, you specify the unique identification of the gateway that you are interested in viewing metrics for. To do this, you specify both the GatewayId and the GatewayName values. When you want to work with metric for a gateway, you specify the gateway dimension in the metrics namespace, which distinguishes a gateway-specific metric from a volume-specific metric. For more information, see Using Amazon CloudWatch Metrics (p. 136).

The following table describes the Storage Gateway metrics that you can use to get information about your gateway. The entries in the table are grouped functionally by measure.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metric</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Applies To..</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CacheHitPercent</td>
<td>Percent of application reads served from the cache. The</td>
<td>File, Cached volumes and Tape.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Metric** | **Description** | **Applies To..**
---|---|---
CachePercentUsed | Percent use of the gateway's cache storage. The sample is taken at the end of the reporting period. | File, Cached volumes and Tape. Unit: Percent
CachePercentDirty | Percent of the gateway's cache that has not been persisted to AWS. The sample is taken at the end of the reporting period. | File, Cached volumes and Tape. Unit: Percent
CloudBytesDownloaded | The total number of compressed bytes that the gateway downloaded from AWS during the reporting period. Use this metric with the Sum statistic to measure throughput and with the Samples statistic to measure input/output operations per second (IOPS). | File, Cached volumes, Stored volumes and Tape. Unit: Bytes
CloudDownloadLatency | The total number of milliseconds spent reading data from AWS during the reporting period. Use this metric with the Average statistic to measure latency. | File, Cached volumes, Stored volumes and Tape. Unit: Milliseconds
CloudBytesUploaded | The total number of compressed bytes that the gateway uploaded to AWS during the reporting period. Use this metric with the Sum statistic to measure throughput and with the Samples statistic to measure IOPS. | File, Cached volumes, Stored volumes and Tape. Unit: Bytes
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metric</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Applies To..</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UploadBufferFree</td>
<td>The total amount of unused space in the gateway's upload buffer. The sample is taken at the end of the reporting period.</td>
<td>Cached volumes and Tape.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Units: Bytes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CacheFree</td>
<td>The total amount of unused space in the gateway's cache storage. The sample is taken at the end of the reporting period.</td>
<td>File, Cached volumes, and Tape.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Units: Bytes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UploadBufferPercentUsed</td>
<td>Percent use of the gateway's upload buffer. The sample is taken at the end of the reporting period.</td>
<td>Cached volumes and Tape.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Units: Percent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UploadBufferUsed</td>
<td>The total number of bytes being used in the gateway's upload buffer. The sample is taken at the end of the reporting period.</td>
<td>Cached volumes and Tape.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Units: Bytes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CacheUsed</td>
<td>The total number of bytes being used in the gateway's cache storage. The sample is taken at the end of the reporting period.</td>
<td>File, Cached volumes and Tape.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Units: Bytes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QueuedWrites</td>
<td>The number of bytes waiting to be written to AWS, sampled at the end of the reporting period for all volumes in the gateway. These bytes are kept in your gateway's working storage.</td>
<td>File, Cached volumes, Stored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Units: Bytes</td>
<td>volumes and Tape.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ReadBytes</td>
<td>The total number of bytes read from your on-premises applications in the reporting period for all volumes in the gateway.</td>
<td>File, Cached volumes, Stored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use this metric with the <code>Sum</code> statistic to measure throughput and with the <code>Samples</code> statistic to measure IOPS.</td>
<td>volumes and Tape.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Units: Bytes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## AWS Storage Gateway User Guide
### Understanding Gateway Metrics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metric</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Applies To..</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ReadTime</strong></td>
<td>The total number of milliseconds spent to do read operations from your on-premises applications in the reporting period for all volumes in the gateway. Use this metric with the Average statistic to measure latency. Units: Milliseconds</td>
<td>File, Cached volumes, Stored volumes and Tape.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TotalCacheSize</strong></td>
<td>The total size of the cache in bytes. The sample is taken at the end of the reporting period. Units: Bytes</td>
<td>File, Cached volumes, and Tape.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>WriteBytes</strong></td>
<td>The total number of bytes written to your on-premises applications in the reporting period for all volumes in the gateway. Use this metric with the Sum statistic to measure throughput and with the Samples statistic to measure IOPS. Units: Bytes</td>
<td>File, Cached volumes, Stored volumes and Tape.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>WriteTime</strong></td>
<td>The total number of milliseconds spent to do write operations from your on-premises applications in the reporting period for all volumes in the gateway. Use this metric with the Average statistic to measure latency. Units: Milliseconds</td>
<td>File, Cached volumes, Stored volumes and Tape.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TimeSinceLastRecoveryPoint</strong></td>
<td>The time since the last available recovery point. For more information, see Your Cached Gateway is Unreachable And You Want to Recover Your Data (p. 232). Units: Seconds</td>
<td>Cached volumes and Stored volumes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

API Version 2013-06-30
# AWS Storage Gateway User Guide

## Monitoring the Upload Buffer

You can find information following about how to monitor a gateway's upload buffer and how to create an alarm so that you get a notification when the buffer exceeds a specified threshold. By using this approach, you can proactively add buffer storage to a gateway before it fills completely and your storage application stops backing up to AWS.

You monitor the upload buffer in the same way in both the cached volume and tape gateway architectures. For more information, see How AWS Storage Gateway Works (Architecture) (p. 2).

### Note

The WorkingStoragePercentUsed, WorkingStorageUsed, and WorkingStorageFree metrics represent the upload buffer for the stored volumes setup only before the release of the cached-volume feature in Storage Gateway. Now you should use the equivalent upload buffer metrics UploadBufferPercentUsed, UploadBufferUsed, and UploadBufferFree. These metrics apply to both gateway architectures.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metric</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Applies To..</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WorkingStorageFree</td>
<td>The total amount of unused space in the gateway's working storage. The sample is taken at the end of the reporting period.</td>
<td>Stored volumes only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Units: Bytes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WorkingStoragePercentUsed</td>
<td>Percent use of the gateway's upload buffer. The sample is taken at the end of the reporting period.</td>
<td>Stored volumes only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Units: Percent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WorkingStorageUsed</td>
<td>The total number of bytes being used in the gateway's upload buffer. The sample is taken at the end of the reporting period.</td>
<td>Stored volumes only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Units: Bytes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Monitoring the Upload Buffer

You can find information following about how to monitor a gateway's upload buffer and how to create an alarm so that you get a notification when the buffer exceeds a specified threshold. By using this approach, you can proactively add buffer storage to a gateway before it fills completely and your storage application stops backing up to AWS.

You monitor the upload buffer in the same way in both the cached volume and tape gateway architectures. For more information, see How AWS Storage Gateway Works (Architecture) (p. 2).

### Note

The WorkingStoragePercentUsed, WorkingStorageUsed, and WorkingStorageFree metrics represent the upload buffer for the stored volumes setup only before the release of the cached-volume feature in Storage Gateway. Now you should use the equivalent upload buffer metrics UploadBufferPercentUsed, UploadBufferUsed, and UploadBufferFree. These metrics apply to both gateway architectures.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item of Interest</th>
<th>How to Measure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Upload buffer usage</td>
<td>Use the UploadBufferPercentUsed, UploadBufferUsed, and UploadBufferFree metrics with the Average statistic. For example, use the UploadBufferUsed with the Average statistic to analyze the storage usage over a time period.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### To measure upload buffer percent used

2. Choose the StorageGateway: Gateway Metrics dimension, and find the gateway that you want to work with.
3. Choose the UploadBufferPercentUsed metric.
4. For **Time Range**, choose a value.
5. Choose the **Average** statistic.
6. For **Period**, choose a value of 5 minutes to match the default reporting time.

The resulting time-ordered set of data points contains the percent used of the upload buffer.

Using the following procedure, you can create an alarm using the CloudWatch console. To learn more about alarms and thresholds, see Creating CloudWatch Alarms.

**To set an upper threshold alarm for a gateway's upload buffer**

2. Choose **Create Alarm** to start the Create Alarm Wizard.  
3. Specify a metric for your alarm.  
   a. On the **Select Metric** page of the Create Alarm Wizard, choose the **AWS/StorageGateway:GatewayId,GatewayName** dimension, and then find the gateway that you want to work with.  
   b. Choose the **UploadBufferPercentUsed** metric. Use the **Average** statistic and a period of 5 minutes.  
   c. Choose **Continue**.  
4. Define the alarm name, description, and threshold.  
   a. On the **Define Alarm** page of the Create Alarm Wizard, identify your alarm by giving it a name and description in the **Name** and **Description** boxes.  
   b. Define the alarm threshold.  
   c. Choose **Continue**.  
5. Configure an email action for the alarm.  
   a. In the **Configure Actions** page of the Create Alarm Wizard, choose **Alarm** for **Alarm State**.  
   b. Choose **Choose or create email topic** for **Topic**.  
      To create an email topic means that you set up an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic. For more information about Amazon SNS, see Set Up Amazon SNS.  
   c. For **Topic**, type a descriptive name for the topic.  
   d. Choose **Add Action**.  
   e. Choose **Continue**.  
6. Review the alarm settings, and then create the alarm.  
   a. In the **Review** page of the Create Alarm Wizard, review the alarm definition, metric, and associated actions from this step. Associated actions include, for example, sending an email notification.  
   b. After reviewing the alarm summary, choose **Save Alarm**.  
7. Confirm your subscription to the alarm topic.  
   a. Open the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) email topic that is sent to the email address that you specified when creating the topic.  
      The following image shows a notification.
Monitoring Cache Storage

You can find information following about how to monitor a gateway's cache storage and how to create an alarm so that you get a notification when parameters of the cache pass specified thresholds. Using this alarm, you know when to proactively add cache storage to a gateway.

You only monitor cache storage in the cached volumes architecture. For more information, see How AWS Storage Gateway Works (Architecture) (p. 2).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item of Interest</th>
<th>How to Measure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total usage of cache</td>
<td>Use the CachePercentUsed and TotalCacheSize metrics with the Average statistic. For example, use the CachePercentUsed with the Average statistic to analyze the cache usage over a period of time. The TotalCacheSize metric changes only when you add cache to the gateway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Percentage of read requests that are served from the cache</td>
<td>Use the CacheHitPercent metric with the Average statistic. Typically, you want CacheHitPercent to remain high.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Percentage of cache that is dirty—that is, it contains content that has not been uploaded to AWS</td>
<td>Use the CachePercentDirty metrics with the Average statistic. Typically, you want CachePercentDirty to remain low.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To measure the cache's percentage dirty for a gateway and all its volumes

2. Choose the StorageGateway: Gateway Metrics dimension, and find the gateway that you want to work with.
3. Choose the CachePercentDirty metric.
4. For Time Range, choose a value.
5. Choose the Average statistic.
6. For Period, choose a value of 5 minutes to match the default reporting time.

The resulting time-ordered set of data points contains the percentage of the cache that is dirty over the 5 minutes.
To measure the cache's percentage dirty for a volume

2. Choose the StorageGateway: Volume Metrics dimension, and find the volume that you want to work with.
3. Choose the CachePercentDirty metric.
4. For Time Range, choose a value.
5. Choose the Average statistic.
6. For Period, choose a value of 5 minutes to match the default reporting time.

The resulting time-ordered set of data points contains the percentage of the cache that is dirty over the 5 minutes.

Monitoring Your File Share

You can monitor your file share by using Amazon CloudWatch metrics and use Amazon CloudWatch Events to get notified when your file operations are done. For information about file gateway type metrics, see Monitoring Your Gateway and Resources.

Topics

- Getting Notification for File Operations (p. 132)
- Understanding File Share Metrics (p. 134)

Getting Notification for File Operations

AWS Storage Gateway can send a notification through CloudWatch Events when your file operations are done.

- You can get notified when the gateway finishes uploading your files to your file share. You can use the NotifyWhenUploaded API to request a file upload notification.
- You can get notified when the gateway finishes refreshing the cache for your S3 bucket. You can use the RefreshCache API to request a cache refresh notification.

When the file operation your requested is done, AWS Storage Gateway sends you notification through CloudWatch Events. You can configure CloudWatch Events to send the notification through event targets such as Amazon SNS, Amazon SQS or AWS Lambda function. For example, you can configure an Amazon SNS target, to send the notification Amazon SNS consumers such as email and text message. For information about CloudWatch Events, see What is Amazon CloudWatch Events?

To set up CloudWatch Events notification

1. Create a target such as an Amazon SNS topic or Lambda function to invoke when the event you requested in AWS Storage Gateway is triggered.
2. Create a rule in the Amazon CloudWatch Events Console to invoke targets based on an event in AWS Storage Gateway.
3. In the rule, create an event patten for the event type. The notification is triggered when the event matches this rule pattern.
4. Select the target and configure the settings.
The following example shows a rule that triggers the specified event type in the specified gateway and in the specified AWS Region. For example, you could specify the Storage Gateway File Upload Event as the event type.

```
{
  "source": [
    "aws.storagegateway"
  ],
  "resources": [
    "arn:aws:storagegateway:AWS Region:account-id:gateway/gateway-id"
  ],
  "detail-type": [
    "Event type"
  ]
}
```

For information about how to create a CloudWatch Events see Getting Started with Amazon CloudWatch Events.

### Getting File Upload Notification

For file notification use case, you could have two file gateways that mapped to the same Amazon S3 bucket and the NFS client for Gateway1 uploads new files to S3. The files will upload to S3 but they will not appear in Gateway2 because it uses a locally cached version of files in S3. To make the files visible in gateway2, you can use the NotifyWhenUploaded API to request file upload notification from Gateway1 to notify you when the upload is done. You can then use the CloudWatch Events to automatically issue RefreshCache request for the file share on Gateway2. When the RefreshCache request completes the new files will be visible in Gateway2.

#### Example Example—File Upload Notification

The following example shows a file upload notification that is sent to you through when the event matches the rule you created. This notification is in JSON format. You can configure this notification to be delivered to the target message.

```
{
  "id" : "2649b160-d59d-c97f-3f64-8aaa9ea6aed3",
  "version" : "0",
  "account" : "209870788375",
  "source" : "aws.storagegateway",
  "resources" : [
    "arn:aws:s3:::mybucket-sgw-aabbcc"
  ],
  "detail" : {
    "event-type" : "upload-complete",
    "notification-id" : "da8db69f-6351-4205-829b-4e82607a00fe",
    "completed" : "2017-11-06T21:34:53Z",
    "request-received" : "2017-11-06T21:34:42Z"
  },
  "detail-type" : "Storage Gateway File Upload Event",
  "region" : "us-east-1",
  "time" : "2017-11-06T21:34:42Z"
}
```
Getting Refresh Cache Notification

For refresh cache notification use case, you could have two file gateways that map to the same Amazon S3 bucket and the NFS client for Gateway1 uploads new files to the S3 bucket. The files will upload to S3 but they will not appear in Gateway2 until you refresh the cache. This is because Gateway2 uses a locally cached version of the files in S3. You might want to do something with the files in Gateway2 when the refresh cache is done. Large files could take a while to show up in gateway2 so you might want to be notified when the cache refresh is done. You can request refresh cache notification from Gateway2 to notify you when all the files are visible in Gateway2.

For information about how to create a CloudWatch Events see Getting Started with Amazon CloudWatch Events.

Example Example—Refresh Cache Notification

The following example shows a refresh cache notification that is sent to you through when the event matches the rule you created. This notification is in JSON format. You can configure this notification to be delivered to the target message.

```json
{
    "id" : "2649b160-d59d-c97f-3f64-8aaa9ea6aed3",
    "version" : "0",
    "account" : "209870788375",
    "source" : "aws.storagegateway",
    "resources" : [
    ],
    "detail" : {
        "event-type" : "refresh-cache-complete",
        "notification-id" : "da8db69f-6351-4205-829b-4e82607a00fe",
        "completed" : "2018-02-06T21:34:53Z",
        "request-received" : "2018-02-06T21:34:42Z"
    },
    "detail-type" : "Storage Gateway Refresh Cache Event",
    "region" : "us-east-2",
    "time" : "2017-11-06T21:34:42Z"
}
```

Understanding File Share Metrics

You can find information following about the Storage Gateway metrics that cover file shares. Each file share has a set of metrics associated with it. Some file share-specific metrics have the same name as certain gateway-specific metrics. These metrics represent the same kinds of measurements but are scoped to the file share instead. Always specify whether you want to work with either a gateway or a file share metric before working with a metric. Specifically, when working with file share metrics, you must specify the File share ID that identifies the file share for which you are interested in viewing metrics. For more information, see Using Amazon CloudWatch Metrics (p. 136).

The following table describes the Storage Gateway metrics that you can use to get information about your file shares.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metric</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CacheHitPercent</td>
<td>Percent of application read operations from the file shares that are served from cache. The sample is taken at the end of the reporting period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metric</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When there are no application read operations from the file share, this metric reports 100 percent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Units: Percent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CachePercentDirty</td>
<td>The file share's contribution to the overall percentage of the gateway's cache that has not been persisted to AWS. The sample is taken at the end of the reporting period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use the CachePercentDirty metric of the gateway to view the overall percentage of the gateway's cache that has not been persisted to AWS. For more information, see Understanding Gateway Metrics (p. 125).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Units: Percent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CachePercentUsed</td>
<td>The file share's contribution to the overall percent use of the gateway's cache storage. The sample is taken at the end of the reporting period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use the CachePercentUsed metric of the gateway to view overall percent use of the gateway's cache storage. For more information, see Understanding Gateway Metrics (p. 125).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Units: Percent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CloudBytesUploaded</td>
<td>The total number of bytes that the gateway uploaded to AWS during the reporting period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use this metric with the Sum statistic to measure throughput and with the Samples statistic to measure IOPS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Units: Bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CloudBytesDownloaded</td>
<td>The total number of bytes that the gateway downloaded from AWS during the reporting period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use this metric with the Sum statistic to measure throughput and with the Samples statistic to measure input/output operations per second (IOPS).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Units: Bytes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Monitoring Your Volume Gateway

In this section, you can find information about how to monitor a gateway in a cached volumes or stored volumes setup, including monitoring the volumes associated with the gateway and monitoring the upload buffer. You use the AWS Management Console to view metrics for your gateway. For example, you can view the number of bytes used in read and write operations, the time spent in read and write operations, and the time taken to retrieve data from the AWS cloud. With metrics, you can track the health of your gateway and set up alarms to notify you when one or more metrics fall outside a defined threshold.

**Topics**
- Using Amazon CloudWatch Metrics (p. 136)
- Measuring Performance Between Your Application and Gateway (p. 137)
- Measuring Performance Between Your Gateway and AWS (p. 139)
- Understanding Volume Metrics (p. 141)

Storage Gateway provides CloudWatch metrics at no additional charge. Storage Gateway metrics are recorded for a period of two weeks. By using these metrics, you can access historical information and get a better perspective on how your gateway and volumes are performing. For detailed information about CloudWatch, see the *Amazon CloudWatch User Guide*.

### Using Amazon CloudWatch Metrics

You can get monitoring data for your gateway using either the AWS Management Console or the CloudWatch API. The console displays a series of graphs based on the raw data from the CloudWatch API. You can also use the CloudWatch API through one of the Amazon AWS Software Development Kits (SDKs) or the Amazon CloudWatch API tools. Depending on your needs, you might prefer to use either the graphs displayed in the console or retrieved from the API.

Regardless of which method you choose to use to work with metrics, you must specify the following information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metric</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ReadBytes</td>
<td>The total number of bytes read from your on-premises applications in the reporting period for a file share. Use this metric with the Sum statistic to measure throughput and with the Samples statistic to measure IOPS. Units: Bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WriteBytes</td>
<td>The total number of bytes written to your on-premises applications in the reporting period. Use this metric with the Sum statistic to measure throughput and with the Samples statistic to measure IOPS. Units: Bytes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Measuring Performance Between Your Application and Gateway

- The metric dimension to work with. A *dimension* is a name-value pair that helps you to uniquely identify a metric. The dimensions for Storage Gateway are `GatewayId`, `GatewayName`, and `VolumeId`. In the CloudWatch console, you can use the *Gateway Metrics* and *Volume Metrics* views to easily select gateway-specific and volume-specific dimensions. For more information about dimensions, see *Dimensions* in the *Amazon CloudWatch User Guide*.

- The metric name, such as `ReadBytes`.

The following table summarizes the types of Storage Gateway metric data that you can use:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CloudWatch Namespace</th>
<th>Dimension</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AWS/StorageGateway</td>
<td>GatewayId, GatewayName</td>
<td>These dimensions filter for metric data that describes aspects of the gateway. You can identify a gateway to work with by specifying both the <code>GatewayId</code> and the <code>GatewayName</code> dimensions. Throughput and latency data of a gateway are based on all the volumes in the gateway. Data is available automatically in 5-minute periods at no charge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VolumeId</td>
<td>This dimension filters for metric data that is specific to a volume. Identify a volume to work with by its <code>VolumeId</code> dimension. Data is available automatically in 5-minute periods at no charge.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Working with gateway and volume metrics is similar to working with other service metrics. You can find a discussion of some of the most common metrics tasks in the CloudWatch documentation listed following:

- Viewing Available Metrics
- Getting Statistics for a Metric
- Creating CloudWatch Alarms

Measuring Performance Between Your Application and Gateway

Data throughput, data latency, and operations per second are three measures that you can use to understand how your application storage that is using your gateway is performing. When you use the correct aggregation statistic, you can use Storage Gateway metrics to measure these values.

A *statistic* is an aggregation of a metric over a specified period of time. When you view the values of a metric in CloudWatch, use the `Average` statistic for data latency (milliseconds), use the `Sum` statistic for data throughput (bytes per second), and use the `Samples` statistic for input/output operations per second (IOPS). For more information, see *Statistics* in the *Amazon CloudWatch User Guide*.

The following table summarizes the metrics and corresponding statistic you can use to measure the throughput, latency, and IOPS between your applications and gateways.
### Measuring Performance Between Your Application and Gateway

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item of Interest</th>
<th>How to Measure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Throughput</strong></td>
<td>Use the <code>ReadBytes</code> and <code>WriteBytes</code> metrics with the <code>Sum</code> CloudWatch statistic. For example, the <code>Sum</code> value of the <code>ReadBytes</code> metric over a sample period of 5 minutes divided by 300 seconds gives you the throughput as a rate in bytes per second.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Latency</strong></td>
<td>Use the <code>ReadTime</code> and <code>WriteTime</code> metrics with the <code>Average</code> CloudWatch statistic. For example, the <code>Average</code> value of the <code>ReadTime</code> metric gives you the latency per operation over the sample period of time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IOPS</strong></td>
<td>Use the <code>ReadBytes</code> and <code>WriteBytes</code> metrics with the <code>Samples</code> CloudWatch statistic. For example, the <code>Samples</code> value of the <code>ReadBytes</code> metric over a sample period of 5 minutes divided by 300 seconds gives you IOPS.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the average latency graphs and average size graphs, the average is calculated over the total number of operations (read or write, whichever is applicable to the graph) that completed during the period.

**To measure the data throughput from an application to a volume**

2. Choose **Metrics**, then choose the **All metrics** tab and then choose **Storage Gateway**.
3. Choose the **Volume metrics** dimension, and find the volume that you want to work with.
4. Choose the `ReadBytes` and `WriteBytes` metrics.
5. For **Time Range**, choose a value.
6. Choose the `Sum` statistic.
7. For **Period**, choose a value of 5 minutes or greater.
8. In the resulting time-ordered sets of data points (one for `ReadBytes` and one for `WriteBytes`), divide each data point by the period (in seconds) to get the throughput at the sample point. The total throughput is the sum of the throughputs.

The following image shows the `ReadBytes` and `WriteBytes` metrics for a volume with the `Sum` statistic. In the image, the cursor over a data point displays information about the data point including its value and the number of bytes. Divide the bytes value by the **Period** value (5 minutes) to get the data throughput at that sample point. For the point highlighted, the read throughput is 2,384,199,680 bytes divided by 300 seconds, which is 7.6 megabytes per second.

**To measure the data input/output operations per second from an application to a volume**

2. Choose **Metrics**, then choose the **All metrics** tab and then choose **Storage Gateway**.
3. Choose the **Volume metrics** dimension, and find the volume that you want to work with.
4. Choose the **ReadBytes** and **WriteBytes** metrics.
5. For **Time Range**, choose a value.
6. Choose the **Samples** statistic.
7. For **Period**, choose a value of 5 minutes or greater.
8. In the resulting time-ordered sets of data points (one for **ReadBytes** and one for **WriteBytes**), divide each data point by the period (in seconds) to get IOPS.

The following image shows the **ReadBytes** and **WriteBytes** metrics for a storage volume with the **Samples** statistic. In the image, the cursor over a data point displays information about the data point, including its value and the number of samples. Divide the samples value by the **Period** value (5 minutes) to get the operations per second at that sample point. For the point highlighted, the number of write operations is 24,373 bytes divided by 300 seconds, which is 81 write operations per second.

### Measuring Performance Between Your Gateway and AWS

Data throughput, data latency, and operations per second are three measures that you can use to understand how your application storage using the Storage Gateway is performing. These three values can be measured using the Storage Gateway metrics provided for you when you use the correct aggregation statistic. The following table summarizes the metrics and corresponding statistic to use to measure the throughput, latency, and input/output operations per second (IOPS) between your gateway and AWS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item of Interest</th>
<th>How to Measure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Throughput</td>
<td>Use the <strong>ReadBytes</strong> and <strong>WriteBytes</strong> metrics with the <strong>Sum</strong> CloudWatch statistic. For example, the <strong>Sum</strong> value of the <strong>ReadBytes</strong> metric over a sample period of 5 minutes divided by 300 seconds gives you the throughput as a rate in bytes per second.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latency</td>
<td>Use the <strong>ReadTime</strong> and <strong>WriteTime</strong> metrics with the <strong>Average</strong> CloudWatch statistic. For example, the <strong>Average</strong> value of the <strong>ReadTime</strong> metric gives you the latency per operation over the sample period of time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IOPS</td>
<td>Use the <strong>ReadBytes</strong> and <strong>WriteBytes</strong> metrics with the <strong>Samples</strong> CloudWatch statistic. For example, the <strong>Samples</strong> value of the <strong>ReadBytes</strong> metric over a sample period of 5 minutes divided by 300 seconds gives you IOPS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Throughput to AWS</td>
<td>Use the <strong>CloudBytesDownloaded</strong> and <strong>CloudBytesUploaded</strong> metrics with the <strong>Sum</strong> CloudWatch statistic. For example, the <strong>Sum</strong> value of the</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Item of Interest  | How to Measure
---|---
CloudBytesDownloaded  | metric over a sample period of 5 minutes divided by 300 seconds gives you the throughput from AWS to the gateway as bytes per second.
Latency of data to AWS  | Use the CloudDownloadLatency metric with the Average statistic. For example, the Average statistic of the CloudDownloadLatency metric gives you the latency per operation.

#### To measure the upload data throughput from a gateway to AWS
2. Choose Metrics, then choose the All metrics tab and then choose Storage Gateway.
3. Choose the Gateway metrics dimension, and find the volume that you want to work with.
4. Choose the CloudBytesUploaded metric.
5. For Time Range, choose a value.
6. Choose the Sum statistic.
7. For Period, choose a value of 5 minutes or greater.
8. In the resulting time-ordered set of data points, divide each data point by the period (in seconds) to get the throughput at that sample period.

The following image shows the CloudBytesUploaded metric for a gateway volume with the Sum statistic. In the image, the cursor over a data point displays information about the data point, including its value and bytes uploaded. Divide this value by the Period value (5 minutes) to get the throughput at that sample point. For the point highlighted, the throughput from the gateway to AWS is 555,544,576 bytes divided by 300 seconds, which is 1.7 megabytes per second.

![CloudBytesUploaded metric image](image-url)

#### To measure the latency per operation of a gateway
2. Choose Metrics, then choose the All metrics tab and then choose Storage Gateway.
3. Choose the Gateway metrics dimension, and find the volume that you want to work with.
4. Choose the ReadTime and WriteTime metrics.
5. For Time Range, choose a value.
6. Choose the Average statistic.
7. For Period, choose a value of 5 minutes to match the default reporting time.
8. In the resulting time-ordered set of points (one for ReadTime and one for WriteTime), add data points at the same time sample to get to the total latency in milliseconds.
To measure the data latency from a gateway to AWS

2. Choose Metrics, then choose the All metrics tab and then choose Storage Gateway.
3. Choose the Gateway metrics dimension, and find the volume that you want to work with.
4. Choose the CloudDownloadLatency metric.
5. For Time Range, choose a value.
6. Choose the Average statistic.
7. For Period, choose a value of 5 minutes to match the default reporting time.

The resulting time-ordered set of data points contains the latency in milliseconds.

To set an upper threshold alarm for a gateway's throughput to AWS

2. Choose Alarms.
3. Choose Create Alarm to start the Create Alarm Wizard.
4. Choose the Storage Gateway dimension, and find the gateway that you want to work with.
5. Choose the CloudBytesUploaded metric.
6. To define the alarm, define the alarm state when the CloudBytesUploaded metric is greater than or equal to a specified value for a specified time. For example, you can define an alarm state when the CloudBytesUploaded metric is greater than 10 MB for 60 minutes.
7. Configure the actions to take for the alarm state. For example, you can have an email notification sent to you.
8. Choose Create Alarm.

To set an upper threshold alarm for reading data from AWS

2. Choose Create Alarm to start the Create Alarm Wizard.
3. Choose the StorageGateway: Gateway Metrics dimension, and find the gateway that you want to work with.
4. Choose the CloudDownloadLatency metric.
5. Define the alarm by defining the alarm state when the CloudDownloadLatency metric is greater than or equal to a specified value for a specified time. For example, you can define an alarm state when the CloudDownloadLatency is greater than 60,000 milliseconds for greater than 2 hours.
6. Configure the actions to take for the alarm state. For example, you can have an email notification sent to you.
7. Choose Create Alarm.

Understanding Volume Metrics

You can find information following about the Storage Gateway metrics that cover a volume of a gateway. Each volume of a gateway has a set of metrics associated with it. Note that some volume-specific metrics have the same name as certain gateway-specific metrics. These metrics represent the same kinds of measurements but are scoped to the volume instead of the gateway. You must always specify whether you want to work with either a gateway or a volume metric before working with a metric. Specifically, when working with volume metrics, you must specify the VolumeId that identifies the storage volume for which you are interested in viewing metrics. For more information, see Using Amazon CloudWatch Metrics (p. 136).
The following table describes the Storage Gateway metrics that you can use to get information about your storage volumes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metric</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Cached volumes</th>
<th>Stored volumes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CacheHitPercent</td>
<td>Percent of application read operations from the volume that are served from cache. The sample is taken at the end of the reporting period. When there are no application read operations from the volume, this metric reports 100 percent. Units: Percent</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CachePercentDirty</td>
<td>The volume's contribution to the overall percentage of the gateway's cache that has not been persisted to AWS. The sample is taken at the end of the reporting period. Use the CachePercentDirty metric of the gateway to view the overall percentage of the gateway's cache that has not been persisted to AWS. For more information, see Understanding Gateway Metrics (p. 125). Units: Percent</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CachePercentUsed</td>
<td>The volume's contribution to the overall percent use of the gateway's cache storage. The sample is taken at the end of the reporting period. Use the CachePercentUsed metric of the gateway to view overall percent use of the gateway's</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metric</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Cached volumes</td>
<td>Stored volumes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cache storage. For more information, see Understanding Gateway Metrics (p. 125).</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Units: Percent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ReadBytes</td>
<td>The total number of bytes read from your on-premises applications in the reporting period.</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use this metric with the Sum statistic to measure throughput and with the Samples statistic to measure IOPS.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Units: Bytes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ReadTime</td>
<td>The total number of milliseconds spent to do read operations from your on-premises applications in the reporting period.</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use this metric with the Average statistic to measure latency.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Units: Milliseconds</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WriteBytes</td>
<td>The total number of bytes written to your on-premises applications in the reporting period.</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use this metric with the Sum statistic to measure throughput and with the Samples statistic to measure IOPS.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Units: Bytes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Monitoring Your Tape Gateway

In this section, you can find information about how to monitor your tape gateway, virtual tapes associated with your tape gateway, cache storage, and the upload buffer. You use the AWS Management Console to view metrics for your tape gateway. With metrics, you can track the health of your tape gateway and set up alarms to notify you when one or more metrics are outside a defined threshold.

Storage Gateway provides CloudWatch metrics at no additional charge. Storage Gateway metrics are recorded for a period of two weeks. By using these metrics, you can access historical information and get a better perspective of how your tape gateway and virtual tapes are performing. For detailed information about CloudWatch, see the Amazon CloudWatch User Guide.

Topics

- Using Amazon CloudWatch Metrics (p. 144)
- Measuring Performance Between Your Tape Gateway and AWS (p. 145)

Using Amazon CloudWatch Metrics

You can get monitoring data for your tape gateway by using either the AWS Management Console or the CloudWatch API. The console displays a series of graphs based on the raw data from the CloudWatch API. The CloudWatch API can also be used through one of the Amazon AWS Software Development Kits (SDKs) or the Amazon CloudWatch API tools. Depending on your needs, you might prefer to use either the graphs displayed in the console or retrieved from the API.

Regardless of which method you choose to use to work with metrics, you must specify the following information:

- The metric dimension to work with. A dimension is a name-value pair that helps you to uniquely identify a metric. The dimensions for Storage Gateway are GatewayId and GatewayName. In the CloudWatch console, you can use the Gateway Metrics view to easily select gateway-specific and tape-specific dimensions. For more information about dimensions, see Dimensions in the Amazon CloudWatch User Guide.
• The metric name, such as ReadBytes.

The following table summarizes the types of Storage Gateway metric data that are available to you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Amazon CloudWatch Namespace</th>
<th>Dimension</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AWS/StorageGateway</td>
<td>GatewayId, GatewayName</td>
<td>These dimensions filter for metric data that describes aspects of the tape gateway. You can identify a tape gateway to work with by specifying both the GatewayId and the GatewayName dimensions. Throughput and latency data of a tape gateway is based on all the virtual tapes in the tape gateway. Data is available automatically in 5-minute periods at no charge.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Working with gateway and tape metrics is similar to working with other service metrics. You can find a discussion of some of the most common metrics tasks in the CloudWatch documentation listed following:

• Viewing Available Metrics
• Getting Statistics for a Metric
• Creating CloudWatch Alarms

Measuring Performance Between Your Tape Gateway and AWS

Data throughput, data latency, and operations per second are measures that you can use to understand how your application storage that is using your tape gateway is performing. When you use the correct aggregation statistic, these values can be measured by using the Storage Gateway metrics that are provided for you.

A statistic is an aggregation of a metric over a specified period of time. When you view the values of a metric in CloudWatch, use the Average statistic for data latency (milliseconds), and use the Samples statistic for input/output operations per second (IOPS). For more information, see Statistics in the Amazon CloudWatch User Guide.

The following table summarizes the metrics and the corresponding statistic you can use to measure the throughput, latency, and IOPS between your tape gateway and AWS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item of Interest</th>
<th>How to Measure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Latency</td>
<td>Use the ReadTime and WriteTime metrics with the Average CloudWatch statistic. For example, the Average value of the ReadTime metric gives you the latency per operation over the sample period of time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Throughput to AWS</td>
<td>Use the CloudBytesDownloaded and CloudBytesUploaded metrics with the Sum CloudWatch statistic. For example, the Sum value of the CloudBytesDownloaded metric over a sample period of 5 minutes divided</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Item of Interest | How to Measure
--- | ---
by 300 seconds gives you the throughput from AWS to the tape gateway as a rate in bytes per second.

**Latency of data to AWS**

Use the `CloudDownloadLatency` metric with the Average statistic. For example, the Average statistic of the `CloudDownloadLatency` metric gives you the latency per operation.

---

#### To measure the upload data throughput from a tape gateway to AWS

2. Choose the **Metrics** tab.
3. Choose the **StorageGateway: Gateway Metrics** dimension, and find the tape gateway that you want to work with.
4. Choose the `CloudBytesUploaded` metric.
5. For **Time Range**, choose a value.
6. Choose the **Sum** statistic.
7. For **Period**, choose a value of 5 minutes or greater.
8. In the resulting time-ordered set of data points, divide each data point by the period (in seconds) to get the throughput at that sample point.

The following image shows the `CloudBytesUploaded` metric for a gateway tape with the **Sum** statistic. In the image, placing the cursor over a data point displays information about the data point, including its value and the number of bytes uploaded. Divide this value by the **Period** value (5 minutes) to get the throughput at that sample point. For the point highlighted, the throughput from the tape gateway to AWS is 555,544,576 bytes divided by 300 seconds, which is 1.7 megabytes per second.

---

#### To measure the data latency from a tape gateway to AWS

2. Choose the **Metrics** tab.
3. Choose the **StorageGateway: GatewayMetrics** dimension, and find the tape gateway that you want to work with.
4. Choose the `CloudDownloadLatency` metric.
5. For **Time Range**, choose a value.
6. Choose the **Average** statistic.
7. For **Period**, choose a value of 5 minutes to match the default reporting time.

The resulting time-ordered set of data points contains the latency in milliseconds.
To set an upper threshold alarm for a tape gateway’s throughput to AWS

2. Choose Create Alarm to start the Create Alarm Wizard.
3. Choose the StorageGateway: Gateway Metrics dimension, and find the tape gateway that you want to work with.
4. Choose the CloudBytesUploaded metric.
5. Define the alarm by defining the alarm state when the CloudBytesUploaded metric is greater than or equal to a specified value for a specified time. For example, you can define an alarm state when the CloudBytesUploaded metric is greater than 10 megabytes for 60 minutes.
6. Configure the actions to take for the alarm state. For example, you can have an email notification sent to you.
7. Choose Create Alarm.

To set an upper threshold alarm for reading data from AWS

2. Choose Create Alarm to start the Create Alarm Wizard.
3. Choose the StorageGateway: Gateway Metrics dimension, and find the tape gateway that you want to work with.
4. Choose the CloudDownloadLatency metric.
5. Define the alarm by defining the alarm state when the CloudDownloadLatency metric is greater than or equal to a specified value for a specified time. For example, you can define an alarm state when the CloudDownloadLatency is greater than 60,000 milliseconds for greater than 2 hours.
6. Configure the actions to take for the alarm state. For example, you can have an email notification sent to you.
7. Choose Create Alarm.

Logging AWS Storage Gateway API Calls by Using AWS CloudTrail

Storage Gateway is integrated with AWS CloudTrail, a service that captures API calls made by or on behalf of Storage Gateway in your AWS account and delivers the log files to an Amazon S3 bucket that you specify. CloudTrail captures API calls from the Storage Gateway console or from the Storage Gateway API. Using the information collected by CloudTrail, you can determine what request was made to Storage Gateway, the source IP address from which the request was made, who made the request, when it was made, and so on. To learn more about CloudTrail, including how to configure and enable it, see the AWS CloudTrail User Guide.

Storage Gateway Information in CloudTrail

When CloudTrail logging is enabled in your AWS account, API calls made to Storage Gateway actions are tracked in log files. Storage Gateway records are written together with other AWS service records in a log file. CloudTrail determines when to create and write to a new file based on a time period and file size.

All of the Storage Gateway actions are logged and are documented in the Actions topic. For example, calls to the ActivateGateway, ListGateways, and ShutdownGateway actions generate entries in the CloudTrail log files.

Every log entry contains information about who generated the request. The user identity information in the log helps you determine whether the request was made with root or IAM user credentials,
with temporary security credentials for a role or federated user, or by another AWS service. For more information, see the `userIdentity` field in the CloudTrail Event Reference in the AWS CloudTrail User Guide.

You can store your log files in your bucket for as long as you want, but you can also define Amazon S3 lifecycle rules to archive or delete log files automatically. By default, your log files are encrypted by using Amazon S3 server-side encryption (SSE).

You can choose to have CloudTrail publish Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) notifications when new log files are delivered if you want to take quick action upon log file delivery. For more information, see Configuring Amazon SNS Notifications.

You can also aggregate Storage Gateway log files from multiple AWS regions and multiple AWS accounts into a single Amazon S3 bucket. For more information, see Aggregating CloudTrail Log Files to a Single Amazon S3 Bucket.

Understanding Storage Gateway Log File Entries

CloudTrail log files can contain one or more log entries where each entry is made up of multiple JSON-formatted events. A log entry represents a single request from any source and includes information about the requested action, any parameters, the date and time of the action, and so on. The log entries are not guaranteed to be in any particular order. That is, they are not an ordered stack trace of the public API calls.

The following example shows a CloudTrail log entry that demonstrates the `ActivateGateway` action.

```json
{
  "Records": [
    {
      "eventVersion": "1.02",
      "userIdentity": {
        "type": "IAMUser",
        "principalId": "AIDAII5AUEPBH2M7JTNVC",
        "arn": "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:user/StorageGateway-team/JohnDoe",
        "accountId": "111122223333",
        "accessKeyId": "AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE",
        "userName": "JohnDoe"
      },
      "eventTime": "2014-12-04T16:19:00Z",
      "eventSource": "storagegateway.amazonaws.com",
      "eventName": "ActivateGateway",
      "awsRegion": "us-east-2",
      "sourceIPAddress": "192.0.2.0",
      "userAgent": "aws-cli/1.6.2 Python/2.7.6 Linux/2.6.18-164.el5",
      "requestParameters": {
        "gatewayName": "cloudtrailgatewayvtl",
        "gatewayRegion": "us-east-2",
        "activationKey": "EHFBX-1NDD0-P0IVU-P1259-
DHK88",
      },
      "responseElements": {
      },
      "requestID": "54BTFGNQI71987UJD21HTCT8NF1Q8GLLE1QEU3KPGG6F0KSTAAU0",
      "eventID": "635f2ea2-7e42-45f0-bed1-8b17d7b74265",
      "eventType": "AwsApiCall",
      "apiVersion": "20130630",
      "recipientAccountId": "444455556666"
    }
  ]
}
```
The following example shows a CloudTrail log entry that demonstrates the ListGateways action.

```json
{
    "Records": [{
        "eventVersion": "1.02",
        "userIdentity": {
            "type": "IAMUser",
            "principalId": "AIDAII5AUEPBH2M7JTNVC",
            "arn": "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:user/StorageGateway-team/JohnDoe",
            "accountId": "111122223333",
            "accessKeyId": "AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE",
            "userName": "JohnDoe"
        },
        "eventTime": "2014-12-03T19:41:53Z",
        "eventSource": "storagegateway.amazonaws.com",
        "eventName": "ListGateways",
        "awsRegion": "us-east-2",
        "sourceIPAddress": "192.0.2.0",
        "userAgent": "aws-cli/1.6.2 Python/2.7.6 Linux/2.6.18-164.el5",
        "requestParameters": null,
        "responseElements": null,
        "requestID": "6U2N42CU37KAO8BG6V1123FR5J1Q8GLLE1QEU3KPG66F0KSTAUU0",
        "eventID": "f76e5919-9362-48ff-a7c4-d203a189ec8d",
        "eventType": "AwsApiCall",
        "apiVersion": "20130630",
        "recipientAccountId": "444455556666"
    }]
}
```
Maintaining Your Gateway

Maintaining your gateway includes tasks such as configuring cache storage and upload buffer space, and doing general maintenance your gateway's performance. These tasks are common to all gateway types. If you haven’t created a gateway, see Creating Your Gateway (p. 19).

Topics

• Shutting Down Your Gateway VM (p. 150)
• Managing Local Disks for Your AWS Storage Gateway (p. 151)
• Optimizing Gateway Performance (p. 158)
• Managing Bandwidth for Your Gateway (p. 160)
• Managing Gateway Updates Using the AWS Storage Gateway Console (p. 164)
• Performing Maintenance Tasks on the Local Console (p. 165)
• Deleting Your Gateway by Using the AWS Storage Gateway Console and Removing Associated Resources (p. 197)

Shutting Down Your Gateway VM

You might need to shutdown or reboot your VM for maintenance, such as when applying a patch to your hypervisor. Before you shutdown the VM, you must first stop the gateway. For file gateway, you just shutdown your VM. Although this section focuses on starting and stopping your gateway using the AWS Storage Gateway Management Console, you can also and stop your gateway by using your VM local console or AWS Storage Gateway API. When you power on your VM, remember to restart your gateway.

• Gateway VM local console—see Logging in to the Local Console Using Default Credentials (p. 175).
• AWS Storage Gateway API—see ShutdownGateway

**Note**

If you stop your gateway while your backup software is writing or reading from a tape, the write or read task might not succeed. Before you stop your gateway, you should check your backup software and the backup schedule for any tasks in progress.

For file gateway, you simply shutdown your VM. You don’t shutdown the gateway.

Starting and Stopping a Volume or Tape Gateway

The following instructions apply to volume and tape gateways only.

**To stop a volume or tape gateway**

2. In the navigation pane, choose Gateways, and then choose the gateway to stop. The status of the gateway is Running.
3. On the Actions menu, choose Stop gateway and verify the id of the gateway from the dialog box, and then choose Stop gateway.
While the gateway is stopping, you might see a message that indicates the status of the gateway. When the gateway shuts down, a message and a **Start gateway** button appears in the **Details** tab.

When you stop your gateway, the storage resources will not be accessible until you start your storage. If the gateway was uploading data when it was stopped, the upload will resume when you start the gateway.

**To start a volume or tape gateway**

2. In the navigation pane, choose **Gateways** and then choose the gateway to start. The status of the gateway is **Shutdown**.
3. Choose **Details** and then choose **Start gateway**.

---

**Managing Local Disks for Your AWS Storage Gateway**

The gateway virtual machine (VM) uses the local disks that you allocate on-premises for buffering and storage. For cached volumes and tape gateways, you allocate two disks, one disk for the upload buffer and the other for cache storage. For stored volumes, you allocate one disk for the upload buffer.

**Important**

When adding cache or upload buffer to an existing gateway, it is important to create new disks in your host (hypervisor or Amazon EC2 instance). Don't change the size of existing disks if the disks have been previously allocated as either a cache or upload buffer. Do not remove cache disks that have been allocated as cache storage.

**Topics**

- Deciding the Amount of Local Disk Storage (p. 151)
- Configuring Local Storage for Your Gateway (p. 152)
- Adding and Removing Upload Buffer (p. 153)
- Adding Cache Storage (p. 156)

---

**Deciding the Amount of Local Disk Storage**

In this step, you decide the number and size of disks to allocate for your gateway. Depending on the storage solution you deploy (see Plan Your Storage Gateway Deployment (p. 8)), the gateway requires the following additional storage:

- File gateways require at least one disk to use as a cache.
- Volume gateways:
  - Stored gateways require at least one disk to use as an upload buffer.
  - Cached gateways require at least two disks. One to use as a cache, and one to use as an upload buffer.
- Tape gateways require at least two disks. One to use as a cache, and one to use as an upload buffer.

For information about recommended disk sizes, see Recommended Local Disk Sizes For Your Gateway (p. 294). If you plan to deploy your gateway in production, you should consider your real
workload in determining disk sizes. For information about disk size guidelines, see Adding and Removing Upload Buffer (p. 153) and Adding Cache Storage (p. 156).

For more information about how gateways use local storage, see How AWS Storage Gateway Works (Architecture) (p. 2). In the next step, you allocate the local disk storage to the gateway VM you deployed.

The following table recommends sizes for local disk storage for your deployed gateway. Before going to the next step, decide the number and size of disks to allocate. You can add more local storage after you set the gateway up, and as your workload demands.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Local Storage</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Gateway Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Upload buffer</td>
<td>The upload buffer provides a staging area for the data before the gateway uploads the data to Amazon S3. Your gateway uploads this buffer data over an encrypted Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) connection to AWS.</td>
<td>• Cached volumes&lt;br&gt;• Stored volumes&lt;br&gt;• Tape gateways</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cache storage</td>
<td>The cache storage acts as the on-premises durable store for data that is pending upload to Amazon S3 from the upload buffer. When your application performs I/O on a volume or tape, the gateway saves the data to the cache storage for low-latency access. When your application requests data from a volume or tape, the gateway first checks the cache storage for the data before downloading the data from AWS.</td>
<td>• Cached volumes&lt;br&gt;• Tape gateways&lt;br&gt;• File gateways</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**
When you provision disks, we strongly recommend that you do not provision local disks for the upload buffer and cache storage that use the same underlying physical storage resource (that is, the same disk). Underlying physical storage resources are represented as a data store in VMware. When you deploy the gateway VM, you choose a data store on which to store the VM files. When you provision a local disk (for example, to use as cache storage or upload buffer), you have the option to store the virtual disk in the same data store as the VM or a different data store. If you have more than one data store, we strongly recommend that you choose one data store for the cache storage and another for the upload buffer. A data store that is backed by only one underlying physical disk, or that is backed by a less-performant RAID configuration such as RAID 1, can lead to poor performance in some situations when used to back both the cache storage and upload buffer.

After the initial configuration and deployment of your gateway, you might find that you need to adjust the local storage by adding or removing disks for an upload buffer or adding disks for cache storage.

**Configuring Local Storage for Your Gateway**

When you created your gateway, you allocated disks for your gateway to use as upload buffer or cache storage. The upload buffer and cache storage are created from local disks you provisioned for your
Adding and Removing Upload Buffer

After you configure your initial gateway, you can allocate and configure additional upload buffer capacity or reduce the capacity as your application needs change. To learn more about how to size your upload buffer based on your application needs, see Sizing the Upload Buffer (p. 155).

Topics
- Adding Upload Buffer Capacity (p. 154)
- Removing Upload Buffer Capacity (p. 154)
- Sizing the Upload Buffer (p. 155)
Adding and Removing Upload Buffer

Adding Upload Buffer Capacity

As your application needs change and you add more volume capacity, you might need to increase the gateway's upload buffer capacity as well. You can add more buffer capacity to your gateway without interrupting existing gateway functions. Note that when you add more upload buffer capacity, you do so with the gateway VM turned on. However, when you reduce the amount of upload buffer capacity, you must first turn off the VM. You can add more upload buffer capacity by using the Storage Gateway console or the Storage Gateway API:

- For information on adding buffer capacity with the console, see To configure upload buffer or cache storage (p. 153). This procedure assumes that your gateway has at least one local disk available on its VM that you can allocate as an upload buffer to the gateway.
- For information on adding buffer capacity with the API, see AddUploadBuffer.

Removing Upload Buffer Capacity

As your application needs change and you change the volume configuration for a gateway, you might need to decrease the gateway's upload buffer capacity. Or, a local disk allocated as upload buffer space might fail and you might need to remove that disk from your upload buffer and assign a new local disk. In both cases, you can remove buffer capacity using the Storage Gateway console.

The following procedure assumes that your activated gateway has at least one local disk allocated as an upload buffer for the gateway. In the procedure, you start on the Storage Gateway console, leave the console and use the VMware vSphere client or the Microsoft Hyper-V Manager to remove the disk, and then return to the console.

**To find the ID of a disk allocated as an upload buffer**

2. In the navigation pane, choose Gateways.
3. On the Actions menu, choose Edit local Disks.
4. In the Edit local disks dialog box, note the value of the virtual device node for the local disk to be removed. You can find the node value in the Disk ID column.

You use the disk's virtual device node in the vSphere client to help ensure that you remove the correct disk.

5. Stop the gateway by following the steps in the Shutting Down Your Gateway VM (p. 150) procedure.

   **Note**
   Before you stop the gateway, ensure that no application is writing data to it and that no snapshots are in progress. You can check the snapshot schedule of volumes on the Snapshot Schedules tab of the Storage Gateway console. For more information, see Editing a Snapshot Schedule (p. 104).

6. To remove the underlying local disk, do one of the following procedures.

   **For a Gateway Hosted In** | **Do This**
--- | ---
VMware ESXi | Follow the steps in To remove a disk allocated for the upload buffer (VMware ESXi) (p. 252).
Microsoft Hyper-V | Follow the steps in To remove an underlying disk allocated for the upload buffer (Microsoft Hyper-V) (p. 253).
7. On the Storage Gateway console, turn on the gateway.

**Important**
After removing a disk used as an upload buffer, you must turn the gateway back on before adding new disks to the VM.

After a gateway restart, a storage volume might go through the PASS THROUGH and BOOTSTRAPPING states as the gateway adjusts to the upload buffer disk that you removed. A volume that passes through these two states will eventually come to the ACTIVE state. You can use a volume during the PASS THROUGH and BOOTSTRAPPING states. However, you cannot take snapshots of the volume in these states. You can monitor your volume status in the Volumes tab on the Storage Gateway console.

### Sizing the Upload Buffer

You can determine the size of your upload buffer by using an upload buffer formula. We strongly recommend that you allocate at least 150 GiB of upload buffer. If the formula returns a value less than 150 GiB, use 150 GiB as the amount you allocate to the upload buffer. You can configure up to 2 TiB of upload buffer capacity for each gateway.

**Note**
For volume gateways, when the upload buffer reaches its capacity, your volume goes to PASS THROUGH status. In this status, new data that your application writes is persisted locally but not uploaded to AWS immediately. Thus, you cannot take new snapshots. When the upload buffer capacity frees up, the volume goes through BOOTSTRAPPING status. In this status, any new data that was persisted locally is uploaded to AWS. Finally, the volume returns to ACTIVE status. Storage Gateway then resumes normal synchronization of the data stored locally with the copy stored in AWS, and you can start taking new snapshots. For more information about volume status, see Understanding Volume Status (p. 114).

For tape gateways, when the upload buffer reaches its capacity, your applications can continue to read from and write data to your storage volumes. However, the tape gateway does not write any of your volume data to its upload buffer and does not upload any of this data to AWS until Storage Gateway synchronizes the data stored locally with the copy of the data stored in AWS. This synchronization occurs when the volumes are in BOOTSTRAPPING status.

To estimate the amount of upload buffer, you can determine the expected incoming and outgoing data rates and plug them into the following formula.

**Rate of incoming data**

This rate refers to the application throughput, the rate at which your on-premises applications write data to your gateway over some period of time.

**Rate of outgoing data**

This rate refers to the network throughput, the rate at which your gateway is able to upload data to AWS. This rate depends on your network speed, utilization, and whether you've enabled bandwidth throttling. This rate should be adjusted for compression. When uploading data to AWS, the gateway applies data compression where possible. For example, if your application data is text-only, you might get an effective compression ratio of about 2:1. However, if you are writing videos, the gateway might not be able to achieve any data compression and might require more upload buffer for the gateway.

If your incoming rate is higher than the outgoing rate, or if the formula returns a value less than 150 GiB, we strongly recommend that you allocate at least 150 GiB of upload buffer space.
Adding Cache Storage

The cache storage acts as the on-premises durable store for data that is pending upload to Amazon S3 from the upload buffer.

**Important**

Gateways created with stored volumes don't require cache storage.

**Important**

When adding cache or upload buffer to an existing gateway, it is important to create new disks in your host (hypervisor or Amazon EC2 instance). Don't change the size of existing disks if the disks have been previously allocated as either a cache or upload buffer. Do not remove cache disks that have been allocated as cache storage.

**Topics**

- [Sizing Cache Storage (p. 158)]
- [Adding Cache Storage for Your Gateway (p. 158)]

The following diagram highlights the cache storage in the larger picture of the cached volumes architecture. For more information, see [How AWS Storage Gateway Works (Architecture) (p. 2)].
The amount of cache storage your gateway requires depends on how much of your application data you want to provide low-latency access to. The cache storage must be at least the size of the upload buffer. This guideline helps ensure that the cache storage is large enough to persistently hold all data that has not yet been uploaded to Amazon S3. When your cache storage has filled up with dirty data (that is, data that has not been uploaded to AWS), application write operations to your volumes or tapes are blocked until more cache storage becomes available. However, application read operations from the volume or tapes are still allowed.

Here are some guidelines you can follow to help ensure you have adequate cache storage allocated for your gateway.
• **Use the sizing formula.** – As your application needs change, you should periodically review the recommended formula for sizing cache storage. For more information, see *Sizing Cache Storage* (p. 158).

• **Use Amazon CloudWatch metrics.** – You can proactively avoid filling up cache storage with dirty data by monitoring how cache storage is being used—particularly, by reviewing cache misses. CloudWatch provides usage metrics such as the `CachePercentDirty` and `CacheHitPercent` metrics for monitoring how much of the gateway's cache storage has not been uploaded to Amazon S3. You can set an alarm to trigger a notification to you when the percentage of the cache that is dirty exceeds a threshold or the cache hit percentage falls below a threshold. Both of these can indicate that the cache storage size is not adequate for the gateway. For a full list of Storage Gateway metrics, see *Monitoring Your Gateway and Resources* (p. 125).

### Sizing Cache Storage

Your gateway uses its cache storage to provide low-latency access to your recently accessed data. The cache storage acts as the on-premises durable store for data that is pending upload to Amazon S3 from the upload buffer. Generally speaking, you size the cache storage at 1.1 times the upload buffer size. For more information about how to estimate your cache storage size, see *Sizing the Upload Buffer* (p. 155). You can initially use this approximation to provision disks for the cache storage. You can then use Amazon CloudWatch operational metrics to monitor the cache storage usage and provision more storage as needed using the console. For information on using the metrics and setting up alarms, see *Monitoring Cache Storage* (p. 131).

If you decide that you need to increase your gateway's cache storage capacity, follow the steps in *Adding Cache Storage for Your Gateway* (p. 158).

### Adding Cache Storage for Your Gateway

After you configure your initial gateway cache storage as described in *Configuring an Upload Buffer or Cache Storage* (p. 153), you can add cache storage to your gateway as your application needs change. To learn more about how to size your cache storage based on your application needs, see *Adding Cache Storage* (p. 156).

You can add more cache storage to your gateway without interrupting existing gateway functions and with the gateway VM turned on.

You can add more cache storage by using the Storage Gateway console or the Storage Gateway API:

• For information on adding cache storage using the console, see *AddCache* (p. 153). This procedure assumes that your activated gateway has at least one local disk available on its VM that you can allocate as cache storage for the gateway. Don’t remove cache disks that have been allocated as cache storage.

• For information on adding cache storage by using the API, see *AddCache*.

### Optimizing Gateway Performance

You can find information following about how to optimize the performance of your gateway. The guidance is based on adding resources to your gateway and adding resources to your application server.
Add Resources to Your Gateway

Use higher-performance disks

To optimize gateway performance, you can add high performance disks such as solid-state drives (SSDs) and an NVMe controller. You can also attach virtual disks to your VM directly from a storage area network (SAN) instead of the Microsoft Hyper-V NTFS. Improved disk performance generally results in better throughput and more input/output operations per second (IOPS). To measure throughput, use the ReadBytes and WriteBytes metrics with the Samples Amazon CloudWatch statistic. For example, the Samples statistic of the ReadBytes metric over a sample period of 5 minutes divided by 300 seconds gives you the IOPS. As a general rule, when you review these metrics for a gateway, look for low throughput and low IOPS trends to indicate disk-related bottlenecks. For more information about gateway metrics, see Measuring Performance Between Your Tape Gateway and AWS (p. 145).

Note
CloudWatch metrics are not available for all gateways. For information about gateway metrics, see Monitoring Your Gateway and Resources (p. 125)

Add CPU resources to your gateway host

The minimum requirement for a gateway host server is four virtual processors. To optimize gateway performance, you should confirm that the four virtual processors that are assigned to the gateway VM are backed by four cores and that you are not oversubscribing the CPUs of the host server. When you add additional CPUs to your gateway host server, you increase the processing capability of the gateway to deal with, in parallel, both storing data from your application to your local storage and uploading this data to Amazon S3. Additional CPUs also help ensure that your gateway gets enough CPU resources when the host is shared with other VMs. Providing enough CPU resources has the general effect of improving throughput.

AWS Storage Gateway supports using 24 CPUs in your gateway host server. You can use 24 CPUs to significantly improve the performance of your gateway. We recommend the following gateway configuration for your gateway host server:

- 24 CPUs
- 16 GiB of reserved RAM
- Disk 1 attached to paravirtual controller 1, to be used as the gateway cache as follows:
  - SSD using an NVMe controller
- Disk 2 attached to paravirtual controller 1, to be used as the gateway upload buffer as follows:
  - SSD using an NVMe controller
- Disk 3 attached to paravirtual controller 2, to be used as the gateway upload buffer as follows:
  - SSD using an NVMe controller
- Network adapter 1 configured on VM network 1:
  - Use VM network 1 and add VMXnet3 (10 Gbps) to be used for ingestion
- Network adapter 2 configured on VM network 2:
  - Use VM network 2 and add a VMXnet3 (10 Gbps) to be used to connect to AWS

Back gateway virtual disks with separate physical disks

When you provision disks in a gateway setup, we strongly recommend that you do not provision local disks for the upload buffer and cache storage that use the same underlying physical storage disk. For example, for VMware ESXi, the underlying physical storage resources are represented as a data store. When you deploy the gateway VM, you choose a data store on which to store the VM files. When you provision a virtual disk (for example, to use as an upload buffer), you have the option to store the virtual disk in the same data store as the VM or a different data store. If you have more than one data store, then we strongly recommend that you choose one data store for each type of local storage you are creating. A data store that is backed by only one underlying physical disk, or that is backed by a less-performant RAID configuration such as RAID 1, can lead to
poor performance—for example, when used to back both the cache storage and upload buffer in a gateway setup.

**Change the volumes configuration**

For volumes gateways, if you find that adding more volumes to a gateway reduces the throughput to the gateway, consider adding the volumes to a separate gateway. In particular, if a volume is used for a high-throughput application, consider creating a separate gateway for the high-throughput application. However, as a general rule, you should not use one gateway for all of your high-throughput applications and another gateway for all of your low-throughput applications. To measure your volume throughput, use the `ReadBytes` and `WriteBytes` metrics. For more information on these metrics, see [Measuring Performance Between Your Application and Gateway](p. 137).

**Use a Larger Block Size for Tape Drives**

For tape gateway, the default block size for a tape drive is 64 KB but you can increase the block size to improve I/O performance. We recommend setting the block size of the tape drives in your backup software to either 128 KB or 256 KB or 512 KB. The size you choose depends on the block size limitations of your backup software. For more information, see the documentation for your backup software.

**Add Resources to Your Application Environment**

**Increase the bandwidth between your application server and your gateway**

To optimize gateway performance, ensure that the network bandwidth between your application and the gateway can sustain your application needs. You can use the `ReadBytes` and `WriteBytes` metrics of the gateway to measure the total data throughput (for more information on these metrics, see [Measuring Performance Between Your Tape Gateway and AWS](p. 145)). For your application, compare the measured throughput with the desired throughput. If the measured throughput is less than the desired throughput, then increasing the bandwidth between your application and gateway can improve performance if the network is the bottleneck. Similarly, you can increase the bandwidth between your VM and your local disks, if they’re not direct-attached.

**Add CPU resources to your application environment**

If your application can make use of additional CPU resources, then adding more CPUs can help your application to scale its I/O load.

**Managing Bandwidth for Your Gateway**

You can limit (or throttle) the upload throughput from the gateway to AWS or the download throughput from your AWS to your gateway. Using bandwidth throttling helps you to control the amount of network bandwidth used by your gateway. By default, an activated gateway has no rate limits on upload or download.

You can specify the rate limit by using the AWS Management Console, or programmatically by using either the AWS Storage Gateway API (see [UpdateBandwidthRateLimit](p. 161)) or an AWS Software Development Kit (SDK). By throttling bandwidth programmatically, you can change limits automatically throughout the day—for example, by scheduling tasks to change the bandwidth. As described directly following, you can change these limits by using the AWS Storage Gateway console. Or, for information about changing bandwidth rate limits programmatically, see the following topics.

**Topics**

- [Updating Gateway Bandwidth Rate Limits Using the AWS SDK for Java](p. 161)
To change a gateway's bandwidth throttling using the console

2. In the navigation pane, choose Gateways, and then choose the gateway you want to manage.
3. On the Actions menu, choose Edit Bandwidth Rate Limit.
4. In the Edit Rate Limits dialog box, type new limit values, and then choose Save. Your changes appear in the Details tab for your gateway.

Updating Gateway Bandwidth Rate Limits Using the AWS SDK for Java

By updating bandwidth rate limits programmatically, you can adjust limits automatically over a period of time—for example, by using scheduled tasks. The following example demonstrates how to update a gateway's bandwidth rate limits using the AWS SDK for Java. To use the example code, you should be familiar with running a Java console application. For more information, see Getting Started in the AWS SDK for Java Developer Guide.

Example : Updating Gateway Bandwidth Limits Using the AWS SDK for Java

The following Java code example updates a gateway's bandwidth rate limits. You need to update the code and provide the service endpoint, your gateway Amazon Resource Name (ARN), and the upload and download limits. For a list of AWS service endpoints you can use with AWS Storage Gateway, see Regions and Endpoints in the AWS General Reference.

```java
import java.io.IOException;
import com.amazonaws.AmazonClientException;
import com.amazonaws.auth.PropertiesCredentials;
import com.amazonaws.services.storagegateway.AWSStorageGatewayClient;
import com.amazonaws.services.storagegateway.model.UpdateBandwidthRateLimitRequest;
import com.amazonaws.services.storagegateway.model.UpdateBandwidthRateLimitResult;

class UpdateBandwidthExample {
    public static AWSStorageGatewayClient sgClient;
    // The gatewayARN
    public static String gatewayARN = "*** provide gateway ARN ***";
    // The endpoint
    static String serviceURL = "https://storagegateway.us-east-1.amazonaws.com";
    // Rates
    static long uploadRate = 51200; // Bits per second, minimum 51200
    static long downloadRate = 102400; // Bits per second, minimum 102400

    public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException {
        // Create a storage gateway client
```
Updating Gateway Bandwidth Rate Limits Using the AWS SDK for .NET

By updating bandwidth rate limits programmatically, you can adjust limits automatically over a period of time—for example, by using scheduled tasks. The following example demonstrates how to update a gateway's bandwidth rate limits by using the AWS Software Development Kit (SDK) for .NET. To use the example code, you should be familiar with running a .NET console application. For more information, see Getting Started in the AWS SDK for .NET Developer Guide.

Example : Updating Gateway Bandwidth Limits by Using the AWS SDK for .NET

The following C# code example updates a gateway's bandwidth rate limits. You need to update the code and provide the service endpoint, your gateway Amazon Resource Name (ARN), and the upload and download limits. For a list of AWS service endpoints you can use with AWS Storage Gateway, see Regions and Endpoints in the AWS General Reference.
class UpdateBandwidthExample
{
    static AmazonStorageGatewayClient sgClient;
    static AmazonStorageGatewayConfig sgConfig;

    // The gatewayARN
    public static String gatewayARN = "*** provide gateway ARN ***";

    // The endpoint
    static String serviceURL = "https://storagegateway.us-east-1.amazonaws.com";

    // Rates
    static long uploadRate = 51200; // Bits per second, minimum 51200
    static long downloadRate = 102400; // Bits per second, minimum 102400

    public static void Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Create a storage gateway client
        sgConfig = new AmazonStorageGatewayConfig();
        sgConfig.ServiceURL = serviceURL;
        sgClient = new AmazonStorageGatewayClient(sgConfig);

        UpdateBandwidth(gatewayARN, uploadRate, downloadRate);
        Console.WriteLine("\nTo continue, press Enter."));
        Console.Read();
    }

    public static void UpdateBandwidth(string gatewayARN, long uploadRate, long downloadRate)
    {
        try
        {
            UpdateBandwidthRateLimitRequest updateBandwidthRateLimitRequest =
                new UpdateBandwidthRateLimitRequest()
                        .WithGatewayARN(gatewayARN)
                        .WithAverageDownloadRateLimitInBitsPerSec(downloadRate)
                        .WithAverageUploadRateLimitInBitsPerSec(uploadRate);

            UpdateBandwidthRateLimitResponse updateBandwidthRateLimitResponse =
                sgClient.UpdateBandwidthRateLimit(updateBandwidthRateLimitRequest);

            String returnGatewayARN =
                updateBandwidthRateLimitResponse.UpdateBandwidthRateLimitResult.GatewayARN;

            Console.WriteLine("Updated the bandwidth rate limits of " + returnGatewayARN);
            Console.WriteLine("Upload bandwidth limit = " + uploadRate + " bits per second");
            Console.WriteLine("Download bandwidth limit = " + downloadRate + " bits per second");
        }
        catch (AmazonStorageGatewayException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Error updating gateway bandwidth.\n" + ex.ToString());
        }
    }
}
Updating Gateway Bandwidth Rate Limits Using the AWS Tools for Windows PowerShell

By updating bandwidth rate limits programmatically, you can adjust limits automatically over a period of time—for example, by using scheduled tasks. The following example demonstrates how to update a gateway's bandwidth rate limits using the AWS Tools for Windows PowerShell. To use the example code, you should be familiar with running a PowerShell script. For more information, see Getting Started in the AWS Tools for Windows PowerShell User Guide.

Example: Updating Gateway Bandwidth Limits by Using the AWS Tools for Windows PowerShell

The following PowerShell script example updates a gateway's bandwidth rate limits. You need to update the script and provide your gateway Amazon Resource Name (ARN), and the upload and download limits.

```powershell
<#
.DESCRIPTION
Update Gateway bandwidth limits.

.NOTES
PREREQUISITES:
2) Credentials and region stored in session using Initialize-AWSDefault.
For more info see, http://docs.aws.amazon.com/powershell/latest/userguide/specifying-your-aws-credentials.html

.EXAMPLE
powershell.exe .\SG_UpdateBandwidth.ps1
#>
$UploadBandwidthRate = 51200
$DownloadBandwidthRate = 102400
$gatewayARN = "*** provide gateway ARN ***"

#Update Bandwidth Rate Limits
Update-SGBandwidthRateLimit -GatewayARN $gatewayARN `-
-AverageUploadRateLimitInBitsPerSec $UploadBandwidthRate `
-AverageDownloadRateLimitInBitsPerSec $DownloadBandwidthRate

$limits = Get-SGBandwidthRateLimit -GatewayARN $gatewayARN
Write-Output("\nGateway: " + $gatewayARN);
Write-Output("\nNew Upload Rate: " + $limits.AverageUploadRateLimitInBitsPerSec)
Write-Output("\nNew Download Rate: " + $limits.AverageDownloadRateLimitInBitsPerSec)
```

Managing Gateway Updates Using the AWS Storage Gateway Console

AWS Storage Gateway periodically releases important software updates for your gateway. You can either manually apply updates on the AWS Storage Gateway Management Console or the updates will be automatically applied during the configured weekly maintenance time. Although Storage Gateway checks for updates every week, it will only go through maintenance and restart if there are updates. Before any update is applied to your gateway, AWS notifies you with a message on the AWS Storage Gateway Console and your AWS Personal Health Dashboard. For more information, see AWS Personal Health Dashboard. The VM will not reboot, but the gateway will be unavailable for a short period while it is being updated and restarted.
When you deploy and activate your gateway, a default weekly maintenance schedule is set. You can modify the maintenance schedule at any time. When updates are available, the Details tab displays a maintenance message and an Apply update now button. You can see the date and time that the last successful update was applied to your gateway on the Details tab.

**Important**
You can minimize the chance of any disruption to your applications due to the gateway restart by increasing the timeouts of your iSCSI initiator. For more information about increasing iSCSI initiator timeouts for Windows and Linux, see Customizing Your Windows iSCSI Settings (p. 272) and Customizing Your Linux iSCSI Settings (p. 274).

**To modify the maintenance schedule**
1. On the navigation menu, choose **Gateways**, and choose the gateway you want to modify the update schedule for.
2. On the **Actions** menu, choose **Edit maintenance window**.
3. Modify the values for **Day of the week** and **Time**. Your changes appear in the Details tab for the gateway.

---

**Performing Maintenance Tasks on the Local Console**

You can perform the following maintenance tasks using the host's local console. Local console tasks can be performed on the VM host or the Amazon EC2 instance. Many of the task are common to the hosts but there are also some differences.

**Topics**
- Performing Maintenance Tasks on the VMware Local Console (p. 165)
- Performing Maintenance Tasks on the Hyper V Local Console (p. 170)
- Performing Common Maintenance Tasks on the VM Local Console (p. 175)
- Performing Maintenance Tasks on the Amazon EC2 Gateway Local Console (p. 191)

---

**Performing Maintenance Tasks on the VMware Local Console**

For a gateway deployed on-premises, you can perform the following maintenance tasks using the VMware host local console.

**Topics**
- Accessing the Gateway Local Console with VMware ESXi (p. 165)
- Configuring Your Gateway for Multiple NICs in a VMware ESXi Host (p. 166)

---

**Accessing the Gateway Local Console with VMware ESXi**

**To access your gateway's local console with VMware ESXi**

1. In the VMware vSphere client, select your gateway VM.
2. Ensure that the gateway is turned on.
Performing Maintenance Tasks on the VMware Local Console

**Note**
If your gateway VM is turned on, a green arrow icon appears with the VM icon, as shown in the following screenshot. If your gateway VM is not turned on, you can turn it on by choosing the green **Power On** icon on the **Toolbar** menu.

3. Choose the **Console** tab.

4. After a few moments, the VM is ready for you to log in.

**Note**
To release the cursor from the console window, press **Ctrl+Alt**.

5. To log in using the default credentials, continue to the procedure **Logging in to the Local Console Using Default Credentials** (p. 175).

**Configuring Your Gateway for Multiple NICs in a VMware ESXi Host**

The following procedure assumes that your gateway VM already has one network adapter defined and that you are adding a second adapter. The following procedure shows how to add an adapter for VMware ESXi.
To configure your gateway to use an additional network adapter in VMware ESXi host

1. Shut down the gateway. For instructions, see To stop a volume or tape gateway (p. 150).
2. In the VMware vSphere client, select your gateway VM.
   The VM can remain turned on for this procedure.
3. In the client, open the context (right-click) menu for your gateway VM, and choose **Edit Settings**.

   ![Gateway VM Context Menu](image)

4. On the **Hardware** tab of the **Virtual Machine Properties** dialog box, choose **Add** to add a device.
   ![Virtual Machine Properties](image)

5. Follow the Add Hardware wizard to add a network adapter.
   a. In the **Device Type** pane, choose **Ethernet Adapter** to add an adapter, and then choose **Next**.
b. In the **Network Type** pane, ensure that **Connect at power on** is selected for **Type**, and then choose **Next**.

We recommend that you use the E1000 network adapter with Storage Gateway. For more information on the adapter types that might appear in the adapter list, see Network Adapter Types in the ESXi and vCenter Server Documentation.

c. In the **Ready to Complete** pane, review the information, and then choose **Finish**.
6. Choose the **Summary** tab of the VM, and choose **View All** next to the **IP Address** box. A **Virtual Machine IP Addresses** window displays all the IP addresses you can use to access the gateway. Confirm that a second IP address is listed for the gateway.

**Note**

It might take several moments for the adapter changes to take effect and the VM summary information to refresh.

The following image is for illustration only. In practice, one of the IP addresses will be the address by which the gateway communicates to AWS and the other will be an address in a different subnet.
7. On the Storage Gateway console, turn on the gateway. For instructions, see To start a volume or tape gateway (p. 151).

8. In the Navigation pane of the Storage Gateway console, choose Gateways and choose the gateway to which you added the adapter. Confirm that the second IP address is listed in the Details tab.

For information about local console tasks common to VMware and Hyper-V host, see Performing Common Maintenance Tasks on the VM Local Console (p. 175)

Performing Maintenance Tasks on the Hyper V Local Console

For a gateway deployed on-premises, you can perform the following maintenance tasks using the Hyper V host local console.

Topics
- Access the Gateway Local Console with Microsoft Hyper-V (p. 170)
- Synchronizing Your Gateway VM Time (p. 171)
- Configuring Your Gateway for Multiple NICs in Microsoft Hyper-V Host (p. 173)

Access the Gateway Local Console with Microsoft Hyper-V

To access your gateway's local console (Microsoft Hyper-V)

1. In the Virtual Machines list of the Microsoft Hyper-V Manager, select your gateway VM.
2. Ensure the gateway is turned on.

Note
If your gateway VM is turned on, Running is displayed as the State of the VM, as shown in the following screenshot. If your gateway VM is not turned on, you can turn it on by choosing Start in the Actions pane.
3. In the **Actions** pane, choose **Connect**.

The **Virtual Machine Connection** window appears. If an authentication window appears, type the user name and password provided to you by the hypervisor administrator.

4. After a few moments, the VM is ready for you to log in.

5. To log in default credentials, continue to the procedure **Logging in to the Local Console Using Default Credentials** (p. 175).

### Synchronizing Your Gateway VM Time

For a gateway deployed on VMware ESXi, setting the hypervisor host time and synchronizing the VM time to the host is sufficient to avoid time drift. For more information, see **Synchronizing VM Time**
Host Time (p. 243). For a gateway deployed on Microsoft Hyper-V, you should periodically check your VM's time using the procedure described following.

To view and synchronize the time of a Hyper-V gateway VM to an NTP server

1. Log in to your gateway's local console.
   - VMware ESXi—for more information, see Accessing the Gateway Local Console with VMware ESXi (p. 165).
   - Microsoft Hyper-V—for more information, see Access the Gateway Local Console with Microsoft Hyper-V (p. 170).

2. On the AWS Storage Gateway Configuration main menu, type 4 for System Time Management.

3. On the System Time Management menu, type 1 for View and Synchronize System Time.

4. If the result indicates that you should synchronize your VM's time to the Network Time Protocol (NTP) time, type y. Otherwise, type n.

   If you type y to synchronize, the synchronization might take a few moments.

   The following screenshot shows a VM that does not require time synchronization.
Configuring Your Gateway for Multiple NICs in Microsoft Hyper-V Host

The following procedure assumes that your gateway VM already has one network adapter defined and that you are adding a second adapter. This procedure shows how to add an adapter for a Microsoft Hyper-V host.

To configure your gateway to use an additional network adapter in a Microsoft Hyper-V Host

1. On the Storage Gateway console, turn off the gateway. For instructions, see To stop a volume or tape gateway (p. 150).
2. In the Microsoft Hyper-V Manager, select your gateway VM.
3. If the VM isn't turned off already, open the context (right-click) menu for your gateway and choose Turn Off.
4. In the client, open the context menu for your gateway VM and choose Settings.
5. In the Settings dialog box for the VM, for Hardware, choose Add Hardware.
6. In the Add Hardware pane, choose Network Adapter, and then choose Add to add a device.

![Add Hardware Screen]

7. Configure the network adapter, and then choose Apply to apply settings.

In the following example, Virtual Network 2 is selected for the new adapter.

![Virtual Network 2 Selected]

8. In the Settings dialog box, for Hardware, confirm that the second adapter was added, and then choose OK.

9. On the Storage Gateway console, turn on the gateway. For instructions, see To start a volume or tape gateway (p. 151).

10. In the Navigation pane choose Gateways, then select the gateway to which you added the adapter. Confirm that the second IP address is listed in the Details tab.

For information about local console tasks common to VMware and Hyper-V host, see Performing Common Maintenance Tasks on the VM Local Console (p. 175)
Performing Common Maintenance Tasks on the VM Local Console

For a gateway deployed on-premises, you can perform the following maintenance tasks using the VM host's local console. These tasks are common to VMware and Hyper-V hosts.

Topics

- Logging in to the Local Console Using Default Credentials (p. 175)
- Setting the Local Console Password from the Storage Gateway Console (p. 176)
- Routing Your On-Premises Gateway Through a Proxy (p. 177)
- Configuring Your Gateway Network (p. 180)
- Testing Your Gateway Connection to the Internet (p. 183)
- Synchronizing Your Gateway VM Time (p. 185)
- Running Storage Gateway Commands on the Local Console (p. 185)
- Viewing Your Gateway System Resource Status (p. 186)
- Configuring Network Adapters for Your Gateway (p. 188)

Logging in to the Local Console Using Default Credentials

When the VM is ready for you to log in, the login screen is displayed. If this is your first time logging in to the local console, you use the default user name and password to log in. These default login credentials give you access to menus where you can configure gateway network settings and change the password from the local console. Storage Gateway enables you to set your own password from the AWS Storage Gateway console instead of changing the password from the local console. You don't need to know the default password to set a new password. For more information, see Setting the Local Console Password from the Storage Gateway Console (p. 176).

To log in to the gateway's local console

- If this is your first time logging in to the local console, log in to the VM with the user name sguser and password sgpassword. Otherwise, use your credentials to log in.

After you log in, you see the Storage Gateway Configuration main menu, as shown in the following screenshot.
Performing Common Maintenance Tasks on the VM Local Console

Note
We recommend changing the default password. You do this by running the `passwd` command from the Gateway Console menu (item 5 on the main menu). For information about how to run the command, see Running Storage Gateway Commands on the Local Console (p. 185). You can also set your own password from the AWS Storage Gateway console. For more information, see Setting the Local Console Password from the Storage Gateway Console (p. 176).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>See</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configure a SOCKS proxy for your gateway</td>
<td>Routing Your On-Premises Gateway Through a Proxy (p. 177).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure your network</td>
<td>Configuring Your Gateway Network (p. 180).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test network connectivity</td>
<td>Testing Your Gateway Connection to the Internet (p. 183).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage VM time</td>
<td>Synchronizing Your Gateway VM Time (p. 185).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Run Storage Gateway console commands</td>
<td>Running Storage Gateway Commands on the Local Console (p. 185).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View system resource check</td>
<td>Viewing Your Gateway System Resource Status (p. 186).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To shut down the gateway, type 0.

To exit the configuration session, type x to exit the menu.

Setting the Local Console Password from the Storage Gateway Console

When you log in to the local console for the first time, you log in to the VM with the default credentials—the user name `sguser` and the password `sgpassword`. We recommend that you set a new password. You can set this password from the AWS Storage Gateway console rather than the local console if you want. You don't need to know the default password to set a new password.

To set the local console password on the Storage Gateway console

2. On the navigation pane, choose **Gateways** then choose the gateway for which you want to set a new password.

3. On the **Actions** menu, choose **Set Local Console Password**.

4. In the **Set Local Console Password** dialog box, type a new password, confirm the password and then choose **Save**. Your new password replaces the default password. AWS Storage Gateway does not save the password but rather safely transmits it to the VM.

   **Note**
   The password can consist of any character on the keyboard and can be 1 to 512 characters long.

### Routing Your On-Premises Gateway Through a Proxy

Volume gateways and tape gateways support configuration of a Socket Secure version 5 (SOCKS5) proxy between your on-premises gateway and AWS. File gateways support configuration of an HyperText Transfer Protocol (HTTP) proxy.

   **Note**
   The only proxy configurations AWS Storage Gateway supports are SOCKS5 and HTTP.

If your gateway must use a proxy server to communicate to the Internet, then you need to configure the SOCKS or HTTP proxy settings for your gateway. You do this by specifying an IP address and port number for the host running your proxy. After you do so, AWS Storage Gateway routes all HTTP traffic through your proxy server. For information about network requirements for your gateway, see Network and Firewall Requirements (p. 12).

The following procedure shows you how to configure SOCKS proxy for volume gateway and tape gateway. For instructions on how to configure HTTP proxy for file gateway, see To configure an HTTP proxy for a file gateway (p. 178).

#### To configure a SOCKS5 proxy for volume and tape gateways

1. Log in to your gateway's local console.

   - VMware ESXi—for more information, see Accessing the Gateway Local Console with VMware ESXi (p. 165).
   - Microsoft Hyper-V—for more information, see Access the Gateway Local Console with Microsoft Hyper-V (p. 170).

2. On the **AWS Storage Gateway Configuration** main menu, type 1 to begin configuring the SOCKS proxy.

3. Choose one of the following options on the **AWS Storage Gateway SOCKS Proxy Configuration** menu.
Performing Common Maintenance Tasks on the VM Local Console

To configure a SOCKS proxy

1. Type option 1.
   - You will need to supply a host name and port to complete configuration.

To view the current SOCKS proxy configuration

2. Type option 2.
   - If a SOCKS proxy is not configured, the message **SOCKS Proxy not configured** is displayed. If a SOCKS proxy is configured, the host name and port of the proxy are displayed.

To remove a SOCKS proxy configuration

3. Type option 3.
   - The message **SOCKS Proxy Configuration Removed** is displayed.

The following procedure shows you how to configure an HTTP proxy for a file gateway. For instructions on how to configure SOCKS proxy for a volume gateway or tape gateway, see To configure a SOCKS proxy for volume and tape gateways (p. 177).

To configure an HTTP proxy for a file gateway

1. Log in to your gateway's local console.
   - VMware ESXi—for more information, see Accessing the Gateway Local Console with VMware ESXi (p. 165).
   - Microsoft Hyper-V—for more information, see Access the Gateway Local Console with Microsoft Hyper-V (p. 170).
2. On the AWS Storage Gateway Configuration main menu, type 1 to begin configuring the HTTP proxy.
3. Choose one of the following options on the AWS Storage Gateway HTTP Proxy Configuration menu:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Do This</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configure a HTTP proxy</td>
<td>Type option 1. You will need to supply a host name and port to complete configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View the current HTTP proxy configuration</td>
<td>Type option 2. If a HTTP proxy is not configured, the message HTTP Proxy not configured is displayed. If a HTTP proxy is configured, the host name and port of the proxy are displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove a HTTP proxy configuration</td>
<td>Type option 3. The message HTTP Proxy Configuration Removed is displayed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Restart your VM to apply your HTTP configuration.
Configuring Your Gateway Network

The default network configuration for the gateway is Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP). With DHCP, your gateway is automatically assigned an IP address. In some cases, you might need to manually assign your gateway's IP as a static IP address, as described following.

To configure your gateway to use static IP addresses

1. Log in to your gateway's local console.
   - VMware ESXi—for more information, see Accessing the Gateway Local Console with VMware ESXi (p. 165).
   - Microsoft Hyper-V—for more information, see Access the Gateway Local Console with Microsoft Hyper-V (p. 170).
2. On the AWS Storage Gateway Configuration main menu, type option 2 to begin configuring a static IP address.

3. Choose one of the following options on the AWS Storage Gateway Network Configuration menu:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Do This</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Describe network adapter</td>
<td>Type option 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A list of adapter names appears, and you are prompted to type an adapter name—for example, et0. If the adapter you specify is in use, the following information about the adapter is displayed:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Media access control (MAC) address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• IP address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Netmask</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### To Do This

- Gateway IP address
- DHCP enabled status

You use the same adapter name when you configure a static IP address (option 3) as when you set your gateway's default route adapter (option 5).

### Configure DHCP

Type option 2.

You are prompted to configure network interface to use DHCP.

```
AWS Storage Gateway Network Configuration
1: Describe Adapter
2: Configure DHCP
3: Configure Static IP
4: Reset all to DHCP
5: Set Default Adapter
6: View DNS Configuration
7: View Routes

Press “a” to exit
Enter command: 2
Available adapters: eth0
Enter Network Adapter: eth0
Reset to DHCP [y/N]: y
Adapter eth0 set to use DHCP
You must exit Network Configuration to complete this configuration.
Press Return to Continue.
```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>To</strong></th>
<th><strong>Do This</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configure a static IP address for your gateway</td>
<td><strong>Type option 3.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You are prompted to type the following information to configure a static IP:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Network adapter name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• IP address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Netmask</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Default gateway address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Primary Domain Name Service (DNS) address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Secondary DNS address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Important</strong></td>
<td>If your gateway has already been activated, you must shut it down and restart it from the AWS Storage Gateway console for the settings to take effect. For more information, see [Shutting Down Your Gateway VM](p. 150).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If your gateway uses more than one network interface, you must set all enabled interfaces to use DHCP or static IP addresses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For example, suppose your gateway VM uses two interfaces configured as DHCP. If you later set one interface to a static IP, the other interface is disabled. To enable the interface in this case, you must set it to a static IP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If both interfaces are initially set to use static IP addresses and you then set the gateway to use DHCP, both interfaces will use DHCP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Performing Common Maintenance Tasks on the VM Local Console

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Do This</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Reset all your gateway's network configuration to DHCP | **Type option 4.**  

```
AWS Storage Gateway Network Configuration
1: Describe Adapter  
2: Configure DHCP  
3: Configure Static IP  
4: Reset all to DHCP  
5: Set Default Adapter  
6: View DNS Configuration  
7: View Routes

Press "x" to exit
Enter command: 4
All adapters will be reset to use DHCP. Continue [y/n]: y
Adapter eth0 set to use DHCP
You must exit Network Configuration to complete this configuration.
Press Return to Continue...```

All network interfaces are set to use DHCP.  

**Important**  
If your gateway has already been activated, you must shut down and restart your gateway from the AWS Storage Gateway console for the settings to take effect. For more information, see [Shutting Down Your Gateway VM](p. 150).

| Set your gateway's default route adapter | **Type option 5.**  

The available adapters for your gateway are shown, and you are prompted to select one of the adapters—for example, **eth0**.

| View your gateway's DNS configuration | **Type option 6.**  

The IP addresses of the primary and secondary DNS name servers are displayed.

| View routing tables | **Type option 7.**  

The default route of your gateway is displayed.

### Testing Your Gateway Connection to the Internet

You can use your gateway's local console to test your Internet connection. This test can be useful when you are troubleshooting network issues with your gateway.

**To test your gateway's connection to the Internet**

1. Log in to your gateway's local console.
   - VMware ESXi—for more information, see [Accessing the Gateway Local Console with VMware ESXi](p. 165).
   - Microsoft Hyper-V—for more information, see [Access the Gateway Local Console with Microsoft Hyper-V](p. 170).
2. On the **AWS Storage Gateway Configuration** main menu, type option 3 to begin testing network connectivity.

```
AWS Storage Gateway Configuration
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
# Currently connected network adapters:
#
# eth0: 192.0.0.45
#~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
1: S3CFS Proxy Configuration
2: Network Configuration
3: Test Network Connectivity
4: System Time Management
5: Gateway Console
6: View System Resource Check (@ Errors)
0: Stop AWS Storage Gateway
Press "k" to exit session
Enter command: _
```

The console displays the available regions.

3. Select the region you want to test. Following are the available regions for gateways deployed on-premises.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Region Name</th>
<th>Region String</th>
<th>File Gateway</th>
<th>Volume Gateway</th>
<th>Tape Gateway</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>US East (Ohio)</td>
<td>us-east-2</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US East (N. Virginia)</td>
<td>us-east-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US West (N. California)</td>
<td>us-west-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US West (Oregon)</td>
<td>us-west-2</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada (Central)</td>
<td>ca-central-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EU (Ireland)</td>
<td>eu-west-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EU (Frankfurt)</td>
<td>eu-central-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EU (London)</td>
<td>eu-west-2</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EU (Paris)</td>
<td>eu-west-3</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia Pacific (Tokyo)</td>
<td>ap-northeast-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia Pacific (Seoul)</td>
<td>ap-northeast-2</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia Pacific (Singapore)</td>
<td>ap-southeast-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia Pacific (Sydney)</td>
<td>ap-southeast-2</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia Pacific (Mumbai)</td>
<td>ap-south-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Each endpoint in the selected region displays either a PASSED or FAILED message, as shown following.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[ PASSED ]</td>
<td>AWS Storage Gateway has Internet connectivity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ FAILED ]</td>
<td>AWS Storage Gateway does not have Internet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>connectivity.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For information about network and firewall requirements, see Network and Firewall Requirements (p. 12).

**Synchronizing Your Gateway VM Time**

After your gateway is deployed and running, in some scenarios the gateway VM's time can drift. For example, if there is a prolonged network outage and your hypervisor host and gateway do not get time updates, then the gateway VM's time will be different from the true time. When there is a time drift, a discrepancy occurs between the stated times when operations such as snapshots occur and the actual times that the operations occur.

For a gateway deployed on VMware ESXi, setting the hypervisor host time and synchronizing the VM time to the host is sufficient to avoid time drift. For more information, see Synchronizing VM Time with Host Time (p. 243).

For a gateway deployed on Microsoft Hyper-V, you should periodically check your VM's time. For more information, see Synchronizing Your Gateway VM Time (p. 171).

**Running Storage Gateway Commands on the Local Console**

The AWS Storage Gateway console helps provide a secure environment for configuring and diagnosing issues with your gateway. Using the console commands, you can perform maintenance tasks such as saving routing tables or connecting to AWS Support.

**To run a configuration or diagnostic command**

1. Log in to your gateway's local console.
   - VMware ESXi—for more information, see Accessing the Gateway Local Console with VMware ESXi (p. 165).
   - Microsoft Hyper-V—for more information, see Access the Gateway Local Console with Microsoft Hyper-V (p. 170).
2. On the **AWS Storage Gateway Configuration** main menu, type option 5 for Gateway Console.
3. On the AWS Storage Gateway console, type `h`, and then press the Return key.

The console displays the available commands and after the menu a Gateway Console prompt, as shown in the following screenshot.

4. To learn about a command, type `man + command name` at the Gateway Console prompt.

**Viewing Your Gateway System Resource Status**

When your gateway starts, it checks its virtual CPU cores, root volume size, and RAM and determines whether these system resources are sufficient for your gateway to function properly. You can view the results of this check on the gateway's local console.

**To view the status of a system resource check**

1. Log in to your gateway's local console.
• VMware ESXi—for more information, see Accessing the Gateway Local Console with VMware ESXi (p. 165).

• Microsoft Hyper-V—for more information, see Access the Gateway Local Console with Microsoft Hyper-V (p. 170).

2. In the **AWS Storage Gateway Configuration** main menu, type 6 to view the results of a system resource check.

The console displays an **[OK]**, **[WARNING]**, or **[FAIL]** message for each resource as described in the table following.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>[OK]</strong></td>
<td>The resource has passed the system resource check.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>[WARNING]</strong></td>
<td>The resource does not meet the recommended requirements, but your gateway will continue to function. AWS Storage Gateway displays a message that describes the results of the resource check.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>[FAIL]</strong></td>
<td>The resource does not meet the minimum requirements. Your gateway might not function properly. AWS Storage Gateway displays a message that describes the results of the resource check.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The console also displays the number of errors and warnings next to the resource check menu option.

The following screenshot shows a **[FAIL]** message and the accompanying error message.
Configuring Network Adapters for Your Gateway

By default, AWS Storage Gateway is configured to use the E1000 network adapter type, but you can reconfigure your gateway to use the VMXNET3 (10 GbE) network adapter. You can also configure Storage Gateway so it can be accessed by more than one IP address. You do this by configuring your gateway to use more than one network adapter.

Topics
- Configuring Your Gateway to Use the VMXNET3 Network Adapter (p. 188)
- Configuring Your Gateway for Multiple NICs (p. 190)

Configuring Your Gateway to Use the VMXNET3 Network Adapter

AWS Storage Gateway supports the E1000 network adapter type in both VMware ESXi and Microsoft Hyper-V Hypervisor hosts. However, the VMXNET3 (10 GbE) network adapter type is supported in VMware ESXi hypervisor only. If your gateway is hosted on a VMware ESXi hypervisor, you can reconfigure your gateway to use the VMXNET3 (10 GbE) adapter type. For more information on this adapter, see the VMware website.

Important
To select VMXNET3, your guest operating system type must be Other Linux64.

Following are the steps you take to configure your gateway to use the VMXNET3 adapter:

1. Remove the default E1000 adapter.
2. Add the VMXNET3 adapter.
3. Restart your gateway.
4. Configure the adapter for the network.

Details on how to perform each step follow.
To remove the default E1000 adapter and configure your gateway to use the VMXNET3 adapter

1. In VMware, open the context (right-click) menu for your gateway and choose Edit Settings.
2. In the Virtual Machine Properties window, choose the Hardware tab.
3. For Hardware, choose Network adapter. Notice that the current adapter is E1000 in the Adapter Type section. You will replace this adapter with the VMXNET3 adapter.

4. Choose the E1000 network adapter, and then choose Remove. In this example, the E1000 network adapter is Network adapter 1.

   Note
   Although you can run the E1000 and VMXNET3 network adapters in your gateway at the same time, we don’t recommend doing so because it can cause network problems.

5. Choose Add to open the Add Hardware wizard.
6. Choose Ethernet Adapter, and then choose Next.
7. In the Network Type wizard, select VMXNET3 for Adapter Type, and then choose Next.
8. In the Virtual Machine properties wizard, verify in the Adapter Type section that Current Adapter is set to VMXNET3, and then choose OK.
9. In the VMware VSphere client, shut down your gateway.
10. In the VMware VSphere client, restart your gateway.

After your gateway restarts, reconfigure the adapter you just added to make sure that network connectivity to the Internet is established.

To configure the adapter for the network

1. In the VSphere client, choose the Console tab to start the local console. You will use the default login credentials to log in to the gateway’s local console for this configuration task. For information about how to log in using the default credentials, see Logging in to the Local Console Using Default Credentials (p. 175).
2. At the prompt, type 2 to select **Network Configuration**, and then press **Enter** to open the network configuration menu.

3. At the prompt, type 4 to select **Reset to DHCP**, and then type **y** (for yes) at the prompt to reset the adapter you just added to use Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP). You can type 5 to set all adapters to DHCP.

4. At the **Enter the adapter** prompt, type **eth0**, and then press **Enter** to continue. The only adapter available is **eth0**.

```plaintext
AWS Storage Gateway Network Configuration
1: Describe Adapter
2: Configure DHCP
3: Configure Static IP
4: Reset all to DHCP
5: Set Default Adapter
6: View DNS Configuration
7: View Routes

Press "x" to exit

Enter command: 2

Available adapters: eth0
Enter Network Adapter: eth0
Reset to DHCP [y/n]: y
Adapter eth0 set to use DHCP

You must exit Network Configuration to complete this configuration.

Press Return to Continue_
```

If your gateway is already activated, you must shut it down and restart it from the AWS Storage Gateway Management Console. After the gateway restarts, you must test network connectivity to the Internet. For information about how to test network connectivity, see **Testing Your Gateway Connection to the Internet** (p. 183).

### Configuring Your Gateway for Multiple NICs

If you configure your gateway to use multiple network adapters (NICs), it can be accessed by more than one IP address. You might want to do this in the following situations:

- **Maximizing throughput** – You might want to maximize throughput to a gateway when network adapters are a bottleneck.

- **Application separation** – You might need to separate how your applications write to a gateway's volumes. For example, you might choose to have a critical storage application exclusively use one particular adapter defined for your gateway.
Network constraints – Your application environment might require that you keep your iSCSI targets and the initiators that connect to them in an isolated network that is different from the network by which the gateway communicates with AWS.

In a typical multiple-adapter use case, one adapter is configured as the route by which the gateway communicates with AWS (that is, as the default gateway). Except for this one adapter, initiators must be in the same subnet as the adapter that contains the iSCSI targets to which they connect. Otherwise, communication with the intended targets might not be possible. If a target is configured on the same adapter that is used for communication with AWS, then iSCSI traffic for that target and AWS traffic will flow through the same adapter.

When you configure one adapter to connect to the AWS Storage gateway console and then add a second adapter, storage gateway automatically configures the route table to use the second adapter as the preferred route. For instructions on how to configure multiple-adapters, see the following sections.

- Configuring Your Gateway for Multiple NICs in a VMware ESXi Host (p. 166)
- Configuring Your Gateway for Multiple NICs in Microsoft Hyper-V Host (p. 173)

Performing Maintenance Tasks on the Amazon EC2 Gateway Local Console

Some maintenance tasks require that you log in to the local console when running a gateway deployed on an Amazon EC2 instance. In this section, you can find information about how to log in to the local console and perform maintenance tasks.

Topics
- Logging In to Your Amazon EC2 Gateway Local Console (p. 191)
- Routing Your Gateway Deployed on Amazon EC2 Through a Proxy (p. 192)
- Testing Your Gateway Connectivity to the Internet (p. 193)
- Running Storage Gateway Commands on the Local Console (p. 195)
- Viewing Your Gateway System Resource Status (p. 196)

Logging In to Your Amazon EC2 Gateway Local Console

You can connect to your Amazon EC2 instance by using a Secure Shell (SSH) client. For detailed information, see Connect to Your Instance in the Amazon EC2 User Guide. To connect this way, you will need the SSH key pair you specified when you launched the instance. For information about Amazon EC2 key pairs, see Amazon EC2 Key Pairs in the Amazon EC2 User Guide.

To log in to the gateway local console

1. Log in to your local console. If you are connecting to your EC2 instance from a Windows computer, log in as sguser.
2. After you log in, you see the AWS Storage Gateway Configuration main menu, as shown in the following screenshot.
To configure a SOCKS proxy for your gateway

Routing Your Gateway Deployed on Amazon EC2 Through a Proxy (p. 192)

Test network connectivity

Testing Your Gateway Connectivity to the Internet (p. 193)

Run Storage Gateway console commands

Running Storage Gateway Commands on the Local Console (p. 195)

View a system resource check

Logging In to Your Amazon EC2 Gateway Local Console (p. 191).

To shut down the gateway, type 0.

To exit the configuration session, type x to exit the menu.

Routing Your Gateway Deployed on Amazon EC2 Through a Proxy

AWS Storage Gateway supports the configuration of a Socket Secure version 5 (SOCKS5) proxy between your gateway deployed on Amazon EC2 and AWS.

Note

The only proxy configuration AWS Storage Gateway supports is SOCKS5.

If your gateway must use a proxy server to communicate to the Internet, then you need to configure the SOCKS proxy settings for your gateway. You do this by specifying an IP address and port number for the host running your proxy. After you do so, AWS Storage Gateway will route all HyperText Transfer Protocol Secure (HTTPS) traffic through your proxy server.

To route your gateway Internet traffic through a local proxy server

1. Log in to your gateway's local console. For instructions, see Logging In to Your Amazon EC2 Gateway Local Console (p. 191).

2. On the AWS Storage Gateway Configuration main menu, type 1 to begin configuring the SOCKS proxy.
Performing Maintenance Tasks on the Amazon EC2 Local Console

3. Choose one of the following options in the **AWS Storage Gateway SOCKS Proxy Configuration** menu:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Do This</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configure a SOCKS proxy</td>
<td>Type 1. You need to supply a host name and port to complete configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View the current SOCKS proxy configuration</td>
<td>Type 2. If a SOCKS proxy is not configured, the message SOCKS Proxy not configured is displayed. If a SOCKS proxy is configured, the host name and port of the proxy are displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove a SOCKS proxy configuration</td>
<td>Type 3. The message SOCKS Proxy Configuration Removed is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exit this menu and return to the previous menu</td>
<td>Type x.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Testing Your Gateway Connectivity to the Internet**

You can use your gateway's local console to test your Internet connection. This test can be useful when you are troubleshooting network issues with your gateway.

**To test your gateway's connection to the Internet**

1. Log in to your gateway's local console. For instructions, see Logging In to Your Amazon EC2 Gateway Local Console (p. 191).
2. In the **AWS Storage Gateway Configuration** main menu, type 2 to begin testing network connectivity.
The console displays the available regions.

3. Select the region you want to test. Following are the available regions for gateways deployed an EC2 instance.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Region Name</th>
<th>Region String</th>
<th>File Gateway</th>
<th>Volume Gateway</th>
<th>Tape Gateway</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>US East (Ohio)</td>
<td>us-east-2</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US East (N. Virginia)</td>
<td>us-east-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US West (N. California)</td>
<td>us-west-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US West (Oregon)</td>
<td>us-west-2</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada (Central)</td>
<td>ca-central-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EU (Ireland)</td>
<td>eu-west-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EU (Frankfurt)</td>
<td>eu-central-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EU (London)</td>
<td>eu-west-2</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EU (Paris)</td>
<td>eu-west-3</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia Pacific (Tokyo)</td>
<td>ap-northeast-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia Pacific (Seoul)</td>
<td>ap-northeast-2</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia Pacific (Singapore)</td>
<td>ap-southeast-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia Pacific (Sydney)</td>
<td>ap-southeast-2</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia Pacific (Mumbai)</td>
<td>ap-south-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South America (São Paulo)</td>
<td>sa-east-1</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Each endpoint in the region you select displays either a [PASSED] or [FAILED] message, as shown following.
**Running Storage Gateway Commands on the Local Console**

The AWS Storage Gateway console helps provide a secure environment for configuring and diagnosing issues with your gateway. Using the console commands, you can perform maintenance tasks such as saving routing tables or connecting to AWS Support.

**To run a configuration or diagnostic command**

1. Log in to your gateway's local console. For instructions, see Logging In to Your Amazon EC2 Gateway Local Console (p. 191).
2. In the **AWS Storage Gateway Configuration** main menu, type 3 for **Gateway Console**.
   
   ![Gateway Console Menu](image)

   The console displays the **Available Commands** menu with the available commands. After the menu, a **Gateway Console** prompt appears, as shown in the following screenshot.

   ![Gateway Console Prompt](image)
Performing Maintenance Tasks on
the Amazon EC2 Local Console

4. To learn about a command, type `man +command name` at the Gateway Console prompt.

Viewing Your Gateway System Resource Status

When your gateway starts, it checks its virtual CPU cores, root volume size, and RAM and determines whether these system resources are sufficient for your gateway to function properly. You can view the results of this check on the gateway's local console.

To view the status of a system resource check

1. Log in to your gateway's local console. For instructions, see Logging In to Your Amazon EC2 Gateway Local Console (p. 191).
2. In the AWS Storage Gateway Configuration main menu, type 4 to view the results of a system resource check.

The console displays an [OK], [WARNING], or [FAIL] message for each resource as described in the table following.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[OK]</td>
<td>The resource has passed the system resource check.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[WARNING]</td>
<td>The resource does not meet the recommended requirements, but your gateway will continue to function. AWS Storage Gateway displays a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deleting Your Gateway and Removing Resources

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[FAIL]</td>
<td>The resource does not meet the minimum requirements. Your gateway might not function properly. AWS Storage Gateway displays a message that describes the results of the resource check.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The console also displays the number of errors and warnings next to the resource check menu option.

The following screenshot shows a [FAIL] message and the accompanying error message.

Deleting Your Gateway by Using the AWS Storage Gateway Console and Removing Associated Resources

If you don’t plan to continue using your gateway, consider deleting the gateway and its associated resources. Removing resources avoids incurring charges for resources you don’t plan to continue using and helps reduce your monthly bill.

When you delete a gateway, it no longer appears on the AWS Storage Gateway Management Console and its iSCSI connection to the initiator is closed. The procedure for deleting a gateway is the same for all gateway types; however, depending on the type of gateway you want to delete and the host it is deployed on, you follow specific instructions to remove associated resources.

You can delete a gateway using the Storage Gateway console or programmatically. You can find information following about how to delete a gateway using the Storage Gateway console. If you want to programmatically delete your gateway, see AWS Storage Gateway API Reference.

Topics

- Deleting Your Gateway by Using the AWS Storage Gateway Console (p. 198)
Deleting Your Gateway by Using the AWS Storage Gateway Console

The procedure for deleting a gateway is the same for all gateway types. However, depending on the type of gateway you want to delete and the host the gateway is deployed on, you might have to perform additional tasks to remove resources associated with the gateway. Removing these resources helps you avoid paying for resources you don’t plan to use.

**Note**
For gateways deployed on an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance, the instance continues to exist until you delete it.
For gateways deployed on a virtual machine (VM), after you delete your gateway the gateway VM still exists in your virtualization environment. To remove the VM, use the VMware vSphere client or Microsoft Hyper-V Manager to connect to the host and remove the VM. Note that you can't reuse the deleted gateway's VM to activate a new gateway.

**To delete a gateway**

2. In the navigation pane, choose Gateways, and then choose the gateway you want to delete.
3. On the Actions menu, choose Delete gateway.
4. **Important**
   Before you do this step, be sure that there are no applications currently writing to the gateway's volumes. If you delete the gateway while it is in use, data loss can occur.

**Warning**
When a gateway is deleted, there is no way to get it back.

In the confirmation dialog box that appears, select the check box to confirm your deletion. Make sure the gateway ID listed specifies the gateway you want to delete. and then choose Delete.

**Important**
You no longer pay software charges after you delete a gateway, but resources such as virtual tapes, Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) snapshots, and Amazon EC2 instances persist. You will continue to be billed for these resources. You can choose to remove Amazon EC2 instances and Amazon EBS snapshots by canceling your Amazon EC2 subscription. If you want to keep your Amazon EC2 subscription, you can delete your Amazon EBS snapshots using the Amazon EC2 console.
Removing Resources from a Gateway Deployed On-Premises

You can use the instructions following to remove resources from a gateway that is deployed on-premises.

Removing Resources from a Volume Gateway Deployed on a VM

If the gateway you want to delete are deployed on a virtual machine (VM), we suggest that you take the following actions to clean up resources:

- Delete the gateway. For instructions, see Deleting Your Gateway by Using the AWS Storage Gateway Console (p. 198).
- Delete all Amazon EBS snapshots you don't need. For instructions, see Deleting an Amazon EBS Snapshot in the Amazon EC2 User Guide for Linux Instances.

Removing Resources from a Tape Gateway Deployed on a VM

When you delete a gateway–virtual tape library (VTL), you perform additional cleanup steps before and after you delete the gateway. These additional steps help you remove resources you don't need so you don't continue to pay for them.

If the tape gateway you want to delete is deployed on a virtual machine (VM), we suggest that you take the following actions to clean up resources.

**Important**

- Before you delete a tape gateway, you must cancel all tape retrieval operations and eject all retrieved tapes.
- After you have deleted the tape gateway, you must remove any resources associated with the tape gateway that you don't need to avoid paying for those resources.

When you delete a tape gateway, you can encounter one of two scenarios.

- **The tape gateway is connected to AWS** – If the tape gateway is connected to AWS and you delete the gateway, the iSCSI targets associated with the gateway (that is, the virtual tape drives and media changer) will no longer be available.
- **The tape gateway is not connected to AWS** – If the tape gateway is not connected to AWS, for example if the underlying VM is turned off or your network is down, then you cannot delete the gateway. If you attempt to do so, after your environment is back up and running you might have a tape gateway running on-premises with available iSCSI targets. However, no tape gateway data will be uploaded to, or downloaded from, AWS.

If the tape gateway you want to delete is not functioning, you must first disable it before you delete it, as described following:

- To delete tapes that have the RETRIEVED status from the library, eject the tape using your backup software. For instructions, see Archiving the Tape (p. 85).

After disabling the tape gateway and deleting tapes, you can delete the tape gateway. For instructions on how to delete a gateway, see Deleting Your Gateway by Using the AWS Storage Gateway Console (p. 198).

If you have tapes archived, those tapes remain and you continue to pay for storage until you delete them. For instruction on how to delete tapes from a archive, see Deleting Tapes (p. 122).
Important
You are charged for a minimum of 90 days storage for virtual tapes in a archive. If you retrieve a virtual tape that has been stored in the archive for less than 90 days, you are still charged for 90 days storage.

Removing Resources from a Gateway Deployed on an Amazon EC2 Instance

If you want to delete a gateway that you deployed on an Amazon EC2 instance, we recommend that you clean up the AWS resources that were used with the gateway, specifically the Amazon EC2 instance, any Amazon EBS volumes, and also tapes if you deployed a tape gateway. Doing so helps avoid unintended usage charges.

Removing Resources from Your Cached Volumes Deployed on Amazon EC2

If you deployed a gateway with cached volumes on EC2, we suggest that you take the following actions to delete your gateway and clean up its resources:

1. In the Storage Gateway console, delete the gateway as shown in Deleting Your Gateway by Using the AWS Storage Gateway Console (p. 198).
2. In the Amazon EC2 console, stop your EC2 instance if you plan on using the instance again. Otherwise, terminate the instance. If you plan on deleting volumes, make note of the block devices that are attached to the instance and the devices' identifiers before terminating the instance. You will need these to identify the volumes you want to delete.
3. In the Amazon EC2 console, remove all Amazon EBS volumes that are attached to the instance if you don't plan on using them again. For more information, see Clean Up Your Instance and Volume in the Amazon EC2 User Guide for Linux Instances.

Removing Resources from Your Tape Gateway Deployed on Amazon EC2

If you deployed a tape gateway, we suggest that you take the following actions to delete your gateway and clean up its resources:

1. Delete all virtual tapes that you have retrieved to your tape gateway. For more information, see Deleting Tapes (p. 122).
2. Delete all virtual tapes from the tape library. For more information, see Deleting Tapes (p. 122).
3. Delete the tape gateway. For more information, see Deleting Your Gateway by Using the AWS Storage Gateway Console (p. 198).
4. Terminate all Amazon EC2 instances, and delete all Amazon EBS volumes. For more information, see Clean Up Your Instance and Volume in the Amazon EC2 User Guide for Linux Instances.
5. Delete all archived virtual tapes. For more information, see Deleting Tapes (p. 122).

Important
You are charged for a minimum of 90 days storage for virtual tapes in the archive. If you retrieve a virtual tape that has been stored in the archive for less than 90 days, you are still charged for 90 days storage.
Security

In this section, you can find information about AWS and CHAPS configuration and authentication and access control.

Topics
- Configure CHAP Authentication for Your Volumes (p. 201)
- Authentication and Access Control for AWS Storage Gateway (p. 202)

Configure CHAP Authentication for Your Volumes

In AWS Storage Gateway, your iSCSI initiators connect to your volumes as iSCSI targets. Storage Gateway uses Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP) to authenticate iSCSI and initiator connections. CHAP provides protection against playback attacks by requiring authentication to access storage volume targets. For each volume target, you can define one or more CHAP credentials. You can view and edit these credentials for the different initiators in the Configure CHAP credentials dialog box.

To configure CHAP credentials

1. In the AWS Storage Gateway Console, choose Volumes and select the volume for which you want to configure CHAP credentials.
2. On the Actions menu, choose Configure CHAP authentication.
3. For Initiator name, type the name of your initiator. The name must be at least 1 character and at most 255 characters long.
4. For Initiator secret, provide the secret phrase you want to used to authenticate your iSCSI initiator. The initiator secret phrase must be at least 12 characters and at most 16 characters long.
5. For Target secret, provide the secret phrase you want used to authenticate your target for mutual CHAP. The target secret phrase must be at least 12 characters and at most 16 characters long.
6. Choose Save to save your entries.

To view or update CHAP credentials, you must have the necessary IAM role permissions to that allows you to perform that operation.

Viewing and Editing CHAP Credentials

You can add, remove or update CHAP credentials for each user. To view or edit CHAP credentials, you must have the necessary IAM role permissions that allows you to perform that operation and the gateway the initiator target is attached to must be a functioning gateway.
To add CHAP credentials

1. In the AWS Storage Gateway Console, choose Volumes and select the volume for which you want to add CHAP credentials.
2. On the Actions menu, choose Configure CHAP authentication.
3. In the Configure CHAPs page, provide the Initiator name, Initiator secret, and Target secret in the respective boxes and choose Save.

To remove CHAP credentials

1. In the AWS Storage Gateway Console, choose Volumes and select the volume for which you want to remove CHAP credentials.
2. On the Actions menu, choose Configure CHAP authentication.
3. Click the X next to the credentials you want to remove and choose Save.

To update CHAP credentials

1. In the AWS Storage Gateway Console, choose Volumes and select the volume for which you want to update CHAP.
2. On the Actions menu, choose Configure CHAP authentication.
3. In Configure CHAP credentials page, change the entries for the credentials you want to update.
4. Choose Save.

Authentication and Access Control for AWS Storage Gateway

Access to AWS Storage Gateway requires credentials that AWS can use to authenticate your requests. Those credentials must have permissions to access AWS resources, such as a gateway, file share, volume, or tape. The following sections provide details on how you can use AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) and AWS Storage Gateway to help secure your resources by controlling who can access them:

- Authentication (p. 202)
- Access Control (p. 203)

Authentication

You can access AWS as any of the following types of identities:

- **AWS account root user** – When you first create an AWS account, you begin with a single sign-in identity that has complete access to all AWS services and resources in the account. This identity is called the AWS account root user and is accessed by signing in with the email address and password that you used to create the account. We strongly recommend that you do not use the root user for your everyday tasks, even the administrative ones. Instead, adhere to the best practice of using the root user only to create your first IAM user. Then securely lock away the root user credentials and use them to perform only a few account and service management tasks.

- **IAM user** – An IAM user is an identity within your AWS account that has specific custom permissions (for example, permissions to create a gateway in AWS Storage Gateway). You can use an IAM user name and password to sign in to secure AWS webpages like the AWS Management Console, AWS Discussion Forums, or the AWS Support Center.
In addition to a user name and password, you can also generate access keys for each user. You can use these keys when you access AWS services programmatically, either through one of the several SDKs or by using the AWS Command Line Interface (CLI). The SDK and CLI tools use the access keys to cryptographically sign your request. If you don’t use AWS tools, you must sign the request yourself. AWS Storage Gateway supports Signature Version 4, a protocol for authenticating inbound API requests. For more information about authenticating requests, see Signature Version 4 Signing Process in the AWS General Reference.

• IAM role – An IAM role is an IAM identity that you can create in your account that has specific permissions. It is similar to an IAM user, but it is not associated with a specific person. An IAM role enables you to obtain temporary access keys that can be used to access AWS services and resources. IAM roles with temporary credentials are useful in the following situations:

• Federated user access – Instead of creating an IAM user, you can use existing user identities from AWS Directory Service, your enterprise user directory, or a web identity provider. These are known as federated users. AWS assigns a role to a federated user when access is requested through an identity provider. For more information about federated users, see Federated Users and Roles in the IAM User Guide.

• AWS service access – You can use an IAM role in your account to grant an AWS service permissions to access your account's resources. For example, you can create a role that allows Amazon Redshift to access an Amazon S3 bucket on your behalf and then load data from that bucket into an Amazon Redshift cluster. For more information, see Creating a Role to Delegate Permissions to an AWS Service in the IAM User Guide.

• Applications running on Amazon EC2 – You can use an IAM role to manage temporary credentials for applications that are running on an EC2 instance and making AWS API requests. This is preferable to storing access keys within the EC2 instance. To assign an AWS role to an EC2 instance and make it available to all of its applications, you create an instance profile that is attached to the instance. An instance profile contains the role and enables programs that are running on the EC2 instance to get temporary credentials. For more information, see Using an IAM Role to Grant Permissions to Applications Running on Amazon EC2 Instances in the IAM User Guide.

Access Control

You can have valid credentials to authenticate your requests, but unless you have permissions you cannot create or access AWS Storage Gateway resources. For example, you must have permissions to create a gateway in AWS Storage Gateway.

The following sections describe how to manage permissions for AWS Storage Gateway. We recommend that you read the overview first.

• Overview of Managing Access Permissions to Your AWS Storage Gateway (p. 204)
• Identity-Based Policies (IAM Policies) (p. 205)
Overview of Managing Access Permissions to Your AWS Storage Gateway

Every AWS resource is owned by an AWS account, and permissions to create or access a resource are governed by permissions policies. An account administrator can attach permissions policies to IAM identities (that is, users, groups, and roles), and some services (such as AWS Lambda) also support attaching permissions policies to resources.

**Note**

An *account administrator* (or administrator user) is a user with administrator privileges. For more information, see [IAM Best Practices](#) in the IAM User Guide.

When granting permissions, you decide who is getting the permissions, the resources they get permissions for, and the specific actions that you want to allow on those resources.

**Topics**

- AWS Storage Gateway Resources and Operations (p. 204)
- Understanding Resource Ownership (p. 205)
- Managing Access to Resources (p. 205)
- Specifying Policy Elements: Actions, Effects, Resources, and Principals (p. 206)
- Specifying Conditions in a Policy (p. 207)

AWS Storage Gateway Resources and Operations

In AWS Storage Gateway, the primary resource is a *gateway*. Storage Gateway also supports the following additional resource types: *file share*, *volume*, *virtual tape*, *iSCSI target*, and *vtl device*. These are referred to as *subresources* and they don't exist unless they are associated with a gateway.

These resources and subresources have unique Amazon Resource Names (ARNs) associated with them as shown in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resource Type</th>
<th>ARN Format</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gateway ARN</td>
<td><code>arn:aws:storagegateway:region:account-id:gateway/gateway-id</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File Share ARN</td>
<td><code>arn:aws:storagegateway:region:account-id:share/share-id</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tape ARN</td>
<td><code>arn:aws:storagegateway:region:account-id:tape/tapebarcode</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Target ARN (iSCSI target)</td>
<td><code>arn:aws:storagegateway:region:account-id:gateway/gateway-id/target/iSCSItarget</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

- AWS Storage Gateway resource IDs are in uppercase. When you use these resource IDs with the Amazon EC2 API, Amazon EC2 expects resource IDs in lowercase. You must change your
resource ID to lowercase to use it with the EC2 API. For example, in Storage Gateway the ID for a volume might be vol-1122AABB. When you use this ID with the EC2 API, you must change it to vol-1122aabb. Otherwise, the EC2 API might not behave as expected.

- ARNs for gateways activated prior to September 2, 2015, contain the gateway name instead of the gateway ID. To obtain the ARN for your gateway, use the DescribeGatewayInformation API operation.

To grant permissions for specific API operations, such as creating a tape, AWS Storage Gateway provides a set of API actions for you to create and manage these resources and subresources. For a list of API actions, see Actions in the AWS Storage Gateway API Reference.

To grant permissions for specific API operations, such as creating a tape, AWS Storage Gateway defines a set of actions that you can specify in a permissions policy to grant permissions for specific API operations. An API operation can require permissions for more than one action. For a table showing all the AWS Storage Gateway API actions and the resources they apply to, see AWS Storage Gateway API Permissions: Actions, Resources, and Conditions Reference (p. 213).

Understanding Resource Ownership

A resource owner is the AWS account that created the resource. That is, the resource owner is the AWS account of the principal entity (the root account, an IAM user, or an IAM role) that authenticates the request that creates the resource. The following examples illustrate how this works:

- If you use the root account credentials of your AWS account to activate a gateway, your AWS account is the owner of the resource (in AWS Storage Gateway, the resource is the gateway).
- If you create an IAM user in your AWS account and grant permissions to the ActivateGateway action to that user, the user can activate a gateway. However, your AWS account, to which the user belongs, owns the gateway resource.
- If you create an IAM role in your AWS account with permissions to activate a gateway, anyone who can assume the role can activate a gateway. Your AWS account, to which the role belongs, owns the gateway resource.

Managing Access to Resources

A permissions policy describes who has access to what. The following section explains the available options for creating permissions policies.

**Note**
This section discusses using IAM in the context of AWS Storage Gateway. It doesn't provide detailed information about the IAM service. For complete IAM documentation, see What is IAM in the IAM User Guide. For information about IAM policy syntax and descriptions, see AWS IAM Policy Reference in the IAM User Guide.

Policies attached to an IAM identity are referred to as identity-based policies (IAM policies) and policies attached to a resource are referred to as resource-based policies. AWS Storage Gateway supports only identity-based policies (IAM policies).

**Topics**
- Identity-Based Policies (IAM Policies) (p. 205)
- Resource-Based Policies (p. 206)

**Identity-Based Policies (IAM Policies)**

You can attach policies to IAM identities. For example, you can do the following:
• **Attach a permissions policy to a user or a group in your account** – An account administrator can use a permissions policy that is associated with a particular user to grant permissions for that user to create an AWS Storage Gateway resource, such as a gateway, volume, or tape.

• **Attach a permissions policy to a role (grant cross-account permissions)** – You can attach an identity-based permissions policy to an IAM role to grant cross-account permissions. For example, the administrator in Account A can create a role to grant cross-account permissions to another AWS account (for example, Account B) or an AWS service as follows:

1. Account A administrator creates an IAM role and attaches a permissions policy to the role that grants permissions on resources in Account A.
2. Account A administrator attaches a trust policy to the role identifying Account B as the principal who can assume the role.
3. Account B administrator can then delegate permissions to assume the role to any users in Account B. Doing this allows users in Account B to create or access resources in Account A. The principal in the trust policy can also be an AWS service principal if you want to grant an AWS service permissions to assume the role.

For more information about using IAM to delegate permissions, see Access Management in the IAM User Guide.

The following is an example policy that grants permissions to all List* actions on all resources. This action is a read-only action. Thus, the policy doesn't allow the user to change the state of the resources.

```json
{
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
      {
         "Sid": "AllowAllListActionsOnAllResources",
         "Effect": "Allow",
         "Action": [
            "storagegateway:List*"
         ],
         "Resource": "*"
      }
   ]
}
```

For more information about using identity-based policies with AWS Storage Gateway, see Using Identity-Based Policies (IAM Policies) for AWS Storage Gateway (p. 207). For more information about users, groups, roles, and permissions, see Identities (Users, Groups, and Roles in the IAM User Guide.

**Resource-Based Policies**

Other services, such as Amazon S3, also support resource-based permissions policies. For example, you can attach a policy to an S3 bucket to manage access permissions to that bucket. AWS Storage Gateway doesn't support resource-based policies.

**Specifying Policy Elements: Actions, Effects, Resources, and Principals**

For each AWS Storage Gateway resource (see AWS Storage Gateway API Permissions: Actions, Resources, and Conditions Reference (p. 213)), the service defines a set of API operations (see Actions). To grant permissions for these API operations, AWS Storage Gateway defines a set of actions that you can specify in a policy. For example, for the AWS Storage Gateway gateway resource, the following actions are defined: ActivateGateway, DeleteGateway, and DescribeGatewayInformation. Note that, performing an API operation can require permissions for more than one action.

The following are the most basic policy elements:
• **Resource** – In a policy, you use an Amazon Resource Name (ARN) to identify the resource to which the policy applies. For AWS Storage Gateway resources, you always use the wildcard character (*) in IAM policies. For more information, see AWS Storage Gateway Resources and Operations (p. 204).

• **Action** – You use action keywords to identify resource operations that you want to allow or deny. For example, depending on the specified **Effect**, the storagegateway:ActivateGateway permission allows or denies the user permissions to perform the AWS Storage Gateway ActivateGateway operation.

• **Effect** – You specify the effect when the user requests the specific action—this can be either allow or deny. If you don’t explicitly grant access to (allow) a resource, access is implicitly denied. You can also explicitly deny access to a resource, which you might do to make sure that a user cannot access it, even if a different policy grants access.

• **Principal** – In identity-based policies (IAM policies), the user that the policy is attached to is the implicit principal. For resource-based policies, you specify the user, account, service, or other entity that you want to receive permissions (applies to resource-based policies only). AWS Storage Gateway doesn’t support resource-based policies.

To learn more about IAM policy syntax and descriptions, see AWS IAM Policy Reference in the IAM User Guide.

For a table showing all of the AWS Storage Gateway API actions, see AWS Storage Gateway API Permissions: Actions, Resources, and Conditions Reference (p. 213).

### Specifying Conditions in a Policy

When you grant permissions, you can use the IAM policy language to specify the conditions when a policy should take effect when granting permissions. For example, you might want a policy to be applied only after a specific date. For more information about specifying conditions in a policy language, see **Condition** in the IAM User Guide.

To express conditions, you use predefined condition keys. There are no condition keys specific to Storage Gateway. However, there are AWS-wide condition keys that you can use as appropriate. For a complete list of AWS-wide keys, see Available Keys in the IAM User Guide.

### Using Identity-Based Policies (IAM Policies) for AWS Storage Gateway

This topic provides examples of identity-based policies in which an account administrator can attach permissions policies to IAM identities (that is, users, groups, and roles).

**Important**

We recommend that you first review the introductory topics that explain the basic concepts and options available for you to manage access to your AWS Storage Gateway resources.

For more information, see Overview of Managing Access Permissions to Your AWS Storage Gateway (p. 204).

The sections in this topic cover the following:

• **Permissions Required to Use the Storage Gateway Console** (p. 208)
• **AWS Managed Policies for AWS Storage Gateway** (p. 209)
• **Customer Managed Policy Examples** (p. 209)

The following shows an example of a permissions policy.

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    ...
}
```
The policy has two statements (note the Action and Resource elements in both the statements):

- The first statement grants permissions for two Storage Gateway actions (storagegateway:ActivateGateway and storagegateway:ListGateways) on a gateway resource using the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the gateway. The ARN specifies a wildcard character (*) because you don’t know the gateway ID until after you create a gateway.

  *Note*
  ARNs uniquely identify AWS resources. For more information, see Amazon Resource Names (ARNs) and AWS Service Namespaces in the AWS General Reference.

  The wildcard character (*) at the end of the gateway ARN means that this statement can match any gateway ID. In this case, the statement allows the storagegateway:ActivateGateway and storagegateway:ListGateways actions on any gateway in the specified region, us-west-2, and the specified ID identifies the account that is owner of the gateway resource. For information about how to use a wildcard character (*) in a policy, see Example 2: Allow Read-Only Access to a Gateway (p. 210).

  To limit permissions for a particular action to a specific gateway only, create a separate statement for that action in the policy and specify the gateway ID in that statement.

- The second statement grants permissions for the ec2:DescribeSnapshots and ec2:DeleteSnapshot actions. These Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) actions require permissions because snapshots generated from AWS Storage Gateway are stored in Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) and managed as Amazon EC2 resources, and thus they require corresponding EC2 actions. For more information, see Actions in the Amazon EC2 API Reference. Because these Amazon EC2 actions don’t support resource-level permissions, the policy specifies the wildcard character (*) as the Resource value instead of specifying a gateway ARN.

For a table showing all of the AWS Storage Gateway API actions and the resources that they apply to, see AWS Storage Gateway API Permissions: Actions, Resources, and Conditions Reference (p. 213).

Permissions Required to Use the Storage Gateway Console

To use the Storage Gateway console, you need to grant read-only permissions. If you plan to describe snapshots, you also need to grant permissions for additional actions as shown in the following permissions policy:
This additional permission is required because the Amazon EBS snapshots generated from AWS Storage Gateway are managed as Amazon EC2 resources.

To set up the minimum permissions required to navigate the Storage Gateway console, see Example 2: Allow Read-Only Access to a Gateway (p. 210).

AWS Managed Policies for AWS Storage Gateway

AWS addresses many common use cases by providing standalone IAM policies that are created and administered by AWS. Managed policies grant necessary permissions for common use cases so you can avoid having to investigate what permissions are needed. For more information about AWS managed policies, see AWS Managed Policies in the IAM User Guide.

The following AWS managed policies, which you can attach to users in your account, are specific to Storage Gateway:

- **AWSStorageGatewayReadOnlyAccess** – Grants read-only access to AWS Storage Gateway resources.
- **AWSStorageGatewayFullAccess** – Grants full access to AWS Storage Gateway resources.

  **Note**
  
  You can review these permissions policies by signing in to the IAM console and searching for specific policies there.

You can also create your own custom IAM policies to allow permissions for AWS Storage Gateway API actions. You can attach these custom policies to the IAM users or groups that require those permissions.

Customer Managed Policy Examples

In this section, you can find example user policies that grant permissions for various Storage Gateway actions. These policies work when you are using AWS SDKs and the AWS CLI. When you are using the console, you need to grant additional permissions specific to the console, which is discussed in Permissions Required to Use the Storage Gateway Console (p. 208).

  **Note**
  
  All examples use the US West (Oregon) Region (us-west-2) and contain fictitious account IDs.

**Topics**

- Example 1: Allow Any AWS Storage Gateway Actions on All Gateways (p. 210)
- Example 2: Allow Read-Only Access to a Gateway (p. 210)
- Example 3: Allow Access to a Specific Gateway (p. 211)
- Example 4: Allow a User to Access a Specific Volume (p. 212)
- Example 5: Allow All Actions on Gateways with a Specific Prefix (p. 213)
Example 1: Allow Any AWS Storage Gateway Actions on All Gateways

The following policy allows a user to perform all the AWS Storage Gateway actions. The policy also allows the user to perform Amazon EC2 actions (DescribeSnapshots and DeleteSnapshot) on the Amazon EBS snapshots generated from AWS Storage Gateway.

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "AllowsAllAWSStorageGatewayActions",
      "Action": [
        "storagegateway:*"
      ],
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Resource": "*"
    },
    {
      "Sid": "AllowsSpecifiedEC2Actions",
      "Action": [
        "ec2:DescribeSnapshots",
        "ec2:DeleteSnapshot"
      ],
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Resource": "*"
    }
  ]
}
```

Example 2: Allow Read-Only Access to a Gateway

The following policy allows all List* and Describe* actions on all resources. Note that these actions are read-only actions. Thus, the policy doesn’t allow the user to change the state of any resources—that is, the policy doesn’t allow the user to perform actions such as DeleteGateway, ActivateGateway, and ShutdownGateway.

The policy also allows the DescribeSnapshots Amazon EC2 action. For more information, see DescribeSnapshots in the Amazon EC2 API Reference.

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "AllowReadOnlyAccessToAllGateways",
      "Action": [
        "storagegateway:List*",
        "storagegateway:Describe*"
      ],
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Resource": "*"
    },
    {
      "Sid": "AllowsUserToDescribeSnapshotsOnAllGateways",
      "Action": [
        "ec2:DescribeSnapshots"
      ],
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Resource": "*"
    }
  ]
}
```
In the preceding policy, instead of using a wildcard character (*), you can scope resources covered by the policy to a specific gateway, as shown in the following example. The policy then allows the actions only on the specific gateway.

```
"Resource": [
]
```

Within a gateway, you can further restrict the scope of the resources to only the gateway volumes, as shown in the following example:

```
```

**Example 3: Allow Access to a Specific Gateway**

The following policy allows all actions on a specific gateway. The user is restricted from accessing other gateways you might have deployed.

```
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Sid": "AllowReadOnlyAccessToAllGateways",
            "Action": [
                "storagegateway:List*",
                "storagegateway:Describe*"
            ],
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Resource": "*"
        },
        {
            "Sid": "AllowsUserToDescribeSnapshotsOnAllGateways",
            "Action": [
                "ec2:DescribeSnapshots"
            ],
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Resource": "*"
        },
        {
            "Sid": "AllowsAllActionsOnSpecificGateway",
            "Action": [
                "storagegateway:*"
            ],
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Resource": [
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

The preceding policy works if the user to which the policy is attached uses either the API or an AWS SDK to access the gateway. However, if the user is going to use the AWS Storage Gateway console, you must also grant permissions to allow the `ListGateways` action, as shown in the following example:

```
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
```

API Version 2013-06-30

211
Using Identity-Based Policies (IAM Policies)

```
{
  "Sid": "AllowsAllActionsOnSpecificGateway",
  "Action": [
    "storagegateway:*"
  ],
  "Effect": "Allow",
  "Resource": [
  ]
},
{
  "Sid": "AllowsUserToUseAWSConsole",
  "Action": [
    "storagegateway:ListGateways"
  ],
  "Effect": "Allow",
  "Resource": "*"
}
```

Example 4: Allow a User to Access a Specific Volume

The following policy allows a user to perform all actions to a specific volume on a gateway. Because a user doesn’t get any permissions by default, the policy restricts the user to accessing only a specific volume.

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "GrantsPermissionsToSpecificVolume",
      "Action": [
        "storagegateway:*"
      ],
      "Effect": "Allow",
    },
    {
      "Sid": "GrantsPermissionsToUseStorageGatewayConsole",
      "Action": [
        "storagegateway:ListGateways"
      ],
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Resource": "*"
    }
  ]
}
```

The preceding policy works if the user to whom the policy is attached uses either the API or an AWS SDK to access the volume. However, if this user is going to use the AWS Storage Gateway console, you must also grant permissions to allow the `ListGateways` action, as shown in the following example:

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "GrantsPermissionsToSpecificVolume",
      "Action": [
        "storagegateway:*"
      ],
      "Effect": "Allow",
    },
    {
      "Sid": "GrantsPermissionsToUseStorageGatewayConsole",
      "Action": [
        "storagegateway:ListGateways"
      ],
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Resource": "*"
    }
  ]
}
```
Example 5: Allow All Actions on Gateways with a Specific Prefix

The following policy allows a user to perform all AWS Storage Gateway actions on gateways with names that start with DeptX. The policy also allows the DescribeSnapshots Amazon EC2 action which is required if you plan to describe snapshots.

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Sid": "AllowsActionsGatewayWithPrefixDeptX",
            "Action": ["storagegateway:*"],
            "Effect": "Allow",
        },
        {
            "Sid": "GrantsPermissionsToSpecifiedAction",
            "Action": ["ec2:DescribeSnapshots"],
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Resource": "*"
        }
    ]
}
```

The preceding policy works if the user to whom the policy is attached uses either the API or an AWS SDK to access the gateway. However, if this user plans to use the AWS Storage Gateway console, you must grant additional permissions as described in Example 3: Allow Access to a Specific Gateway (p. 211).

AWS Storage Gateway API Permissions: Actions, Resources, and Conditions Reference

When you are setting up Access Control (p. 203) and writing permissions policies that you can attach to an IAM identity (identity-based policies), you can use the following table as a reference. The table lists each AWS Storage Gateway API operation, the corresponding actions for which you can grant permissions to perform the action, and the AWS resource for which you can grant the permissions. You specify the actions in the policy's Action field, and you specify the resource value in the policy's Resource field.

You can use AWS-wide condition keys in your AWS Storage Gateway policies to express conditions. For a complete list of AWS-wide keys, see Available keys in the IAM User Guide.
**Note**

To specify an action, use the `storagegateway:` prefix followed by the API operation name (for example, `storagegateway:ActivateGateway`). For each AWS Storage Gateway action, you can specify a wildcard character (*) as the resource.

For a list of Storage Gateway resources with the ARN format, see [AWS Storage Gateway Resources and Operations](#). (p. 204).

**AWS Storage Gateway API and Required Permissions for Actions**

**ActivateGateway**

**Action(s):** `storagegateway:ActivateGateway`

**Resource:** *

**AddCache**

**Action(s):** `storagegateway:AddCache`

**Resource:** `arn:aws:storagegateway:region:account-id:gateway/gateway-id`

**AddTagsToResource**

**Action(s):** `storagegateway:AddTagsToResource`

**Resource:** `arn:aws:storagegateway:region:account-id:gateway/gateway-id`

or


or

`arn:aws:storagegateway:region:account-id:tape/tapebarcode`

**AddUploadBuffer**

**Action(s):** `storagegateway:AddUploadBuffer`

**Resource:** `arn:aws:storagegateway:region:account-id:gateway/gateway-id`

**AddWorkingStorage**

**Action(s):** `storagegateway:AddWorkingStorage`

**Resource:** `arn:aws:storagegateway:region:account-id:gateway/gateway-id`

**CancelArchival**

**Action(s):** `storagegateway:CancelArchival`

**Resource:** `arn:aws:storagegateway:region:account-id:tape/tapebarcode`

**CancelRetrieval**

**Action(s):** `storagegateway:CancelRetrieval`

**Resource:** `arn:aws:storagegateway:region:account-id:tape/tapebarcode`

**CreateCachediSCSIVolume**

**Action(s):** `storagegateway:CreateCachediSCSIVolume`

**Resource:** `arn:aws:storagegateway:region:account-id:gateway/gateway-id`
CreateSnapshot

**Action(s):** storagegateway:CreateSnapshot

**Resource:** arn:aws:storagegateway:*:region:account-id:gateway/gateway-id/volume/volume-id

CreateSnapshotFromVolumeRecoveryPoint

**Action(s):** storagegateway:CreateSnapshotFromVolumeRecoveryPoint

**Resource:** arn:aws:storagegateway:*:region:account-id:gateway/gateway-id/volume/volume-id

CreateStorediSCSIVolume

**Action(s):** storagegateway:CreateStorediSCSIVolume

**Resource:** arn:aws:storagegateway:*:region:account-id:gateway/gateway-id

CreateTapes

**Action(s):** storagegateway:CreateTapes

**Resource:** arn:aws:storagegateway:*:region:account-id:gateway/gateway-id

DeleteBandwidthRateLimit

**Action(s):** storagegateway:DeleteBandwidthRateLimit

**Resource:** arn:aws:storagegateway:*:region:account-id:gateway/gateway-id

DeleteChapCredentials

**Action(s):** storagegateway:DeleteChapCredentials

**Resource:** arn:aws:storagegateway:*:region:account-id:gateway/gateway-id/target/iSCSItarget

DeleteGateway

**Action(s):** storagegateway:DeleteGateway

**Resource:** arn:aws:storagegateway:*:region:account-id:gateway/gateway-id

DeleteSnapshotSchedule

**Action(s):** storagegateway:DeleteSnapshotSchedule

**Resource:** arn:aws:storagegateway:*:region:account-id:gateway/gateway-id/volume/volume-id

DeleteTape

**Action(s):** storagegateway:DeleteTape

**Resource:** arn:aws:storagegateway:*:region:account-id:gateway/gateway-id

DeleteTapeArchive

**Action(s):** storagegateway:DeleteTapeArchive

**Resource:** *

DeleteVolume

**Action(s):** storagegateway:DeleteVolume
  volume/volume-id
DescribeBandwidthRateLimit

Action(s): storagegateway:DescribeBandwidthRateLimit

DescribeCache

Action(s): storagegateway:DescribeCache

DescribeCachediSCSIVolumes

Action(s): storagegateway:DescribeCachediSCSIVolumes

  volume/volume-id
DescribeChapCredentials

Action(s): storagegateway:DescribeChapCredentials

  target/iSCSItarget
DescribeGatewayInformation

Action(s): storagegateway:DescribeGatewayInformation

DescribeMaintenanceStartTime

Action(s): storagegateway:DescribeMaintenanceStartTime

DescribeSnapshotSchedule

Action(s): storagegateway:DescribeSnapshotSchedule

  volume/volume-id
DescribeStorediSCSIVolumes

Action(s): storagegateway:DescribeStorediSCSIVolumes

  volume/volume-id
DescribeTapeArchives

Action(s): storagegateway:DescribeTapeArchives

Resource: *
DescribeTapeRecoveryPoints

Action(s): storagegateway:DescribeTapeRecoveryPoints

DescribeTapes

Action(s): storagegateway:DescribeTapes

Action(s): storagegateway:DescribeUploadBuffer


Action(s): storagegateway:DescribeVTLDevices


Action(s): storagegateway:DescribeWorkingStorage


Action(s): storagegateway:DisableGateway


Action(s): storagegateway:ListGateways

Resource: *

Action(s): storagegateway:ListLocalDisks


Action(s): storagegateway:ListTagsForResource


or


or

arn:aws:storagegateway:region:account-id:tape/tapebarcode

Action(s): storagegateway:ListTapes


Action(s): storagegateway:ListVolumeInitiators


Action(s): storagegateway:ListVolumeRecoveryPoints
ListVolumes

Action(s): storagegateway:ListVolumes

RemoveTagsFromResource

Action(s): storagegateway:RemoveTagsFromResource

or
or
arn:aws:storagegateway:region:account-id:tape/tapebarcode
ResetCache

Action(s): storagegateway:ResetCache

RetrieveTapeArchive

Action(s): storagegateway:RetrieveTapeArchive

RetrieveTapeRecoveryPoint

Action(s): storagegateway:RetrieveTapeRecoveryPoint

ShutdownGateway

Action(s): storagegateway:ShutdownGateway

StartGateway

Action(s): storagegateway:StartGateway

UpdateBandwidthRateLimit

Action(s): storagegateway:UpdateBandwidthRateLimit

UpdateChapCredentials

Action(s): storagegateway:UpdateChapCredentials

UpdateGatewayInformation

Action(s): storagegateway:UpdateGatewayInformation

API Version 2013-06-30
218
**Resource:** arn:aws:storagegateway:region:account-id:gateway/gateway-id
**Action(s):** storagegateway:UpdateGatewaySoftwareNow

**Resource:** arn:aws:storagegateway:region:account-id:gateway/gateway-id
**Action(s):** storagegateway:UpdateMaintenanceStartTime

**Resource:** arn:aws:storagegateway:region:account-id:gateway/gateway-id
**Action(s):** storagegateway:UpdateSnapshotSchedule

**Action(s):** storagegateway:UpdateVTLDeviceType

**Resource:** arn:aws:storagegateway:region:account-id:gateway/gateway-id/device/vtldevice

Related Topics

- Access Control (p. 203)
- Customer Managed Policy Examples (p. 209)
## Troubleshooting Your Gateway

Following, you can find information about troubleshooting issues related to gateways, file shares, volumes, virtual tapes, and snapshots. The on-premises gateway troubleshooting information covers gateways deployed on both the VMware ESXi and Microsoft Hyper-V clients. The troubleshooting information for file shares apply to the file gateway type. The troubleshooting information for volumes applies to the volume gateway type. The troubleshooting information for tapes applies to the tape gateway type.

### Topics
- Troubleshooting On-Premises Gateway Issues (p. 220)
- Troubleshooting Your Microsoft Hyper-V Setup (p. 224)
- Troubleshooting Amazon EC2 Gateway Issues (p. 226)
- Troubleshooting File Share Issues (p. 230)
- Troubleshooting Volume Issues (p. 231)
- Troubleshooting Virtual Tape Issues (p. 235)
- Best Practices for Recovering Your Data (p. 238)

## Troubleshooting On-Premises Gateway Issues

The following table lists typical issues that you might encounter working with your on-premises gateways.

### Topics
- Enabling AWS Support To Help Troubleshoot Your Gateway Hosted On-Premises (p. 222)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Issue</th>
<th>Action to Take</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You cannot find the IP address of your gateway.</td>
<td>Use the hypervisor client to connect to your host to find the gateway IP address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For VMware ESXi, the VM's IP address can be found in the vSphere client on the Summary tab. For more information, see Activating Your Gateway (p. 45).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For Microsoft Hyper-V, the VM's IP address can be found by logging into the local console. For more information, see Activating Your Gateway (p. 45).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you are still having trouble finding the gateway IP address:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Check that the VM is turned on. Only when the VM is turned on does an IP address get assigned to your gateway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Wait for the VM to finish startup. If you just turned on your VM, then it might take several minutes for the gateway to finish its boot sequence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You're having network or firewall problems.</td>
<td>• Allow the appropriate ports for your gateway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If you use a firewall or router to filter or limit network traffic, you must configure your firewall and router to allow these service</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

API Version 2013-06-30
220
### Issue

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action to Take</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Endpoints for outbound communication to AWS. For more information about network and firewall requirements, see Network and Firewall Requirements (p. 12).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Your gateway's activation fails when you click the **Proceed to Activation** button in the AWS Storage Gateway Management Console.**

- Check that the gateway VM can be accessed by pinging the VM from your client.
- Check that your VM has network connectivity to the Internet. Otherwise, you’ll need to configure a SOCKS proxy. For more information on doing so, see Routing Your On-Premises Gateway Through a Proxy (p. 177).
- Check that the host has the correct time, that the host is configured to synchronize its time automatically to a Network Time Protocol (NTP) server, and that the gateway VM has the correct time. For information about synchronizing the time of hypervisor hosts and VMs, see Synchronizing Your Gateway VM Time (p. 185).
- After performing these steps, you can retry the gateway deployment using the AWS Storage Gateway console and the Setup and Activate Gateway wizard.
- Check that your VM has at least 7.5 GB of RAM. Gateway allocation fails if there is less than 7.5 GB of RAM. For more information, see Requirements (p. 10).

**You need to remove a disk allocated as upload buffer space. For example, you might want to reduce the amount of upload buffer space for a gateway, or you might need to replace a disk used as an upload buffer that has failed.**

For instructions about removing a disk allocated as upload buffer space, see Removing Upload Buffer Capacity (p. 154)

**You need to improve bandwidth between your gateway and AWS.**

You can improve the bandwidth from your gateway to AWS by setting up your Internet connection to AWS on a network adapter (NIC) separate from that connecting your applications and the gateway VM. Taking this approach is useful if you have a high-bandwidth connection to AWS and you want to avoid bandwidth contention, especially during a snapshot restore. For high-throughput workload needs, you can use AWS Direct Connect to establish a dedicated network connection between your on-premises gateway and AWS. To measure the bandwidth of the connection from your gateway to AWS, use the CloudBytesDownloaded and CloudBytesUploaded metrics of the gateway. For more on this subject, see Measuring Performance Between Your Gateway and AWS (p. 139). Improving your Internet connectivity helps to ensure that your upload buffer does not fill up.
### Enabling AWS Support To Help Troubleshoot Your Gateway

**Enabling AWS Support To Help Troubleshoot Your Gateway Hosted On-Premises**

AWS Storage Gateway provides a local console you can use to perform several maintenance tasks, including enabling AWS Support to access your gateway to assist you with troubleshooting gateway issues. By default, AWS Support access to your gateway is disabled. You enable this access through the host's local console. To give AWS Support access to your gateway, you first log in to the local console for the host, navigate to the storage gateway's console, and then connect to the support server.
To enable AWS Support access to your gateway

1. Log in to your host's local console.
   - VMware ESXi—for more information, see Accessing the Gateway Local Console with VMware ESXi (p. 165).
   - Microsoft Hyper-V—for more information, see Access the Gateway Local Console with Microsoft Hyper-V (p. 170).

The local console looks like the following.

2. At the prompt, type 5 to open the AWS Storage Gateway console.

3. Type h to open the AVAILABLE COMMANDS window.

4. In the AVAILABLE COMMANDS window, type open-support-channel to connect to customer support for AWS Storage Gateway. You must allow TCP port 22 to initiate a support channel to AWS. When you connect to customer support, Storage Gateway assigns you a support number. Make a note of your support number.

   Note
   The channel number is not a Transmission Control Protocol/User Datagram Protocol (TCP/UDP) port number. Instead, the gateway makes a Secure Shell (SSH) (TCP 22) connection to Storage Gateway servers and provides the support channel for the connection.

5. Once the support channel is established, provide your support service number to AWS Support so AWS Support can provide troubleshooting assistance.

6. When the support session is completed, type q to end it.

7. Type exit to log out of the AWS Storage Gateway console.

8. Follow the prompts to exit the local console.
## Troubleshooting Your Microsoft Hyper-V Setup

The following table lists typical issues that you might encounter when deploying AWS Storage Gateway on the Microsoft Hyper-V platform.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Issue</th>
<th>Action to Take</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You try to import a gateway and receive the error</td>
<td>This error can occur for the following reasons:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and receive the error message: &quot;Import failed.</td>
<td>• If you are not pointing to the root of the unzipped gateway source files. The last part of the location you specify in the Import Virtual Machine dialog box should be AWS-Storage-Gateway, as the following example shows:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unable to find virtual machine import file under location ...&quot;.</td>
<td>• If you have already deployed a gateway and you did not select the Copy the virtual machine option and check the Duplicate all files option in the Import Virtual Machine dialog box, then the VM was created in the location where you have the unzipped gateway files and you cannot import from this location again. To fix this problem, get a fresh copy of the unzipped gateway source files and copy to a new location. Use the new location as the source of the import. The following example shows the options that you must check if you plan on creating multiple gateways from one unzipped source files location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You try to import a gateway</td>
<td>If you have already deployed a gateway and you try to reuse the default folders that store the virtual hard disk files and virtual machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issue</td>
<td>Action to Take</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>message: &quot;Import failed. Import task failed to copy file.&quot;</td>
<td>configuration files, then this error will occur. To fix this problem, specify new locations in the <strong>Hyper-V Settings</strong> dialog box.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You try to import a gateway and receive an error message: &quot;Import</td>
<td>When you import the gateway make sure you select the <strong>Copy the virtual machine</strong> option and check the <strong>Duplicate all files</strong> option in the <strong>Import Virtual Machine</strong> dialog box to create a new unique ID for the VM. The following example shows the options in the <strong>Import Virtual Machine</strong> dialog box that you should use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>failed. Import failed because the virtual machine must have a new</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>identifier. Select a new identifier and try the import again.&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You try to start a gateway VM and receive an error message: &quot;The</td>
<td>This error is likely caused by a CPU discrepancy between the required CPUs for the gateway and the available CPUs on the host. Ensure that the VM CPU count is supported by the underlying hypervisor. For more information about the requirements for AWS Storage Gateway, see Requirements (p. 10).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>child partition processor setting is incompatible with parent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partition.&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Troubleshooting Amazon EC2 Gateway Issues

In the following sections, you can find typical issues that you might encounter working with your gateway deployed on Amazon EC2. For more information about the difference between an on-premises gateway and a gateway deployed in Amazon EC2, see Deploying a Volume or Tape Gateway on an Amazon EC2 Host (p. 248).

#### Topics

- Your Gateway Activation Hasn't Occurred After a Few Moments (p. 227)
- You Can't Find Your EC2 Gateway Instance in the Instance List (p. 227)
- You Created an Amazon EBS Volume But Can't Attach it to Your EC2 Gateway Instance (p. 227)
- You Can't Attach an Initiator to a Volume Target of Your EC2 Gateway (p. 228)
- You Get a Message That You Have No Disks Available When You Try to Add Storage Volumes (p. 228)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Issue</th>
<th>Action to Take</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You try to start a gateway VM and receive an error message &quot;Failed to create partition: Insufficient resources exist to complete the requested service.&quot;</td>
<td>This error is likely caused by a RAM discrepancy between the required RAM for the gateway and the available RAM on the host. For more information about the requirements for AWS Storage Gateway, see Requirements (p. 10).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Your snapshots and gateway software updates are occurring at slightly different times than expected.</td>
<td>The gateway VM's clock might be offset from the actual time, known as clock drift. Check and correct the VM's time using local gateway console's time synchronization option. For more information, see Synchronizing Your Gateway VM Time (p. 185).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You need to put the unzipped Microsoft Hyper-V AWS Storage gateway files on the host file system.</td>
<td>Access the host as you do a typical Microsoft Windows server. For example, if the hypervisor host is named <code>hyperv-server</code>, then you can use the following UNC path <code>\hyperv-server\c\</code>, which assumes that the name <code>hyperv-server</code> can be resolved or is defined in your local hosts file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You are prompted for credentials when connecting to hypervisor.</td>
<td>Add your user credentials as a local administrator for the hypervisor host by using the Sconfig.cmd tool.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
• You Want to Remove a Disk Allocated as Upload Buffer Space to Reduce Upload Buffer Space (p. 228)
• Throughput to or from Your EC2 Gateway Drops to Zero (p. 228)
• You Want Your File Gateway to Use a C5 or M5 EC2 Instance Type Instead of C4 or M4 (p. 228)
• You Want AWS Support to Help Troubleshoot Your EC2 Gateway (p. 229)

Your Gateway Activation Hasn't Occurred After a Few Moments

Check the following in the Amazon EC2 console:

• Port 80 is enabled in the security group you associated with the instance. For more information about adding a security group rule, see Adding a Security Group Rule in the Amazon EC2 User Guide for Linux Instances.
• The gateway instance is marked as running. In the Amazon EC2 console, the State value for the instance should be RUNNING.
• Make sure that your Amazon EC2 instance type meets the minimum requirements, as described in Storage Requirements (p. 11).

After correcting the problem, try activating the gateway again by going to the AWS Storage Gateway console, choosing Deploy a new Gateway on Amazon EC2, and re-entering the IP address of the instance.

You Can't Find Your EC2 Gateway Instance in the Instance List

If you didn't give your instance a resource tag and you have many instances running, it can be hard to tell which instance you launched. In this case, you can take the following actions to find the gateway instance:

• Check the name of the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) on the Description tab of the instance. An instance based on the AWS Storage Gateway AMI should start with the text aws-storage-gateway-ami.
• If you have several instances based on the AWS Storage Gateway AMI, check the instance launch time to find the correct instance.

You Created an Amazon EBS Volume But Can't Attach it to Your EC2 Gateway Instance

Check that the Amazon EBS volume in question is in the same Availability Zone as the gateway instance. If there is a discrepancy in Availability Zones, create a new Amazon EBS volume in the same Availability Zone as your instance.
You Can't Attach an Initiator to a Volume Target of Your EC2 Gateway

Check that the security group that you launched the instance with includes a rule that allows the port that you are using for iSCSI access. The port is usually set as 3260. For more information on connecting to volumes, see Connecting to Your Volumes to a Windows Client (p. 262).

You Get a Message That You Have No Disks Available When You Try to Add Storage Volumes

For a newly activated gateway, no volume storage is defined. Before you can define volume storage, you must allocate local disks to the gateway to use as an upload buffer and cache storage. For a gateway deployed to Amazon EC2, the local disks are Amazon EBS volumes attached to the instance. This error message likely occurs because no Amazon EBS volumes are defined for the instance.

Check block devices defined for the instance that is running the gateway. If there are only two block devices (the default devices that come with the AMI), then you should add storage. For more information on doing so, see Deploying a Volume or Tape Gateway on an Amazon EC2 Host (p. 248). After attaching two or more Amazon EBS volumes, try creating volume storage on the gateway.

You Want to Remove a Disk Allocated as Upload Buffer Space to Reduce Upload Buffer Space

Follow the steps in Adding and Removing Upload Buffer (p. 153).

Throughput to or from Your EC2 Gateway Drops to Zero

Verify that the gateway instance is running. If the instance is starting due to a reboot, for example, wait for the instance to restart.

Also, verify that the gateway IP has not changed. If the instance was stopped and then restarted, the IP address of the instance might have changed. In this case, you need to activate a new gateway.

You can view the throughput to and from your gateway from the Amazon CloudWatch console. For more information about measuring throughput to and from your gateway to AWS, see Measuring Performance Between Your Gateway and AWS (p. 139).

You Want Your File Gateway to Use a C5 or M5 EC2 Instance Type Instead of C4 or M4

Do the following:

1. Create a new file gateway using the c5 or m5 Amazon EC2 AMI.
2. Create a new file share on the new gateway and configure it to point to your Amazon S3 bucket.
3. Mount your new file share to your client.
4. Make sure that your file gateway that is using a c4 or m4 EC2 AMI has finished uploading all data to S3 (that is, the CachePercentDirty value is 0).
5. Shut down the file gateway that is using a c4 or m4 AMI and delete the gateway if you no longer need it.
For information about instance type requirements, see Hardware and Storage Requirements (p. 10).

**Warning**
You can't use the elastic IP address of the Amazon EC2 instance used as the target address.

**You Want AWS Support to Help Troubleshoot Your EC2 Gateway**

AWS Storage Gateway provides a local console you can use to perform several maintenance tasks, including enabling AWS Support to access your gateway to assist you with troubleshooting gateway issues. By default, AWS Support access to your gateway is disabled. You enable this access through the Amazon EC2 local console. You log in to the Amazon EC2 local console through a Secure Shell (SSH). To successfully log in through SSH, your instance's security group must have a rule that opens TCP port 22.

**Note**
If you add a new rule to an existing security group, the new rule applies to all instances that use that security group. For more information about security groups and how to add a security group rule, see Amazon EC2 Security Groups in the Amazon EC2 User Guide.

To let AWS Support connect to your gateway, you first log in to the local console for the Amazon EC2 instance, navigate to the storage gateway's console, and then provide the access.

**To enable AWS support access to a gateway deployed on an Amazon EC2 instance**

1. Log in to the local console for your Amazon EC2 instance. For instructions, go to Connect to Your Instance in the Amazon EC2 User Guide.

   You can use the following command to log in to the EC2 instance's local console.

   ```bash
   ssh -i PRIVATE-KEY sguser@INSTANCE-PUBLIC-DNS-NAME
   ```

   **Note**
The `PRIVATE-KEY` is the `.pem` file containing the private certificate of the EC2 key pair that you used to launch the Amazon EC2 instance. For more information, see Retrieving the Public Key for Your Key Pair in the Amazon EC2 User Guide.

   The `INSTANCE-PUBLIC-DNS-NAME` is the public Domain Name System (DNS) name of your Amazon EC2 instance that your gateway is running on. You obtain this public DNS name by selecting the Amazon EC2 instance in the EC2 console and clicking the Description tab.

   The local console looks like the following.

   ![Local Console](image)

2. At the prompt, type 3 to open the AWS Storage Gateway console.

   ![Gateway Console](image)
3. Type `h` to open the AVAILABLE COMMANDS window.

4. In the AVAILABLE COMMANDS window, type `open-support-channel` to connect to customer support for AWS Storage Gateway. You must allow TCP port 22 to initiate a support channel to AWS. When you connect to customer support, Storage Gateway assigns you a support number. Make a note of your support number.

   ![AVAILABLE COMMANDS window](image)

   **Note**
   The channel number is not a Transmission Control Protocol/User Datagram Protocol (TCP/UDP) port number. Instead, the gateway makes a Secure Shell (SSH) (TCP 22) connection to Storage Gateway servers and provides the support channel for the connection.

5. Once the support channel is established, provide your support service number to AWS Support so AWS Support can provide troubleshooting assistance.

6. When the support session is completed, type `q` to end it.

7. Type `exit` to exit the AWS Storage Gateway console.

8. Follow the console menus to log out of the AWS Storage Gateway instance.

### Troubleshooting File Share Issues

You can find information following about actions to take if you experience unexpected issues with your file share.

**Topics**
- Your File Share Is Stuck in CREATING Status (p. 230)
- You Can't Create a File Share (p. 231)
- Multiple File Shares Can't Write to the Mapped Amazon S3 Bucket (p. 231)
- You Can't Upload Files into Your S3 Bucket (p. 231)

### Your File Share Is Stuck in CREATING Status

When your file share is being created, the status is CREATING. The status transitions to AVAILABLE status after the file share is created. If your file share gets stuck in the CREATING status, do the following:

1. Open the Amazon S3 console at https://console.aws.amazon.com/s3/.
2. Make sure the Amazon S3 bucket that you mapped your file share to exists. If the bucket doesn't exist, create it. After you create the bucket, the file share status transitions to AVAILABLE. For information about how to create an Amazon S3 bucket, see Create a Bucket in the Amazon Simple Storage Service Console User Guide.
3. Make sure your bucket name complies with the rules for bucket naming in Amazon S3. For more information, see Rules for Bucket Naming in the Amazon Simple Storage Service Developer Guide.
4. Make sure the IAM role you used to access the Amazon S3 bucket has the correct permissions and verify that the Amazon S3 bucket is listed as a resource in the IAM policy. For more information, see Granting Access to an Amazon S3 Bucket (p. 91).
You Can't Create a File Share

1. If you can't create a file share because your file share is stuck in CREATING status, verify that the Amazon S3 bucket you mapped your file share to exists. For information on how to do so, see Your File Share Is Stuck in CREATING Status (p. 230), preceding.

2. If the Amazon S3 bucket exists, then verify that AWS Security Token Service is enabled in the region where you are creating the file share. If a security token is not enabled, you should enable it. For information about how to enable a token using AWS Security Token Service, see Activating and Deactivating AWS STS in an AWS Region in the IAM User Guide.

Multiple File Shares Can't Write to the Mapped Amazon S3 Bucket

We don't recommend configuring your Amazon S3 bucket to allow multiple file shares to write to one S3 bucket. This approach can cause unpredictable results.

Instead, we recommend that you allow only one file share to write to each S3 bucket. You create a bucket policy to allow only the role associated with your file share to write to the bucket. For more information, see File Share Best Practices (p. 98).

You Can't Upload Files into Your S3 Bucket

If you can't upload files into your Amazon S3 bucket, do the following:

1. Make sure you have granted the required access for the file gateway to upload files into your S3 bucket. For more information, see Granting Access to an Amazon S3 Bucket (p. 91).

2. Make sure the role that created the bucket has permission to write to the S3 bucket. For more information, see File Share Best Practices (p. 98).

Troubleshooting Volume Issues

You can find information about the most typical issues you might encounter when working with volumes, and actions that we suggest that you take to fix them.

Topics

- The Console Says That Your Volume Is Not Configured (p. 232)
- The Console Says That Your Volume Is Irrecoverable (p. 232)
- Your Cached Gateway is Unreachable And You Want to Recover Your Data (p. 232)
- The Console Says That Your Volume Has PASS THROUGH Status (p. 232)
- You Want to Verify Volume Integrity and Fix Possible Errors (p. 233)
- Your Volume's iSCSI Target Doesn't Appear in Windows Disk Management Console (p. 233)
- You Want to Change Your Volume's iSCSI Target Name (p. 233)
- Your Scheduled Volume Snapshot Did Not Occur (p. 233)
- You Need to Remove or Replace a Disk That Has Failed (p. 234)
- Throughput from Your Application to a Volume Has Dropped to Zero (p. 234)
- A Cache Disk in Your Gateway Encounters a Failure (p. 234)
- A Volume Snapshot Has PENDING Status Longer Than Expected (p. 235)
The Console Says That Your Volume Is Not Configured

If the AWS Storage Gateway console indicates that your volume has a status of UPLOAD BUFFER NOT CONFIGURED, add upload buffer capacity to your gateway. You cannot use a gateway to store your application data if the upload buffer for the gateway is not configured. For more information, see To configure upload buffer or cache storage (p. 153).

The Console Says That Your Volume Is Irrecoverable

For stored volumes, if the AWS Storage Gateway console indicates that your volume has a status of IRRECOVERABLE, you can no longer use this volume. You can try to delete the volume in the AWS Storage Gateway console. If there is data on the volume, then you can recover the data when you create a new volume based on the local disk of the VM that was initially used to create the volume. When you create the new volume, select Preserve existing data. Make sure to delete pending snapshots of the volume before deleting the volume. For more information, see Deleting a Snapshot (p. 105). If deleting the volume in the AWS Storage Gateway console does not work, then the disk allocated for the volume might have been improperly removed from the VM and cannot be removed from the appliance.

For cached volumes, if the AWS Storage Gateway console indicates that your volume has a status of IRRECOVERABLE, you can no longer use this volume. If there is data on the volume, you can create a snapshot of the volume and then recover your data from the snapshot or you can clone the volume from the last recovery point. You can delete the volume after you have recovered your data. For more information, see Your Cached Gateway is Unreachable And You Want to Recover Your Data (p. 232).

For stored volumes, you can create a new volume from the disk that was used to create the irrecoverable volume. For more information, see Creating a Volume (p. 34). For information about volume status, see Understanding Volume Status (p. 114).

Your Cached Gateway is Unreachable And You Want to Recover Your Data

When your gateway becomes unreachable (such as when you shut it down), you have the option of either creating a snapshot from a volume recovery point and using that snapshot, or cloning a new volume from the last recovery point for an existing volume. Cloning from a volume recovery point is faster and more cost effective than creating a snapshot. For more information about cloning a volume, see Cloning a Volume (p. 100).

AWS Storage Gateway provides recovery points for each volume in a cached volume gateway architecture. A volume recovery point is a point in time at which all data of the volume is consistent and from which you can create a snapshot or clone a volume.

The Console Says That Your Volume Has PASS THROUGH Status

In some cases, the AWS Storage Gateway console might indicate that your volume has a status of PASSTHROUGH. A volume can have PASSTHROUGH status for several reasons. Some reasons require action, and some do not.

An example of when you should take action if your volume has the PASS THROUGH status is when your gateway has run out of upload buffer space. To verify if your upload buffer was exceeded in the
You Want to Verify Volume Integrity and Fix Possible Errors

If you want to verify volume integrity and fix possible errors, and your gateway uses Microsoft Windows initiators to connect to its volumes, you can use the Windows CHKDSK utility to verify the integrity of your volumes and fix any errors on the volumes. Windows can automatically run the CHKDSK tool when volume corruption is detected, or you can run it yourself.

Your Volume's iSCSI Target Doesn’t Appear in Windows Disk Management Console

If your volume's iSCSI target does not show up in the Disk Management Console in Windows, check that you have configured the upload buffer for the gateway. For more information, see To configure upload buffer or cache storage (p. 153).

You Want to Change Your Volume's iSCSI Target Name

If you want to change the iSCSI target name of your volume, you must delete the volume and add it again with a new target name. If you do so, you can preserve the data on the volume.

Your Scheduled Volume Snapshot Did Not Occur

If your scheduled snapshot of a volume did not occur, check whether your volume has the PASSTHROUGH status, or if the gateway's upload buffer was filled just prior to the scheduled snapshot time. You can check the UploadBufferPercentUsed metric for the gateway in the Amazon CloudWatch console and create an alarm for this metric. For more information, see Monitoring the Upload Buffer (p. 129) and To set an upper threshold alarm for a gateway's upload buffer (p. 130).
You Need to Remove or Replace a Disk That Has Failed

If you need to replace a volume disk that has failed or replace a volume because it isn't needed, you should remove the volume first using the AWS Storage Gateway console. For more information, see To remove a volume (p. 104). You then use the hypervisor client to remove the backing storage:

- For VMware ESXi, remove the backing storage as described in Deleting a Volume (p. 103).
- For Microsoft Hyper-V, remove the backing storage.

Throughput from Your Application to a Volume Has Dropped to Zero

If throughput from your application to a volume has dropped to zero, try the following:

- If you are using the VMware vSphere client, check that your volume's Host IP address matches one of the addresses that appears in the vSphere client on the Summary tab. You can find the Host IP address for a storage volume in the AWS Storage Gateway console in the Details tab for the volume. A discrepancy in the IP address can occur, for example, when you assign a new static IP address to your gateway. If there is a discrepancy, restart your gateway from the AWS Storage Gateway console as shown in Shutting Down Your Gateway VM (p. 150). After the restart, the Host IP address in the iSCSI Target Info tab for a storage volume should match an IP address shown in the vSphere client on the Summary tab for the gateway.
- If there is no IP address in the Host IP box for the volume and the gateway is online. For example, this could occur if you create a volume associated with an IP address of a network adapter of a gateway that has two or more network adapters. When you remove or disable the network adapter that the volume is associated with, the IP address might not appear in the Host IP box. To address this issue, delete the volume and then re-create it preserving its existing data.
- Check that the iSCSI initiator your application uses is correctly mapped to the iSCSI target for the storage volume. For more information about connecting to storage volumes, see Connecting to Your Volumes to a Windows Client (p. 262).

You can view the throughput for volumes and create alarms from the Amazon CloudWatch console. For more information about measuring throughput from your application to a volume, see Measuring Performance Between Your Application and Gateway (p. 137).

A Cache Disk in Your Gateway Encounters a Failure

If one or more cache disks in your gateway encounters a failure, the gateway prevents read and write operations to your virtual tapes and volumes. To resume normal functionality, reconfigure your gateway as described following:

- If the cache disk is inaccessible or unusable, delete the disk from your gateway configuration.
- If the cache disk is still accessible and usable, reconnect it to your gateway.

Note

If you delete a cache disk, tapes or volumes that have clean data (that is, for which data in the cache disk and Amazon S3 are synchronized) will continue to be available when the gateway resumes normal functionality. For example, if your gateway has three cache disks and you delete two, tapes or volumes that are clean will have AVAILABLE status. Other tapes and volumes will have IRRECOVERABLE status.
If you use ephemeral disks as cache disks for your gateway or mount your cache disks on an ephemeral drive, your cache disks will be lost when you shut down the gateway. Shutting down the gateway when your cache disk and Amazon S3 are not synchronized can result in data loss. As a result, we don’t recommend using ephemeral drives or disks.

A Volume Snapshot Has PENDING Status Longer Than Expected

If a volume snapshot remains in PENDING state longer than expected, the gateway VM might have crashed unexpectedly or the status of a volume might have changed to PASS THROUGH or IRRECOVERABLE. If any of these are the case, the snapshot remains in PENDING status and the snapshot does not successfully complete. In these cases, we recommend that you delete the snapshot. For more information, see Deleting a Snapshot (p. 105).

When the volume returns to AVAILABLE status, create a new snapshot of the volume. For information about volume status, see Understanding Volume Status (p. 114).

Troubleshooting Virtual Tape Issues

You can find information following about actions to take if you experience unexpected issues with your virtual tapes.

Topics
- Recovering a Virtual Tape From An Unrecoverable Gateway (p. 235)
- Troubleshooting Irrecoverable Tapes (p. 237)

Recovering a Virtual Tape From An Unrecoverable Gateway

Although it is rare, your tape gateway might encounter an unrecoverable failure. Such a failure can occur in your hypervisor host, the gateway itself, or the cache disks. If a failure occurs, you can recover your tapes by following the troubleshooting instructions in this section.

Topics
- You Need to Recover a Virtual Tape from a Malfunctioning Tape Gateway (p. 235)
- You Need to Recover a Virtual Tape from a Malfunctioning Cache Disk (p. 236)

You Need to Recover a Virtual Tape from a Malfunctioning Tape Gateway

If your tape gateway or the hypervisor host encounters an unrecoverable failure, you can recover any data that has already been uploaded to AWS to another tape gateway.

Note that the data written to a tape might not be completely uploaded until that tape has been successfully archived into VTS. The data on tapes recovered to another gateway in this manner may be incomplete or empty. We recommend performing an inventory on all recovered tapes to ensure they contain the expected content.
To recover a tape to another tape gateway

1. Identify an existing functioning tape gateway to serve as your recovery target gateway. If you don’t have a tape gateway to recover your tapes to, create a new tape gateway. For information about how to create a gateway, see Choosing a Gateway Type (p. 42).
3. In the navigation pane, choose Gateways, and then choose the tape gateway you want to recover tapes from.
4. Choose the Details tab. A tape recovery message is displayed in the tab.
5. Choose Create recovery tapes to disable the gateway.
6. In the dialog box that appears, choose Disable gateway.

   This process permanently halts normal function of your tape gateway and exposes any available recovery points. For instructions, see Disabling Your Tape Gateway (p. 122).
7. From the tapes that the disabled gateway displays, choose the virtual tape and the recovery point you want to recover. A virtual tape can have multiple recovery points.
8. To begin recovering any tapes you need to the target tape gateway, choose Create recovery tape.
9. In the Create recovery tape dialog box, verify the barcode of the virtual tape you want to recover.
10. For Gateway, choose the tape gateway you want to recover the virtual tape to.
11. Choose Create recovery tape.
12. Delete the failed tape gateway so you don’t get charged. For instructions, see Deleting Your Gateway by Using the AWS Storage Gateway Console and Removing Associated Resources (p. 197).

Storage Gateway moves the tape from the failed tape gateway to the tape gateway you specified. The tape gateway marks the tape status as RECOVERED.

You Need to Recover a Virtual Tape from a Malfunctioning Cache Disk

If your cache disk encounters an error, the gateway prevents read and write operations on virtual tapes in the gateway. For example, an error can occur when a disk is corrupted or removed from the gateway. The AWS Storage Gateway console displays a message about the error.

In the error message, Storage Gateway prompts you to take one of two actions that can recover your tapes:

- **Shut Down and Re-Add Disks** – Take this approach if the disk has intact data and has been removed. For example, if the error occurred because a disk was removed from your host by accident but the disk and the data is intact, you can re-add the disk. To do this, see the procedure later in this topic.
- **Reset Cache Disk** – Take this approach if the cache disk is corrupted or not accessible. If the disk error causes the cache disk to be inaccessible, unusable, or corrupted, you can reset the disk. If you reset the cache disk, tapes that have clean data (that is, tapes for which data in the cache disk and Amazon S3 are synchronized) will continue to be available for you to use. However, tapes that have data that is not synchronized with Amazon S3 are automatically recovered. The status of these tapes is set to RECOVERED, but the tapes will be read-only. For information about how to remove a disk from your host, see Adding and Removing Upload Buffer (p. 153).

**Important**

If the cache disk you are resetting contains data that has not been uploaded to Amazon S3 yet, that data can be lost. After you reset cache disks, no configured cache disks will be left in the gateway, so you must configure at least one new cache disk for your gateway to function properly.
To reset the cache disk, see the procedure later in this topic.

**To shut down and re-add a disk**

1. Shut down the gateway. For information about how to shut down a gateway, see *Shutting Down Your Gateway VM* (p. 150).
2. Add the disk back to your host, and make sure the disk node number of the disk has not changed. For information about how to add a disk, see *Adding and Removing Upload Buffer* (p. 153).
3. Restart the gateway. For information about how to restart a gateway, see *Shutting Down Your Gateway VM* (p. 150).

After the gateway restarts, you can verify the status of the cache disks. The status of a disk can be one of the following:

- **present** – The disk is available to use.
- **missing** – The disk is no longer connected to the gateway.
- **mismatch** – The disk node is occupied by a disk that has incorrect metadata, or the disk content is corrupted.

**To reset and reconfigure a cache disk**

1. In the *A disk error has occurred* error message illustrated preceding, choose *Reset Cache Disk*.
2. On the *Configure Your Activated Gateway* page, configure the disk for cache storage. For information about how to do so, see *Configuring Local Disks* (p. 47).
3. After you have configured cache storage, shut down and restart the gateway as described in the previous procedure.

The gateway should recover after the restart. You can then verify the status of the cache disk.

**To verify the status of a cache disk**

2. In the navigation pane, choose *Gateways*, and then choose your gateway.
3. On the *Actions* menu, choose *Configure Local Storage* to display the *Configure Local Storage* dialog box. This dialog box shows all local disks in the gateway.

The cache disk node status is displayed next to the disk.

**Note**

If you don’t complete the recovery process, the gateway displays a banner that prompts you to configure local storage.

**Troubleshooting Irrecoverable Tapes**

If your virtual tape fails unexpectedly, AWS Storage Gateway sets the status of the failed virtual tape to IRRECOVERABLE. The action you take depends on the circumstances. You can find information following on some issues you might find, and how to troubleshoot them.
You Need to Recover Data From an IRRECOVERABLE Tape

If you have a virtual tape with the status IRRECOVERABLE, and you need to work with it, try one of the following:

- Activate a new tape gateway if you don't have one activated. For more information, see Choosing a Gateway Type (p. 42).
- Disable the tape gateway that contains the irrecoverable tape, and recover the tape from a recovery point to the new tape gateway. For more information, see You Need to Recover a Virtual Tape from a Malfunctioning Tape Gateway (p. 235).

Note
You have to reconfigure your iSCSI initiator and backup application to use the new tape gateway. For more information, see Connecting Your VTL Devices (p. 49).

You Don't Need an IRRECOVERABLE Tape That Isn't Archived

If you have a virtual tape with the status IRRECOVERABLE, you don't need it, and the tape has never been archived, you should delete the tape. For more information, see Deleting Tapes (p. 122).

A Cache Disk in Your Gateway Encounters a Failure

If one or more cache disks in your gateway encounters a failure, the gateway prevents read and write operations to your virtual tapes and volumes. To resume normal functionality, reconfigure your gateway as described following:

- If the cache disk is inaccessible or unusable, delete the disk from your gateway configuration.
- If the cache disk is still accessible and useable, reconnect it to your gateway.

Note
If you delete a cache disk, tapes or volumes that have clean data (that is, for which data in the cache disk and Amazon S3 are synchronized) will continue to be available when the gateway resumes normal functionality. For example, if your gateway has three cache disks and you delete two, tapes or volumes that are clean will have AVAILABLE status. Other tapes and volumes will have IRRECOVERABLE status.
If you use ephemeral disks as cache disks for your gateway or mount your cache disks on an ephemeral drive, your cache disks will be lost when you shut down the gateway. Shutting down the gateway when your cache disk and Amazon S3 are not synchronized can result in data loss. As a result, we don't recommend using ephemeral drives or disks.

Best Practices for Recovering Your Data

Although it is rare, your gateway might encounter an unrecoverable failure. Such a failure can occur in your virtual machine (VM), the gateway itself, the local storage, or elsewhere. If a failure occurs, we recommend that you follow the instructions in the appropriate section following to recover your data.

Important
AWS Storage Gateway doesn't support recovering a gateway VM from a snapshot that is created by your hypervisor or from your Amazon EC2 ami. If your gateway VM malfunctions, activate a new gateway and recover your data to that gateway using the instructions following.

Topics
- Recovering from an Unexpected Virtual Machine Shutdown (p. 239)
Recovering from an Unexpected Virtual Machine Shutdown

If your VM shuts down unexpectedly, for example during a power outage, your gateway becomes unreachable. When power and network connectivity are restored, your gateway becomes reachable and starts to function normally. Following are some steps you can take at that point to help recover your data:

- If an outage causes network connectivity issues, you can troubleshoot the issue. For information about how to test network connectivity, see Testing Your Gateway Connection to the Internet (p. 183).
- For cached volumes and tapes setups, when your gateway becomes reachable, your volumes or tapes go into BOOTSTRAPPING status. This functionality ensures that your locally stored data continues to be synchronized with AWS. For more information on this status, see Understanding Volume Status (p. 114).
- If your gateway malfunctions and issues occur with your volumes or tapes as a result of an unexpected shutdown, you can recover your data. For information about how to recover your data, see the sections following that apply to your scenario.

Recovering Your Data from a Malfunctioning Gateway or VM

If your gateway or virtual machine malfunctions, you can recover data that has been uploaded to AWS and stored on a volume in Amazon S3. For cached volumes gateways, you recover data from a recovery snapshot. For stored volumes gateways, you can recover data from your most recent Amazon EBS snapshot of the volume. For tape gateways, you recover one or more tapes from a recovery point to a new tape gateway.

If your cached volumes gateway becomes unreachable, you can use the following steps to recover your data from a recovery snapshot:

1. In the AWS Management Console, choose the malfunctioning gateway, choose the volume you want to recover, and then create a recovery snapshot from it.
2. Deploy and activate a new volume gateway. Or, if you have an existing functioning volume gateway, you can use that gateway to recover your volume data.
3. Find the snapshot you created and restore it to a new volume on the functioning gateway.
4. Mount the new volume as an iSCSI device on your on-premises application server.

For detailed information on how to recover cached volumes data from a recovery snapshot, see Your Cached Gateway is Unreachable And You Want to Recover Your Data (p. 232).

If your tape gateway or the hypervisor host encounters an unrecoverable failure, you can use the following steps to recover the tapes from the malfunctioning tape gateway to another tape gateway:
1. Identify a tape gateway you want to use as the recovery target or create you can create a new one.
2. Disable the malfunctioning gateway.
3. Create recovery tapes for each tape you want to recover and specify the target tape gateway.
4. Delete the malfunctioning tape gateway.

For detailed information on how to recover the tapes from a malfunctioning tape gateway to another tape gateway, see You Need to Recover a Virtual Tape from a Malfunctioning Tape Gateway (p. 235).

**Retrieving Your Data from an Irrecoverable Volume**

If the status of your volume is IRRECOVERABLE, you can no longer use this volume.

For stored volumes, you can retrieve your data from the irrecoverable volume to a new volume by using the following steps:

1. Create a new volume from the disk that was used to create the irrecoverable volume.
2. Preserve existing data when you are creating the new volume.
3. Delete all pending snapshot jobs for the irrecoverable volume.
4. Delete the irrecoverable volume from the gateway.

For cached volumes, we recommend using the last recovery point to clone a new volume.

For detailed information about how to retrieve your data from an irrecoverable volume to a new volume, see The Console Says That Your Volume Is Irrecoverable (p. 232).

**Recovering Your Data from an Irrecoverable Tape**

If your tape encounters a failure and the status of the tape is IRRECOVERABLE, we recommend you use one of the following options to recover your data or resolve the failure depending on your situation:

- If you need the data on the irrecoverable tape, you can recover the tape to a new gateway.
- If you don't need the data on the tape, and the tape has never been archived, you can simply delete the tape from your tape gateway.

For detailed information about how to recover your data or resolve the failure if your tape is IRRECOVERABLE, see Troubleshooting Irrecoverable Tapes (p. 237).

**Recovering Your Data from a Malfunctioning Cache Disk**

If your cache disk encounters a failure, we recommend you use the following steps to recover your data depending on your situation:

- If the malfunction occurred because a cache disk was removed from your host, shut down the gateway, re-add the disk, and restart the gateway.
- If the cache disk is corrupted or not accessible, shut down the gateway, reset the cache disk, reconfigure the disk for cache storage, and restart the gateway.

For detailed information, see You Need to Recover a Virtual Tape from a Malfunctioning Cache Disk (p. 236).
Recovering Your Data from a Corrupted File System

If your file system gets corrupted, you can use the `fsck` command to check your file system for errors and repair it. If you can repair the file system, you can then recover your data from the volumes on the file system, as described following:

1. Shut down your virtual machine and use the AWS Storage Gateway Management Console to create a recovery snapshot. This snapshot represents the most current data stored in AWS.

   **Note**
   
   You use this snapshot as a fallback if your file system can't be repaired or the snapshot creation process can't be completed successfully.

   For information about how to create a recovery snapshot, see Your Cached Gateway is Unreachable And You Want to Recover Your Data (p. 232).

2. Use the `fsck` command to check your file system for errors and attempt a repair.

3. Restart your gateway VM.

4. When your hypervisor host starts to boot up, press and hold down shift key to enter the grub boot menu.

5. From the menu, press `e` to edit.

6. Choose the kernel line (the second line), and then press `e` to edit.

7. Append the following option to the kernel command line: `init=/bin/bash`. Use a space to separate the previous option from the option you just appended.

8. Press Return to save the changes.

9. Press b to boot your computer with the modified kernel option. Your computer will boot to a `bash#` prompt.

10. Type `/sbin/fsck` to run this command manually from the prompt, to check and repair your file system.

11. When the file system check and repair is complete, reboot the instance. The grub settings will revert to the original values, and the gateway will boot up normally.

12. Wait for snapshots that are in-progress from the original gateway to complete, and then validate the snapshot data.

You can continue to use the original volume as-is, or you can create a new gateway with a new volume based on either the recovery snapshot or the completed snapshot. Alternatively, you can create a new volume from any of your completed snapshots from this volume.

Recovering Your Data From An Inaccessible Data Center

If your gateway or data center becomes inaccessible for some reason, you can recover your data to another gateway in a different data center or recover to a gateway hosted on an Amazon EC2 instance. If you don't have access to another data center, we recommend creating the gateway on an Amazon EC2 instance. The steps you follow depends on the gateway type you are covering the data from.

**To recover data from a volume gateway in an inaccessible data center**

1. Create and activate a new volume gateway on an Amazon EC2 host. For more information, see Deploying a Volume or Tape Gateway on an Amazon EC2 Host (p. 248).

   **Note**
   
   Gateway stored volumes can't be hosted on Amazon EC2 instance.
2. Create a new volume and choose the EC2 gateway as the target gateway. For more information, see Creating a Volume (p. 34).

   Create the new volume based on an Amazon EBS snapshot or clone from last recovery point of the volume you want to recover.

   If your volume is based on a snapshot, provide the snapshot id.

   If you are cloning a volume from a recovery point, choose the source volume.

To recover data from a tape gateway in an inaccessible data center

1. Create and activate a new tape gateway on an Amazon EC2 host. For more information, see Deploying a Volume or Tape Gateway on an Amazon EC2 Host (p. 248).

2. Recover the tapes from the source gateway in the data center to the new gateway you created on Amazon EC2 For more information, see Recovering a Virtual Tape From An Unrecoverable Gateway (p. 235).

   Your tapes should be covered to the new Amazon EC2 gateway.

To recover data from a file gateway in an inaccessible data center

For file gateway, you map a new file share to the Amazon S3 that contains the data you want to recover.

1. Create and activate a new file gateway on an Amazon EC2 host. For more information, see Deploying File Gateway on an Amazon EC2 Host (p. 249).

2. Create a new file share on the EC2 gateway you created. For more information, see Creating a File Share (p. 24).

3. Mount your file share on your client and map the it to the Amazon S3 bucket that contains the data you want to recover. For more information, see Using Your File Share (p. 26).
Additional AWS Storage Gateway Resources

In this section, you can find information about AWS and third-party software, tools, and resources that can help you set up or manage your gateway, and also about AWS Storage Gateway limits.

Topics

- Host Setup (p. 243)
- Volume Gateway (p. 251)
- Tape Gateway (p. 255)
- Getting an Activation Key for Your Gateway (p. 260)
- Connecting iSCSI Initiators (p. 261)
- Using AWS Direct Connect with AWS Storage Gateway (p. 284)
- Port Requirements (p. 284)
- Connecting to Your Gateway (p. 288)
- Understanding AWS Storage Gateway Resources and Resource IDs (p. 289)
- Tagging Storage Gateway Resources (p. 290)
- Working with Open-Source Components for AWS Storage Gateway (p. 292)
- AWS Storage Gateway Limits (p. 292)

Host Setup

Topics

- Configuring VMware for Storage Gateway (p. 243)
- Deploying a Volume or Tape Gateway on an Amazon EC2 Host (p. 248)
- Deploying File Gateway on an Amazon EC2 Host (p. 249)

Configuring VMware for Storage Gateway

When configuring VMware for AWS Storage Gateway, make sure to synchronize your VM time with your host time, configure VM to use paravirtualized disk controllers when provisioning storage and provide protection from failures in the infrastructure layer supporting a gateway VM.

Topics

- Synchronizing VM Time with Host Time (p. 243)
- Configuring the AWS Storage Gateway VM to Use Paravirtualized Disk Controllers (p. 246)
- Using AWS Storage Gateway with VMware High Availability (p. 247)

Synchronizing VM Time with Host Time

To successfully activate your gateway, you must ensure that your VM time is synchronized to the host time, and that the host time is correctly set. In this section, you first synchronize the time on the VM to the host time. Then you check the host time and, if needed, set the host time and configure the host to synchronize its time automatically to a Network Time Protocol (NTP) server.
Important
Synchronizing the VM time with the host time is required for successful gateway activation.

To synchronize VM time with host time

1. Configure your VM time.
   a. In the vSphere client, open the context (right-click) menu for your gateway VM, and choose Edit Settings.
      The Virtual Machine Properties dialog box opens.
   "image"
   b. Choose the Options tab, and choose VMware Tools in the options list.
   c. Check the Synchronize guest time with host option, and then choose OK.
      The VM synchronizes its time with the host.

2. Configure the host time.
   It is important to make sure that your host clock is set to the correct time. If you have not configured your host clock, perform the following steps to set and synchronize it with an NTP server.
   a. In the VMware vSphere client, select the vSphere host node in the left pane, and then choose Configuration tab.
   b. Select Time Configuration in the Software panel, and then choose the Properties link.
The **Time Configuration** dialog box appears.

![Time Configuration dialog box](image1)

c. In the **Date and Time** panel, set the date and time.

![Time Configuration dialog box](image2)

d. Configure the host to synchronize its time automatically to an NTP server.

i. Choose **Options** in the **Time Configuration** dialog box, and then in the **NTP Daemon (ntpd) Options** dialog box, choose **NTP Settings** in the left pane.

![NTP Daemon (ntpd) Options](image3)

ii. Choose **Add** to add a new NTP server.

iii. In the **Add NTP Server** dialog box, type the IP address or the fully qualified domain name of an NTP server, and then choose **OK**.

You can use `pool.ntp.org` as shown in the following example.
iv. In the NTP Daemon (ntpd) Options dialog box, choose General in the left pane.

v. In the Service Commands pane, choose Start to start the service.

Note that if you change this NTP server reference or add another later, you will need to restart the service to use the new server.

e. Choose OK to close the NTP Daemon (ntpd) Options dialog box.

f. Choose OK to close the Time Configuration dialog box.

Configuring the AWS Storage Gateway VM to Use Paravirtualized Disk Controllers

In this task, you set the iSCSI controller so that the VM uses paravirtualization. Paravirtualization is a mode where the gateway VM works with the host operating system so the console can identify the virtual disks that you add to your VM.

Note
You must complete this step to avoid issues in identifying these disks when you configure them in the gateway console.

To configure your VM to use paravirtualized controllers

1. In the VMware vSphere client, open the context (right-click) menu for your gateway VM, and then choose Edit Settings.

2. In the Virtual Machine Properties dialog box, choose the Hardware tab, select the SCSI controller 0, and then choose Change Type.
3. In the **Change SCSI Controller Type** dialog box, select the **VMware Paravirtual** SCSI controller type, and then choose **OK**.

Using AWS Storage Gateway with VMware High Availability

VMware High Availability (HA) is a component of vSphere that can provide protection from failures in the infrastructure layer supporting a gateway VM. VMware HA does this by using multiple hosts configured as a cluster so that if a host running a gateway VM fails, the gateway VM can be restarted automatically on another host within the cluster. For more information about VMware HA, see [VMware HA: Concepts and Best Practices](https://vmware.com) on the VMware website.

To use AWS Storage Gateway with VMware HA, we recommend doing the following things:

- Deploy the VMware ESX .ova downloadable package that contains the AWS Storage Gateway VM on only one host in a cluster.
- When deploying the .ova package, select a data store that is not local to one host. Instead, use a data store that is accessible to all hosts in the cluster. If you select a data store that is local to a host and the host fails, then the data source might not be accessible to other hosts in the cluster and failover to another host might not succeed.
- To prevent your initiator from disconnecting from storage volume targets during failover, follow the recommended iSCSI settings for your operating system. In a failover event, it can take from a few seconds to several minutes for a gateway VM to start in a new host in the failover cluster. The recommended iSCSI timeouts for both Windows and Linux clients are greater than the typical time it
takes for failover to occur. For more information on customizing Windows clients' timeout settings, see Customizing Your Windows iSCSI Settings (p. 272). For more information on customizing Linux clients' timeout settings, see Customizing Your Linux iSCSI Settings (p. 274).

- With clustering, if you deploy the .ova package to the cluster, select a host when you are prompted to do so. Alternately, you can deploy directly to a host in a cluster.

Deploying a Volume or Tape Gateway on an Amazon EC2 Host

You can deploy and activate a volume or tape gateway on an Amazon EC2 instance. Gateways hosted on Amazon EC2 instances can be used for disaster recovery and data mirroring. The EC2 Amazon Machine Image (AMI) is available in the AWS Marketplace For volume gateway and tape gateways, we recommend using the 1-Click Launch.

Provisioning an Amazon EC2 Host by Using 1-Click Launch

To deploy a gateway on an Amazon EC2 instance

1. On the Select host platform page, choose Amazon EC2.
2. Choose Launch with AWS Marketplace. You are redirected to AWS Marketplace where you launch the EC2 AMI.
3. On AWS Marketplace, choose Continue.
4. Choose 1-Click Launch. Doing this launches the AMI with default settings.
5. If this is your first time using an AWS Storage Gateway AMI, choose Accept Terms to accept the terms of service.
6. Review the default settings. You can accept and use these default settings or modify them to meet your needs.

   The 1-Click Launch feature comes with an autogenerated security group that is named AWS Storage Gateway-1-0-AutogenByAWSMP. For information about security group settings, see Configuring Security Groups for Your Amazon EC2 Gateway Instance (p. 15).
7. After reviewing all your settings, choose Launch with 1-Click.
8. Choose Return to Product Page and locate your instance on the Amazon EC2 console.

   Important
   EC2 instances launched with the 1-Click Launch functionality come with one root Amazon EBS volume. You need to add additional EBS volumes to your instance as a separate step after the instance is launched. For information about how to add EBS volumes, see Attaching an Amazon EBS Volume to an Instance.
9. In the Amazon EC2 console, choose your Amazon EC2 instance, choose the Description tab at the bottom, and then note the IP address. You will use this IP address to connect to the gateway.
Deploying File Gateway on an Amazon EC2 Host

You can deploy and activate a file gateway on an Amazon EC2 instance. The file gateway Amazon Machine Image (AMI) is available as a community AMI.

To deploy a gateway on an Amazon EC2 instance

1. On the Choose host platform page, choose Amazon EC2.
2. Choose Launch instance to launch a storage gateway EC2 AMI. You are redirected to the EC2 community AMI page where you can choose an instance type.
3. On the Choose an Instance Type page, choose the hardware configuration of your instance. AWS Storage Gateway is supported on instance types that meet certain minimum requirements. We recommend starting with the m4xlarge instance type, which meets the minimum requirements for your gateway to function properly. For more information, see Hardware Requirements (p. 10).

You can resize your instance after you launch, if necessary. For more information, see Resizing Your Instance in the Amazon EC2 User Guide for Linux Instances.
4. Choose Next: Configure Instance Details.
5. On the Configure Instance Details page, choose a value for Auto-assign Public IP. If your instance should be accessible from the public Internet, verify that Auto-assign Public IP is set to Enable. If your instance should not be accessible from the Internet, choose Auto-assign Public IP for Disable.
6. On the Configure Instance Details page, choose the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that you want to use for your gateway.
7. Choose Next: Add Storage.
8. On the Add Storage page, choose Add New Volume to add storage to your file gateway instance. You need at least one Amazon EBS volume to configure for cache storage.

The following table recommends sizes for local disk storage for your deployed gateway.
### Gateway Type and Disk Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gateway Type</th>
<th>Cache (Minimum)</th>
<th>Cache (Maximum)</th>
<th>Upload Buffer (Minimum)</th>
<th>Upload Buffer (Maximum)</th>
<th>Other Required Local Disks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>File gateway</td>
<td>150 GiB</td>
<td>16 TiB</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cached volume gateway</td>
<td>150 GiB</td>
<td>16 TiB</td>
<td>150 GiB</td>
<td>2 TiB</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stored volume gateway</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>150 GiB</td>
<td>2 TiB</td>
<td>1 or more for stored volume or volumes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tape gateway</td>
<td>150 GiB</td>
<td>16 TiB</td>
<td>150 GiB</td>
<td>2 TiB</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**
You can configure one or more local drives for your cache and upload buffer, up to the maximum capacity. When adding cache or upload buffer to an existing gateway, it's important to create new disks in your host (hypervisor or Amazon EC2 instance). Don't change the size of existing disks if the disks have been previously allocated as either a cache or upload buffer.


10. On the Configure Security Group page, add firewall rules to specific traffic to reach our instance. You can create a new security group or choose an existing security group.

  **Important**
  Besides the Storage Gateway activation and Secure Shell (SSH) access ports, NFS clients require access to additional ports. For detailed information, see Network and Firewall Requirements (p. 12).

11. Choose Review and Launch to review your configuration.


13. In the Select an existing key pair or create a new key pair dialog box, choose Choose an existing key pair, and then select the key pair that you created when getting set up. When you are ready, choose the acknowledgment box, and then choose Launch Instances.

14. A confirmation page lets you know that your instance is launching. Choose View Instances to close the confirmation page and return to the console. On the Instances screen, you can view the status of your instance. It takes a short time for an instance to launch. When you launch an instance, its initial state is pending. After the instance starts, its state changes to running, and it receives a public DNS name

15. Select your instance, take note of the public IP address in the Description tag and return to the Connect to gateway (p. 21) page on the Storage Gateway console to continue your gateway setup.

The following table lists the available Storage Gateway AMIs by region.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Region</th>
<th>AMI Name</th>
<th>AMI ID</th>
<th>EC2 Console Link</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ap-northeast-1</td>
<td>aws-storage-gateway-file-2018-03-01</td>
<td>ami-946d2cf2</td>
<td>Launch instance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ap-northeast-2</td>
<td>aws-storage-gateway-file-2018-03-01</td>
<td>ami-5974d937</td>
<td>Launch instance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Volume Gateway

Topics
- Adding and Removing Disks for Your Gateway (p. 251)
- Adding and Removing Amazon EBS Volumes for Your Gateway Hosted on Amazon EC2 (p. 254)

Adding and Removing Disks for Your Gateway

You can add or remove underlying disks from your gateway as described following. For example, you might add disks to your gateway to use as an upload buffer or cache storage if you need additional upload buffer space or cache storage. You can also remove the underlying disks from your gateway. For example, you might want to remove a failed disk from your gateway.
Important
When adding cache or upload buffer to an existing gateway, it is important to create new disks in your host (hypervisor or Amazon EC2 instance). Don’t change the size of existing disks if the disks have been previously allocated as either a cache or upload buffer.

Topics

- Remove a Disk from a Gateway Hosted on VMware ESXi (p. 252)
- Remove a Disk from Gateway Hosted on Microsoft Hyper-V (p. 253)

Remove a Disk from a Gateway Hosted on VMware ESXi

You can use the following procedure to remove a disk from your gateway hosted on VMware hypervisor.

To remove a disk allocated for the upload buffer (VMware ESXi)

1. In the vSphere client, open the context (right-click) menu, choose the name of your gateway VM, and then choose Edit Settings.
2. On the Hardware tab of the Virtual Machine Properties dialog box, select the disk allocated as upload buffer space, and then choose Remove.

Verify that the Virtual Device Node value in the Virtual Machine Properties dialog box has the same value that you noted previously. Doing this helps ensure that you remove the correct disk.

3. Choose an option in the Removal Options panel, and then choose OK to complete the process of removing the disk.
Remove a Disk from Gateway Hosted on Microsoft Hyper-V

Using the following procedure, you can remove a disk from your gateway hosted on a Microsoft Hyper-V hypervisor.

To remove an underlying disk allocated for the upload buffer (Microsoft Hyper-V)

1. In the Microsoft Hyper-V Manager, open the context (right-click) menu, choose the name of your gateway VM, and then choose Settings.
2. In the Hardware list of the Settings dialog box, select the disk to remove, and then choose Remove.

The disks you add to a gateway appear under the SCSI Controller entry in the Hardware list. Verify that the Controller and Location value are the same value that you noted previously. Doing this helps ensure that you remove the correct disk.

The first SCSI controller displayed in the Microsoft Hyper-V Manager is controller 0.
Adding and Removing Amazon EBS Volumes for Your Gateway Hosted on Amazon EC2

When you initially configured your gateway to run as an Amazon EC2 instance, you allocated Amazon EBS volumes for use as an upload buffer and cache storage. Over time, as your applications needs change, you can allocate additional Amazon EBS volumes for this use. You can also reduce the storage you allocated by removing previously allocated Amazon EBS volumes. For more information about Amazon EBS, see Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) in the Amazon EC2 User Guide for Linux Instances.

Before you add more storage to the gateway, you should review how to size your upload buffer and cache storage based on your application needs for a gateway. To do so, see Sizing the Upload Buffer (p. 155) and Adding and Removing Upload Buffer (p. 153).

There are limits to the maximum storage you can allocate as an upload buffer and cache storage. You can attach as many Amazon EBS volumes to your instance as you want, but you can only configure these volumes as upload buffer and cache storage space up to these storage limits. For more information, see AWS Storage Gateway Limits (p. 292).

To create an Amazon EBS volume, attach it, and configure it for your gateway

1. Create an Amazon EBS volume. For instructions, see Creating or Restoring an Amazon EBS Volume in the Amazon EC2 User Guide for Linux Instances.

2. Attach the Amazon EBS volume to your Amazon EC2 instance. For instructions, see Attaching an Amazon EBS Volume to an Instance in the Amazon EC2 User Guide for Linux Instances.

3. Configure the Amazon EBS volume you added as either an upload buffer or cache storage. For instructions, see Managing Local Disks for Your AWS Storage Gateway (p. 151).
There are times you might find you don’t need the amount of storage you allocated for the upload buffer.

**To remove an Amazon EBS volume**

*Warning*
These steps apply only for Amazon EBS volumes allocated as upload buffer space. If you remove an Amazon EBS volume that is allocated as cache storage from a gateway, virtual tapes on the gateway will have the IRRECOVERABLE status, and you risk data loss. For more information on the IRRECOVERABLE status, see Understanding Tape Status Information in a VTL (p. 123).

1. Shut down the gateway by following the approach described in the Shutting Down Your Gateway VM (p. 150) section.
2. Detach the Amazon EBS volume from your Amazon EC2 instance. For instructions, see Detaching an Amazon EBS Volume from an Instance in the Amazon EC2 User Guide for Linux Instances.
3. Delete the Amazon EBS volume. For instructions, see Deleting an Amazon EBS Volume in the Amazon EC2 User Guide for Linux Instances.
4. Start the gateway by following the approach described in the Shutting Down Your Gateway VM (p. 150) section.

---

**Tape Gateway**

**Topics**
- Working with VTL Devices (p. 255)
- Working With Tapes (p. 258)

**Working with VTL Devices**

Your tape gateway setup provides the following SCSI devices, which you select when activating your gateway.

**Topics**
- Selecting a Medium Changer After Gateway Activation (p. 256)
- Updating the Device Driver for Your Medium Changer (p. 257)

For medium changers, AWS Storage Gateway works with the following:
- AWS-Gateway-VTL—This device is provided with the gateway.
- STK-L700—This device emulation is provided with the gateway.

When activating your tape gateway, you select your backup application from the list and storage gateway uses the appropriate medium changer. If your backup application is not listed, you choose **Other** and then choose the medium changer that works with backup application.

The type of medium changer you choose depends on the backup application you plan to use. The following table lists third-party backup applications that have been tested and found to be compatible with tape gateways. This table includes the medium changer type recommended for each backup application.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Backup Application</th>
<th>Medium Changer Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arcserve Backup</td>
<td>AWS-Gateway-VTL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Backup Application | Medium Changer Type
---|---
Backup Exec 2012 | STK-L700
Backup Exec 2014 | AWS-Gateway-VTL
Backup Exec 15 | AWS-Gateway-VTL
Backup Exec 16 | AWS-Gateway-VTL
Commvault V11 | STK-L700
Quest NetVault Backup 10.0 | STK-L700
Dell EMC NetWorker V8.x or V9.x | AWS-Gateway-VTL
Micro Focus (HPE) Data Protector 9.x | AWS-Gateway-VTL
Microsoft System Center 2012 R2 Data Protection Manager | STK-L700
**Note**
Data Protection Manager doesn't display barcodes for virtual tapes created in AWS Storage Gateway.
Symantec NetBackup Version 7.x | AWS-Gateway-VTL
Veeam Backup & Replication V7 | STK-L700
Veeam Backup & Replication V8 | STK-L700
Veeam Backup & Replication V9 Update 2 or later | AWS-Gateway-VTL

**Important**
We highly recommend that you choose the medium changer that's listed for your backup application. Other medium changers might not function properly. You can choose a different medium changer after the gateway is activated. For more information, see Selecting a Medium Changer After Gateway Activation (p. 256).

For tape drives, AWS Storage Gateway works with the following:

- IBM-ULT3580-TD5—This device emulation is provided with the gateway.

### Selecting a Medium Changer After Gateway Activation

After your gateway is activated, you can choose to select a different medium changer type.

**Important**
If your tape gateway uses the Symantec Backup Exec 2014 or NetBackup 7.x backup software, you must select the AWS-Gateway-VTL device type. For more information on how to change the medium changer after gateway activation for these applications, see Best Practices for using Symantec Backup products (NetBackup, Backup Exec) with the Amazon Web Services (AWS) Storage Tape Gateway in Symantec Support.
To select a different medium changer type after gateway activation

1. Stop any related jobs that are running in your backup software.
2. On the Windows server, open the iSCSI initiator properties window.
3. Choose the Targets tab to display the discovered targets.
4. On the Discovered targets pane, choose the medium changer you want to change, choose Disconnect, and then choose OK.
5. On the AWS Storage Gateway console, choose Gateways from the navigation pane, and then choose the gateway whose medium changer you want to change.
6. Choose the VTL Devices tab, select the medium changer you want to change, and then choose the Change Media Changer button.

7. In the Change Media Changer Type dialog box that appears, select the media changer you want from the drop-down list box and then choose Save.

Updating the Device Driver for Your Medium Changer

Depending on the backup software you use on your Windows server, you might need to update the driver for your medium changer.

1. Open Device Manager on your Windows server, and expand the Medium Changer devices tree.
2. Open the context (right-click) menu for Unknown Medium Changer, and choose Update Driver Software to open the Update Driver Software-unknown Medium Changer window.

3. In the How do you want to search for driver software? section, choose Browse my computer for driver software.
4. Choose **Let me pick from a list of device drivers on my computer**.

   **Note**
   We recommend using the Sony TSL-A500C Autoloader driver with the Veeam Backup & Replication V7, Veeam Backup & Replication V8, and Microsoft System Center 2012 R2 Data Protection Manager backup software. This Sony driver has been tested with these types of backup software.

5. In the **Select the device driver you want to install for this hardware** section, clear the **Show compatible hardware** check box, choose **Sony** in the **Manufacturer** list, choose **Sony - TSL-A500C Autoloader** in the **Model** list, and then choose **Next**.

   ![Update Driver Software - Unknown Medium Changer](image)

6. In the warning box that appears, choose **Yes**. If the driver is successfully installed, close the **Update drive software** window.

---

**Working With Tapes**

AWS Storage Gateway provides one virtual tape library (VTL) for each tape gateway you activate. Initially, the library contains no tapes, but you can create tapes whenever you need to. Your application can read and write to any tapes available on your tape gateway. A tape's status must be **AVAILABLE** for you to write to the tape. These tapes are backed by Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)—that is, when you write to these tapes, the tape gateway stores data in Amazon S3. For more information, see [Understanding Tape Status Information in a VTL](p. 123).

**Topics**

- Archiving Tapes (p. 259)
- Canceling Tape Archival (p. 260)

The tape library shows tapes in your tape gateway. The library shows the tape barcode, status, and size, amount of the tape used, and the gateway the tape is associated with.
When you have a large number of tapes in the library, the console supports searching for tapes by barcode, by status, or by both. When you search by barcode, you can filter by status and gateway.

**To search by barcode, status, and gateway**

2. In the navigation pane, choose *Tapes*, and then type a value in the search box. The value can be the barcode, status, or gateway. By default, AWS Storage Gateway searches for all virtual tapes. However, you can also filter your search by status.

   If you filter for status, tapes that match your criteria appear in the library in the AWS Storage Gateway console.

   If you filter for gateway, tapes that are associated with that gateway appear in the library in the AWS Storage Gateway console.

   **Note**
   
   By default, AWS Storage Gateway displays all tapes regardless of status.

**Archiving Tapes**

You can archive the virtual tapes that are in your tape gateway. When you archive a tape, AWS Storage Gateway moves the tape to the archive.

To archive a tape, you use your backup software. Tape archival process consists of three stages, seen as the tape statuses **IN TRANSIT TO VTS**, **ARCHIVING**, and **ARCHIVED**:

- To archive a tape, use the command provided by your backup application. When the archival process begins the tape status changes to **IN TRANSIT TO VTS** and the tape is no longer accessible to your backup application. In this stage, your tape gateway is uploading data to AWS. If needed, you can cancel the archival in progress. For more information about canceling archival, see [Canceling Tape Archival](p. 260).

  **Note**
  
  The steps for archiving a tape depend on your backup application. For detailed instructions, see the documentation for your backup application.

- After the data upload to AWS completes, the tape status changes to **ARCHIVING** and AWS Storage Gateway begins moving the tape to the archive. You cannot cancel the archival process at this point.

- After the tape is moved to the archive, its status changes to **ARCHIVED** and you can retrieve the tape to any of your gateways. For more information about tape retrieval, see [Retrieving Archived Tapes](p. 121).
The steps involved in archiving a tape depend on your backup software. For instructions on how to archive a tape by using Symantec NetBackup software, see Archiving the Tape (p. 85).

Canceling Tape Archival

After you start archiving a tape, you might decide you need your tape back. For example, you might want to cancel the archival process, get the tape back because the archival process is taking too long, or read data from the tape. A tape that is being archived goes through three statuses, as shown following:

• IN TRANSIT TO VTS: Your tape gateway is uploading data to AWS.
• ARCHIVING: Data upload is complete and the tape gateway is moving the tape to the archive.
• ARCHIVED: The tape is moved and the archive and is available for retrieval.

You can cancel archival only when the tape's status is IN TRANSIT TO VTS. Depending on factors such as upload bandwidth and the amount of data being uploaded, this status might or might not be visible in the AWS Storage Gateway console. To cancel a tape archival, use the CancelRetrieval action in the API reference.

Getting an Activation Key for Your Gateway

To get an activation key for your gateway, you make a web request to the gateway VM and it returns a redirect that contains the activation key. This activation key is passed as one of the parameters to the ActivateGateway API action to specify the configuration of your gateway. The request you make to the gateway VM contains the AWS Region in which activation occurs.

The URL returned by the redirect in the response contains a query string parameter called activationkey. This query string parameter is your activation key. The format of the query string looks like the following:

http://gateway_ip_address/?activationRegion=activation_region.

Topics

• AWS CLI (p. 260)
• Linux (bash/zsh) (p. 261)
• Microsoft Windows PowerShell (p. 261)

AWS CLI

If you haven't already done so, you must install and configure the AWS CLI. To do this, follow these instructions in the AWS Command Line Interface User Guide:

• Installing the AWS Command Line Interface
• Configuring the AWS CLI

The following example shows you how to use the AWS CLI to fetch the HTTP response, parse HTTP headers and get the activation key.

```bash
wget 'ec2_instance_ip_address/?activationRegion=eu-west-2' 2>&1 | \
grep -i location | \
grep -i key | \
cut -d'=\' -f2 |\n
cut -d'&' -f1
```
Linux (bash/zsh)

The following example shows you how to use Linux (bash/zsh) to fetch the HTTP response, parse HTTP headers, and get the activation key.

```bash
function get-activation-key() {
    local ip_address=$1
    local activation_region=$2
    if [[ -z "$ip_address" || -z "$activation_region" ]]; then
        echo "Usage: get-activation-key ip_address activation_region"
        return 1
    fi
    if redirect_url=$(curl -f -s -S -w '%{redirect_url}' "http://$ip_address/?activationRegion=$activation_region"); then
        activation_key_param=$(echo "$redirect_url" | grep -oE 'activationKey=[A-Z0-9-]+')
        echo "$activation_key_param" | cut -f2 -d=
    else
        return 1
    fi
}
```

Microsoft Windows PowerShell

The following example shows you how to use Microsoft Windows PowerShell to fetch the HTTP response, parse HTTP headers, and get the activation key.

```powershell
function Get-ActivationKey {
    [CmdletBinding()]
    Param(
        [parameter(Mandatory=$true)][string]$IpAddress,
        [parameter(Mandatory=$true)][string]$ActivationRegion
    )
    PROCESS {
        $request = Invoke-WebRequest -UseBasicParsing -Uri "http://$IpAddress/?activationRegion=$ActivationRegion" -MaximumRedirection 0 -ErrorAction SilentlyContinue
        if ($request) {
            $activationKeyParam = $request.Headers.Location | Select-String -Pattern "activationKey=[A-Z0-9-]+" | Select-String -Pattern "activationKeyParam.*$" | Select-String -Pattern "value=(.*)"
            return $activationKeyParam
        }
    }
}
```

Connecting iSCSI Initiators

When managing your gateway, you work with file shares, volumes or virtual tape library (VTL) devices that are exposed as Internet Small Computer System Interface (iSCSI) targets. For file gateways the iSCSI targets are file share, For volume gateways, the iSCSI targets are volumes. For tape gateways, the targets are VTL devices. As part of this work, you do such tasks as connecting to those targets, customizing iSCSI settings, connecting from a Red Hat Linux client, and configuring Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP).

**Topics**

- Connecting to Your Volumes to a Windows Client (p. 262)
- Connecting Your VTL Devices to a Windows client (p. 266)
• Connecting Your Volumes or VTL Devices to a Linux Client (p. 270)
• Customizing iSCSI Settings (p. 272)
• Configuring CHAP Authentication for Your iSCSI Targets (p. 275)

The iSCSI standard is an Internet Protocol (IP)–based storage networking standard for initiating and managing connections between IP-based storage devices and clients. The following list defines some of the terms that are used to describe the iSCSI connection and the components involved.

iSCSI initiator

The client component of an iSCSI network. The initiator sends requests to the iSCSI target. Initiators can be implemented in software or hardware. AWS Storage Gateway only supports software initiators.

iSCSI target

The server component of the iSCSI network that receives and responds to requests from initiators. Each of your volumes is exposed as an iSCSI target. Connect only one iSCSI initiator to each iSCSI target.

Microsoft iSCSI initiator

The software program on Microsoft Windows computers that enables you to connect a client computer (that is, the computer running the application whose data you want to write to the gateway) to an external iSCSI-based array (that is, the gateway). The connection is made using the host computer's Ethernet network adapter card. The Microsoft iSCSI initiator is already installed on Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Vista. On these operating systems, you don't need to install the initiator.

Red Hat iSCSI initiator

The iscsi-initiator-utils Resource Package Manager (RPM) package provides you with an iSCSI initiator implemented in software for Red Hat Linux. The package includes a server daemon for the iSCSI protocol.

Each type of gateway can connect to iSCSI devices, and you can customize those connections, as described following.

Connecting to Your Volumes to a Windows Client

A volume gateway exposes volumes you have created for the gateway as iSCSI targets. For more information, see Connecting Your Volumes to Your Client (p. 36).

Note
To connect to your volume target, your gateway must have an upload buffer configured. If an upload buffer is not configured for your gateway, then the status of your volumes is displayed as UPLOAD BUFFER NOT CONFIGURED. To configure an upload buffer for a gateway in a stored volumes setup, see To configure upload buffer or cache storage (p. 153). To configure an upload buffer for a gateway in a cached volumes setup, see To configure upload buffer or cache storage (p. 153).

The following diagram highlights the iSCSI target in the larger picture of the AWS Storage Gateway architecture. For more information, see How AWS Storage Gateway Works (Architecture) (p. 2).
You can connect to your volume from either a Windows or Red Hat Linux client. You can optionally configure CHAP for either client type.

Your gateway exposes your volume as an iSCSI target with a name you specify, prepended by iqn.1997-05.com.amazon:. For example, if you specify a target name of myvolume, then the iSCSI target you use to connect to the volume is iqn.1997-05.com.amazon:myvolume. For more information about how to configure your applications to mount volumes over iSCSI, see Connecting to Your Volumes to a Windows Client (p. 262).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>See</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Connect to your volume from Windows.</td>
<td>Connecting Your Volumes to Your Client (p. 36) in the Getting Started section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connect to your volume from Red Hat Linux.</td>
<td>Connecting to a Microsoft Windows Client (p. 50)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure CHAP authentication for Windows and Red Hat Linux.</td>
<td>Configuring CHAP Authentication for Your iSCSI Targets (p. 275)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To connect your Windows client to a storage volume

1. On the Start menu of your Windows client computer, type **iscsicpl.exe** in the Search Programs and files box, locate the iSCSI initiator program, and then run it.

   **Note**
   You must have administrator rights on the client computer to run the iSCSI initiator.

2. If prompted, choose Yes to start the Microsoft iSCSI initiator service.

3. In the iSCSI Initiator Properties dialog box, choose the Discovery tab, and then choose the Discovery Portal button.
4. In the Discover Target Portal dialog box, type the IP address of your iSCSI target for **IP address or DNS name**, and then choose **OK**. To get the IP address of your gateway, check the **Gateway** tab on the AWS Storage Gateway console. If you deployed your gateway on an Amazon EC2 instance, you can find the public IP or DNS address in the **Description** tab on the Amazon EC2 console.

![Discover Target Portal](image)

The IP address now appears in the **Target portals** list on the **Discovery** tab.

5. Connect the new target portal to the storage volume target on the gateway:
   a. Choose the **Targets** tab.

   The new target portal is shown with an inactive status. Note that the target name shown should be the same as the name you specified for your storage volume in step 1.
b. Select the target, and then choose **Connect**.

If the target name is not populated already, type the name of the target as shown in step 1 in the **Connect to Target** dialog box, select the check box next to **Add this connection to the list of Favorite Targets**, and then choose **OK**.

c. In the **Targets** tab, ensure that the target **Status** has the value **Connected** indicating the target is connected, and then choose **OK**.

You can now initialize and format this storage volume for Windows so you can begin saving data on it. You do this by using the Windows Disk Management tool.
Connecting Your VTL Devices to a Windows client

A tape gateway exposes several tape drives and a media changer, referred to collectively as VTL devices, as iSCSI targets. For more information, see Requirements (p. 10).

Note
You connect only one application to each iSCSI target.

The following diagram highlights the iSCSI target in the larger picture of the AWS Storage Gateway architecture. For more information on AWS Storage Gateway architecture, see Tape Gateways (p. 6).

To connect your Windows client to the VTL devices

1. On the Start menu of your Windows client computer, type `iscsicpl.exe` in the Search Programs and files box, locate the iSCSI initiator program, and then run it.

   Note
   You must have administrator rights on the client computer to run the iSCSI initiator.

2. If prompted, choose Yes to start the Microsoft iSCSI initiator service.

3. In the iSCSI Initiator Properties dialog box, choose the Discovery tab, and then choose the Discover Portal button.
4. In the Discover Target Portal dialog box, type the IP address of your tape gateway for **IP address or DNS name**, and then choose **OK**. To get the IP address of your gateway, check the **Gateway tab** on the AWS Storage Gateway console. If you deployed your gateway on an Amazon EC2 instance, you can find the public IP or DNS address in the **Description tab** on the Amazon EC2 console.

5. Choose the **Targets tab**, and then choose **Refresh**. All ten tape drives and the medium changer appear in the **Discovered targets box**. The status for the targets is **Inactive**.

The following screenshot shows the discovered targets.
6. Select the first device and choose **Connect**. You connect the devices one at a time.
7. In the **Connect to Target** dialog box, choose **OK**.
8. Repeat steps 6 and 7 for each of the devices to connect all of them, and then choose **OK** in the **iSCSI Initiator Properties** dialog box.
9. On a Windows client, the driver provider for the tape drive must be Microsoft. Use the following procedure to verify the driver provider, and update the driver and provider if necessary.
   1. On your Windows client, start Device Manager.
   2. Expand **Tape drives**, choose the context (right-click) menu for a tape drive, and choose **Properties**.
   3. In the **Driver** tab of the **Device Properties** dialog box, verify **Driver Provider** is Microsoft.
4. If Driver Provider is not Microsoft, set the value as follows:

1. Choose Update Driver.

2. In the Update Driver Software dialog box, choose Browse my computer for driver software.

3. In the Update Driver Software dialog box, choose Let me pick from a list of device drivers on my computer.
4. Select **LTO Tape drive** and choose **Next**.

5. Choose **Close** to close the **Update Driver Software** window, and verify that the **Driver Provider** value is now set to Microsoft.

6. Repeat steps 9.2 through 9.5 to update all the tape drives.

---

**Connecting Your Volumes or VTL Devices to a Linux Client**

When using Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL), you use the iscsi-initiator-utils RPM package to connect to your gateway iSCSI targets (volumes or VTL devices).

**To connect a Linux client to the iSCSI targets**

1. Install the iscsi-initiator-utils RPM package, if it isn't already installed on your client.

   You can use the following command to install the package.

   ```bash
   sudo yum install iscsi-initiator-utils
   ```

2. Ensure that the iSCSI daemon is running.
a. Verify that the iSCSI daemon is running using one of the following commands.

For RHEL 5 or 6, use the following command.

```
sudo /etc/init.d/iscsi status
```

For RHEL 7, use the following command.

```
sudo service iscsid status
```

b. If the status command doesn't return a status of running, then start the daemon using one of the following commands.

For RHEL 5 or 6, use the following command.

```
sudo /etc/init.d/iscsi start
```

For RHEL 7, use the following command. For RHEL 7, you usually don't need to explicitly start the iscsid service.

```
sudo service iscsid start
```

3. To discover the volume or VTL device targets defined for a gateway, use the following discovery command.

```
sudo /sbin/iscsiadm --mode discovery --type sendtargets --portal [GATEWAY_IP]:3260
```

Substitute your gateway's IP address for the [GATEWAY_IP] variable in the preceding command. You can find the gateway IP in the iSCSI Target Info properties of a volume on the AWS Storage Gateway console.

The output of the discovery command will look like the following example output.

For volume gateways: [GATEWAY_IP]:3260, 1 iqn.1997-05.com.amazon:myvolume


Your iSCSI qualified name (IQN) will be different than what is shown preceding, because IQN values are unique to an organization. The name of the target is the name that you specified when you created the volume. You can also find this target name in the iSCSI Target Info properties pane when you select a volume on the AWS Storage Gateway console.

4. To connect to a target, use the following command.

```
```

5. To verify that the volume is attached to the client machine (the initiator), use the following command.

Warning
For gateways that are deployed on an Amazon EC2 instance, accessing the gateway over a public Internet connection is not supported. The elastic IP address of the Amazon EC2 instance cannot be used as the target address.
Customizing iSCSI Settings

After setting up your initiator, we highly recommend that you customize your iSCSI settings to prevent the initiator from disconnecting from targets.

By increasing the iSCSI timeout values as shown in the following steps, you make your application better at dealing with write operations that take a long time and other transient issues such as network interruptions.

**Note**
Before making changes to the registry, you should make a backup copy of the registry. For information on making a backup copy and other best practices to follow when working with the registry, see Registry best practices in the [Microsoft TechNet Library](https://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cc753320.aspx).

**Topics**
- Customizing Your Windows iSCSI Settings (p. 272)
- Customizing Your Linux iSCSI Settings (p. 274)

Customizing Your Windows iSCSI Settings

When using a Windows client, you use the Microsoft iSCSI initiator to connect to your gateway volume. For instructions on how to connect to your volumes, see Connecting Your Volumes to Your Client (p. 36).

For a tape gateway setup, connecting to your VTL devices by using a Microsoft iSCSI initiator is a two-step process:

1. Connect your tape gateway devices to your Windows client.
2. If you are using a backup application, configure the application to use the devices.

The Getting Started example setup provides instructions for both these steps. It uses the Symantec NetBackup backup application. For more information, see Connecting Your VTL Devices (p. 49) and Configuring NetBackup Storage Devices (p. 77).

**To customize your Windows iSCSI settings**

1. Increase the maximum time for which requests are queued.
   a. Start Registry Editor (`Regedit.exe`).
   b. Navigate to the globally unique identifier (GUID) key for the device class that contains iSCSI controller settings, shown following.

   **Warning**
   Make sure you are working in the `CurrentControlSet` subkey and not another control set such as `ControlSet001` or `ControlSet002`. 

```bash
ls -l /dev/disk/by-path
```

The output of the command will look like the following example output.

```
```

We highly recommend that after you set up your initiator you customize your iSCSI settings as discussed in Customizing Your Linux iSCSI Settings (p. 274).
Customizing iSCSI Settings

HKEY_Local_Machine\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Control\Class\{4D36E97B-E325-11CE-BFC1-08002BE10318}\[<Instance Number>]

- Find the subkey for the Microsoft iSCSI initiator, shown following as [<Instance Number>]. The key is represented by a four-digit number, such as 0000.

HKEY_Local_Machine\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Control\Class\{4D36E97B-E325-11CE-BFC1-08002BE10318}\[<Instance Number>]

Depending on what is installed on your computer, the Microsoft iSCSI initiator might not be the subkey 0000. You can ensure that you have selected the correct subkey by verifying that the string DriverDesc has the value Microsoft iSCSI Initiator, as shown in the following example.

![Registry Editor](image)

- To show the iSCSI settings, choose the Parameters subkey.
- Open the context (right-click) menu for the MaxRequestHoldTime DWORD (32-bit) value, choose Modify, and then change the value to 600.

This value represents a hold time of 600 seconds. The example following shows the MaxRequestHoldTime DWORD value with a value of 600.

![Registry Editor](image)

2. Increase the disk timeout value, as shown following:
   - Start Registry Editor (Regedit.exe), if you haven't already.
b. Navigate to the Disk subkey in the Services subkey of the CurrentControlSet, shown following.

```
HKEY_Local_Machine\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\Disk
```

c. Open the context (right-click) menu for the TimeOutValue DWORD (32-bit) value, choose Modify, and then change the value to 600.

This value represents a timeout of 600 seconds. The example following shows the TimeOutValue DWORD value with a value of 600.

3. To ensure that the new configuration values take effect, restart your system.

Before restarting, you must make sure that the results of all write operations to volumes are flushed. To do this, take any mapped storage volume disks offline before restarting.

### Customizing Your Linux iSCSI Settings

After setting up your initiator, we highly recommend that you customize your iSCSI settings to prevent the initiator from disconnecting from targets. By increasing the iSCSI timeout values as shown following, you make your application better at dealing with write operations that take a long time and other transient issues such as network interruptions.

**Note**

Commands might be slightly different for other types of Linux. The following examples are based on Red Hat Linux.

#### To customize your Linux iSCSI settings

1. Increase the maximum time for which requests are queued.

a. Open the /etc/iscsi/iscsid.conf file and find the following lines.

```
node.session.timeo.replacement_timeout = [replacement_timeout_value]
node.conn[0].timeo.noop_out_interval = [noop_out_interval_value]
node.conn[0].timeo.noop_out_timeout = [noop_out_timeout_value]
```

b. Set the [replacement_timeout_value] value to 600.

Set the [noop_out_interval_value] value to 60.

Set the [noop_out_timeout_value] value to 600.

All three values are in seconds.

**Note**

The iscsid.conf settings must be made before discovering the gateway. If you have already discovered your gateway or logged in to the target, or both, you can delete the entry from the discovery database using the following command. Then you can rediscover or log in again to pick up the new configuration.
AWS Storage Gateway User Guide
Configuring CHAP Authentication

2. Increase the disk timeout value in the rules file.
   a. If you are using the RHEL 5 initiator, open the /etc/udev/rules.d/50-udev.rules file and find the following line.

   

   ```
   ACTION=="add", SUBSYSTEMS=="scsi", SYSFS{type}"0|7|14", \
   RUN="/bin/sh -c 'echo [timeout] > /sys$$DEVPATH/timeout'"
   ```

   This rules file does not exist in RHEL 6 or 7 initiators, so you must create it using the following rule.

   ```
   ACTION=="add", SUBSYSTEMS=="scsi", ATTRS{model}"Storage Gateway", \
   RUN="/bin/sh -c 'echo [timeout] > /sys$$DEVPATH/timeout'"
   ```

   To modify the timeout value in RHEL 6, use the following command and then add the lines of code shown preceding.

   ```
   sudo vim /etc/udev/rules.d/50-udev.rules
   ```

   To modify the timeout value in RHEL 7, use the following command and then add the lines of code shown preceding.

   ```
   sudo su -c "echo 600 > /sys/block/[device name]/device/timeout"
   ```

   b. Set the [timeout] value to 600.

   This value represents a timeout of 600 seconds.

3. Restart your system to ensure that the new configuration values take effect.

   Before restarting, you must make sure that the results of all write operations to your volumes are flushed. To do this, unmount storage volumes before restarting.

4. You can test the configuration by using the following command.

   ```
   udevadm test [PATH_TO_ISCSI_DEVICE]
   ```

   This command shows the udev rules that are applied to the iSCSI device.

### Configuring CHAP Authentication for Your iSCSI Targets

AWS Storage Gateway supports authentication between your gateway and iSCSI initiators by using Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP). CHAP provides protection against playback attacks by periodically verifying the identity of an iSCSI initiator as authenticated to access a volume and VTL device target.

To set up CHAP, you must configure it both on the AWS Storage Gateway console and in the iSCSI initiator software that you use to connect to the target. Storage Gateway uses mutual CHAP, which is when the initiator authenticates the target and the target authenticates the initiator.
To set up mutual CHAP for your targets

1. Configure CHAP on the AWS Storage Gateway console, as discussed in To configure CHAP for a volume target on the AWS Storage Gateway console (p. 276).

2. In your client initiator software, complete the CHAP configuration:
   - To configure mutual CHAP on a Windows client, see To configure mutual CHAP on a Windows client (p. 278).
   - To configure mutual CHAP on a Red Hat Linux client, see To configure mutual CHAP on a Red Hat Linux client (p. 282).

To configure CHAP for a volume target on the AWS Storage Gateway console

In this procedure, you specify two secret keys that are used to read and write to a volume. These same keys are used in the procedure to configure the client initiator.

1. On the AWS Storage Gateway console, choose Volumes in the navigation pane.
2. On the Actions menu, choose Configure CHAP Authentication.
3. Provide the requested information in the Configure CHAP Authentication dialog box, shown in the screenshot following:

   a. For Initiator Name, type the name of your iSCSI initiator.

   You can find the initiator name by using your iSCSI initiator software. For example, for Windows clients, the name is the value on the Configuration tab of the iSCSI initiator. For more information, see To configure mutual CHAP on a Windows client (p. 278).

   **Note**
   To change an initiator name, you must first disable CHAP, change the initiator name in your iSCSI initiator software, and then enable CHAP with the new name.

   b. For Secret used to Authenticate Initiator, type the secret requested.

   This secret must be a minimum of 12 characters and a maximum of 16 characters long. This value is the secret key that the initiator (that is, the Windows client) must know to participate in CHAP with the target.

   c. For Secret used to Authenticate Target (Mutual CHAP), type the secret requested.

   This secret must be a minimum of 12 characters and a maximum of 16 characters long. This value is the secret key that the target must know to participate in CHAP with the initiator.

   **Note**
   The secret used to authenticate the target must be different than the secret to authenticate the initiator.
To configure CHAP for a VTL device target on the AWS Storage Gateway console

In this procedure, you specify two secret keys that are used to read and write to a virtual tape. These same keys are used in the procedure to configure the client initiator.

1. In the navigation pane, choose Gateways.
2. Choose your gateway, and then choose the VTL Devices tab to display all your VTL devices.
3. Choose the device you want to configure CHAP for.
4. Provide the requested information in the Configure CHAP Authentication dialog box, shown in the screenshot following:

   a. For Initiator Name, type the name of your iSCSI initiator.

      You can find the initiator name by using your iSCSI initiator software. For example, for Windows clients, the name is the value on the Configuration tab of the iSCSI initiator. For more information, see To configure mutual CHAP on a Windows client (p. 278).

      Note
      To change an initiator name, you must first disable CHAP, change the initiator name in your iSCSI initiator software, and then enable CHAP with the new name.

   b. For Secret used to Authenticate Initiator, type the secret requested.

      This secret must be a minimum of 12 characters and a maximum of 16 characters long. This value is the secret key that the initiator (that is, the Windows client) must know to participate in CHAP with the target.

   c. For Secret used to Authenticate Target (Mutual CHAP), type the secret requested.

      This secret must be a minimum of 12 characters and a maximum of 16 characters long. This value is the secret key that the target must know to participate in CHAP with the initiator.

d. Choose Save.

4. Choose the Details tab and confirm that iSCSI CHAP authentication is set to true.
Note
The secret used to authenticate the target must be different than the secret to authenticate the initiator.

d. Choose Save.

5. On the VTL Devices tab, confirm that the iSCSI CHAP authentication field is set to true.

To configure mutual CHAP on a Windows client

In this procedure, you configure CHAP in the Microsoft iSCSI initiator using the same keys that you used to configure CHAP for the volume on the console.

1. If the iSCSI initiator is not already started, on the Start menu of your Windows client computer, choose Run, type iscsicpl.exe, and then choose OK to run the program.
2. Configure mutual CHAP configuration for the initiator (that is, the Windows client):
   a. Choose the Configuration tab.

   ![Image of iSCSI Initiator Properties window]

   Note
   The Initiator Name value is unique to your initiator and company. The name shown preceding is the value that you used in the Configure CHAP Authentication dialog box of the AWS Storage Gateway console.
   The name shown in the example image is for demonstration purposes only.
   b. Choose CHAP.
   c. In the iSCSI Initiator Mutual Chap Secret dialog box, type the mutual CHAP secret value.
In this dialog box, you enter the secret that the initiator (the Windows client) uses to authenticate the target (the storage volume). This secret allows the target to read and write to the initiator. This secret is the same as the secret typed into the Secret used to Authenticate Target (Mutual CHAP) box in the Configure CHAP Authentication dialog box. For more information, see Configuring CHAP Authentication for Your iSCSI Targets (p. 275).

d. If the key that you typed is less than 12 characters or more than 16 characters long, an Initiator CHAP secret error dialog box appears.

Choose OK, and then type the key again.

3. Configure the target with the initiator's secret to complete the mutual CHAP configuration.
   a. Choose the Targets tab.
b. If the target that you want to configure for CHAP is currently connected, disconnect the target by selecting it and choosing Disconnect.

c. Select the target that you want to configure for CHAP, and then choose Connect.

d. In the Connect to Target dialog box, choose Advanced.
e. In the **Advanced Settings** dialog box, configure CHAP.

   i. Select **Enable CHAP log on**.

   ii. Type the secret that is required to authenticate the initiator. This secret is the same as the secret typed into the **Secret used to Authenticate Initiator** box in the **Configure CHAP Authentication** dialog box. For more information, see Configuring CHAP Authentication for Your iSCSI Targets (p. 275).

   iii. Select **Perform mutual authentication**.
iv. To apply the changes, choose OK.
f. In the **Connect to Target** dialog box, choose **OK**.

4. If you provided the correct secret key, the target shows a status of **Connected**.

To configure mutual CHAP on a Red Hat Linux client

In this procedure, you configure CHAP in the Linux iSCSI initiator using the same keys that you used to configure CHAP for the volume on the AWS Storage Gateway console.

1. Ensure that the iSCSI daemon is running and that you have already connected to a target. If you have not completed these two tasks, see **Connecting to a Microsoft Windows Client** (p. 50).

2. Disconnect and remove any existing configuration for the target for which you are about to configure CHAP.
   a. To find the target name and ensure it is a defined configuration, list the saved configurations using the following command.

   ```bash
   sudo /sbin/iscsiadm --mode node
   ```

   b. Disconnect from the target.

   The following command disconnects from the target named **myvolume** that is defined in the Amazon iSCSI qualified name (IQN). Change the target name and IQN as required for your situation.

   ```bash
   sudo /sbin/iscsiadm --mode node --logout GATEWAY_IP:3260,1
   iqn.1997-05.com.amazon:myvolume
   ```

   c. Remove the configuration for the target.
The following command removes the configuration for the `myvolume` target.

```
sudo /sbin/iscsiadm --mode node --op delete --targetname iqn.1997-05.com.amazon:myvolume
```

3. Edit the iSCSI configuration file to enable CHAP.
   a. Get the name of the initiator (that is, the client you are using).
      The following command gets the initiator name from the `/etc/iscsi/initiatorname.iscsi` file.
      ```
sudo cat /etc/iscsi/initiatorname.iscsi
      ```
      The output from this command looks like this:
      ```
      InitiatorName=iqn.1994-05.com.redhat:8e89b27b5b8
      ```
   b. Open the `/etc/iscsi/iscsid.conf` file.
   c. Uncomment the following lines in the file and specify the correct values for `username`, `password`, `username_in`, and `password_in`.
      ```
      node.session.auth.authmethod = CHAP
      node.session.auth.username = username
      node.session.auth.password = password
      node.session.auth.username_in = username_in
      node.session.auth.password_in = password_in
      ```
      For guidance on what values to specify, see the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration Setting</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>username</code></td>
<td>The initiator name that you found in a previous step in this procedure. The value starts with <code>iqn</code>. For example, <code>iqn.1994-05.com.redhat:8e89b27b5b8</code> is a valid <code>username</code> value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>password</code></td>
<td>The secret key used to authenticate the initiator (the client you are using) when it communicates with the volume.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>username_in</code></td>
<td>The IQN of the target volume. The value starts with <code>iqn</code> and ends with the target name. For example, <code>iqn.1997-05.com.amazon:myvolume</code> is a valid <code>username_in</code> value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>password_in</code></td>
<td>The secret key used to authenticate the target (the volume) when it communicates to the initiator.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d. Save the changes in the configuration file, and then close the file.

4. Discover and log in to the target. To do so, follow the steps in Connecting to a Microsoft Windows Client (p. 50).
Using AWS Direct Connect with AWS Storage Gateway

AWS Direct Connect links your internal network to the AWS Cloud. By using AWS Direct Connect with AWS Storage Gateway, you can create a connection for high-throughput workload needs, providing a dedicated network connection between your on-premises gateway and AWS.

Storage Gateway uses public endpoints. With an AWS Direct Connect connection in place, you can create a public virtual interface to allow traffic to be routed to the Storage Gateway endpoints. The public virtual interface bypasses internet service providers in your network path. The Storage Gateway service public endpoint can be in the same AWS Region as the AWS Direct Connect location, or it can be in a different AWS Region.

The following illustration shows an example of how AWS Direct Connect works with Storage Gateway.

The following procedure assumes that you have created a functioning gateway.

To use AWS Direct Connect with Storage Gateway

1. Create and establish an AWS Direct Connect connection between your on-premises data center and your Storage Gateway endpoint. For more information about how to create a connection, see Getting Started with AWS Direct Connect in the AWS Direct Connect User Guide.
2. Connect your on-premises Storage Gateway appliance to the AWS Direct Connect router.
3. Create a public virtual interface, and configure your on-premises router accordingly. For more information, see Creating a Virtual Interface in the AWS Direct Connect User Guide.

For details about AWS Direct Connect, see What is AWS Direct Connect? in the AWS Direct Connect User Guide.

Port Requirements

AWS Storage Gateway requires the following ports for its operation. Some ports are common to all gateway types and are required by all gateways types. Other ports are required by specific gateway types. This section shows an illustration of the required ports and lists the ports required by each gateway type.

File Gateway

The following illustration shows the ports to open for file gateway's operation.
Volume Gateways and Tape Gateway

The following illustration shows the ports to open for volume gateways and tape gateway's operation.

The following ports are common to all gateway types and are required by all gateway types.

**Ports required by all gateway types**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>From</th>
<th>To</th>
<th>Protocol</th>
<th>Port</th>
<th>How Used</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Storage Gateway VM</td>
<td>AWS</td>
<td>TCP</td>
<td>443 (HTTPS)</td>
<td>For communication from AWS Storage Gateway VM to the AWS service endpoint. For</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From</td>
<td>To</td>
<td>Protocol</td>
<td>Port</td>
<td>How Used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Your Web browser</td>
<td>Storage Gateway VM</td>
<td>TCP</td>
<td>80 (HTTP)</td>
<td>By local systems to obtain the storage gateway activation key. Port 80 is only used during activation of the Storage Gateway appliance. AWS Storage Gateway VM does not require port 80 to be publicly accessible. The required level of access to port 80 depends on your network configuration. If you activate your gateway from the AWS Storage Gateway Management Console, the host from which you connect to the console must have access to your gateway's port 80.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Information about service endpoints, see [Allowing AWS Storage Gateway Access Through Firewalls and Routers](p. 13).
### Port Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>From</th>
<th>To</th>
<th>Protocol</th>
<th>Port</th>
<th>How Used</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Storage Gateway VM</td>
<td>Domain Name Service (DNS) server</td>
<td>UDP/UDP</td>
<td>53 (DNS)</td>
<td>For communication between AWS Storage Gateway VM and the DNS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Gateway VM</td>
<td>AWS</td>
<td>TCP</td>
<td>22 (Support channel)</td>
<td>Allows AWS Support to access your gateway to help you with troubleshooting gateway issues. You don't need this port open for the normal operation of your gateway, but it is required for troubleshooting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Gateway VM</td>
<td>NTP server</td>
<td>UDP</td>
<td>123 (NTP)</td>
<td>Used by local systems to synchronize VM time to the host time. The Storage Gateway VM is configured to use the following ntp servers:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- 0.amazon.pool.ntp.org</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- 1.amazon.pool.ntp.org</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- 2.amazon.pool.ntp.org</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>- 3.amazon.pool.ntp.org</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition to the common ports, file gateway requires the following ports.

### Ports required by file gateway only

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>From</th>
<th>To</th>
<th>Protocol</th>
<th>Port</th>
<th>How Used</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NFS client</td>
<td>Storage Gateway VM</td>
<td>TCP/UDP</td>
<td>2049 (NFS)</td>
<td>For local systems to connect to NFS shares your gateway exposes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From</td>
<td>To</td>
<td>Protocol</td>
<td>Port</td>
<td>How Used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NFS client</td>
<td>Storage Gateway VM</td>
<td>TCP/UDP</td>
<td>111 (NFS)</td>
<td>For local systems to connect to the portmapper your gateway exposes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> Only needed for NFSv3 clients.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NFS client</td>
<td>Storage Gateway VM</td>
<td>TCP/UDP</td>
<td>20048 (NFS)</td>
<td>For local systems to connect to mountd your gateway exposes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> Only needed for NFSv3 clients.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition to the common ports, volume and tape gateways require the following port.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>From</th>
<th>To</th>
<th>Protocol</th>
<th>Port</th>
<th>How Used</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iSCSI Initiators</td>
<td>Storage Gateway VM</td>
<td>TCP</td>
<td>3260 (iSCSI)</td>
<td>By local systems to connect to iSCSI targets exposed by the gateway.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Connecting to Your Gateway

After you choose a host and deploy your gateway VM, you connect and activate your gateway. To do this, you need the IP address of your gateway VM. You get the IP address from your gateway's local console. You log in to the local console and get the IP address from the top of the console page.

For gateways deployed on-premises, you can also get the IP address from your hypervisor. For Amazon EC2 gateways, you can also get the IP address of your Amazon EC2 instance from the Amazon EC2 Management Console. To find how to get your gateway's IP address, see one of the following:

- VMware host: [Accessing the Gateway Local Console with VMware ESXi](p. 165)
- HyperV host: [Access the Gateway Local Console with Microsoft Hyper-V](p. 170)
- EC2 host: [Getting an IP Address from an Amazon EC2 Host](p. 289)
When you locate the IP address, take note of it. Then return to the AWS Storage Gateway console and type the IP address into the console.

**Getting an IP Address from an Amazon EC2 Host**

To get the IP address of the Amazon EC2 instance your gateway is deployed on, log in to the EC2 instance's local console. Then get the IP address from the top of the console page. For instructions, see Logging In to Your Amazon EC2 Gateway Local Console (p. 191).

You can also get the IP address from the Amazon EC2 Management Console. We recommend using the public IP address for activation. To get the public IP address, use procedure 1. If you choose to use the elastic IP address instead, see procedure 2.

**Procedure 1: To connect to your gateway using the public IP address**

1. Open the Amazon EC2 console at https://console.aws.amazon.com/ec2/.
2. In the navigation pane, choose **Instances**, and then select the EC2 instance that your gateway is deployed on.
3. Choose the **Description** tab at the bottom, and then note the public IP. You use this IP address to connect to the gateway. Return to the AWS Storage Gateway console and type in the IP address.

If you want to use the elastic IP address for activation, use the procedure following.

**Procedure 2: To connect to your gateway using the elastic IP address**

1. Open the Amazon EC2 console at https://console.aws.amazon.com/ec2/.
2. In the navigation pane, choose **Instances**, and then select the EC2 instance that your gateway is deployed on.
3. Choose the **Description** tab at the bottom, and then note the **Elastic IP** value. You use this elastic IP address to connect to the gateway. Return to the AWS Storage Gateway console and type in the elastic IP address.
4. After your gateway is activated, choose the gateway that you just activated, and then choose the **VTL devices** tab in the bottom panel.
5. Get the names of all your VTL devices.
6. For each target, run the following command to configure the target.
   ```bash
   iscsiadm -m node -o new -T [TARGET_NAME] -p [Elastic_IP]:3260
   ```
7. For each target, run the following command to log in.
   ```bash
   iscsiadm -m node -p [ELASTIC_IP]:3260 --login
   ```

Your gateway is now connected using the elastic IP address of the EC2 instance.

**Understanding AWS Storage Gateway Resources and Resource IDs**

In AWS Storage Gateway, the primary resource is a **gateway** but other resource types include: **volume**, **virtual tape**, **iSCSI target**, and **vtl device**. These are referred to as **subresources** and they don't exist unless they are associated with a gateway.

These resources and subresources have unique Amazon Resource Names (ARNs) associated with them as shown in the following table.
Working with Resource IDs

When you create a resource, Storage Gateway assigns the resource a unique resource ID. This resource ID is part of the resource ARN. A resource ID takes the form of a resource identifier, followed by a hyphen, and a unique combination of eight letters and numbers. For example, a gateway ID is of the form `sgw-12A3456B` where `sgw` is the resource identifier for gateways. A volume ID takes the form `vol-3344CCDD` where `vol` is the resource identifier for volumes.

For virtual tapes, you can prepend a up to a four character prefix to the barcode ID to help you organize your tapes.

AWS Storage Gateway resource IDs are in uppercase. However, when you use these resource IDs with the Amazon EC2 API, Amazon EC2 expects resource IDs in lowercase. You must change your resource ID to lowercase to use it with the EC2 API. For example, in Storage Gateway the ID for a volume might be `vol-1122AABB`. When you use this ID with the EC2 API, you must change it to `vol-1122aabb`. Otherwise, the EC2 API might not behave as expected.

**Important**

IDs for Storage Gateway volumes and Amazon EBS snapshots created from gateway volumes are changing to a longer format. Starting in December 2016, all new volumes and snapshots will be created with a 17-character string. Starting in April 2016, you will be able to use these longer IDs so you can test your systems with the new format. For more information, see [Longer EC2 and EBS Resource IDs](#).

For example, a volume ARN with the longer volume ID format will look like this:

```
```

A snapshot ID with the longer ID format will look like this: `snap-78e226633445566ee`.

For more information, see [Announcement: Heads-up – Longer AWS Storage Gateway volume and snapshot IDs coming in 2016](#).

Tagging Storage Gateway Resources

In AWS Storage Gateway, you can use tags to manage your resources. Tags let you add metadata to your resources and categorize your resources to make them easier to manage. Each tag consists of a key-value pair.
pair, which you define. You can add tags to gateways, volumes, and virtual tapes. You can search and filter these resources based on the tags you add.

As an example, you can use tags to identify Storage Gateway resources used by each department in your organization. You might tag gateways and volumes used by your accounting department like this: (key=department and value=accounting). You can then filter with this tag to identify all gateways and volumes used by your accounting department and use the information to determine cost. For more information, see Using Cost Allocation Tags and Working with Tag Editor.

If you archive a virtual tape that is tagged, the tape maintains its tags in the archive. Similarly, if you retrieve a tape from the archive to another gateway, the tags are maintained in the new gateway.

Tags don't have any semantic meaning but rather are interpreted as strings of characters.

The following restrictions apply to tags:

- Tag keys and values are case-sensitive.
- The maximum number of tags for each resource is 10.
- Tag keys cannot begin with aws:. This prefix is reserved for AWS use.
- Valid characters for the key property are UTF-8 letters and numbers, space, and special characters + - . _ : /. and @.

**Working with Tags**

You can work with tags by using the Storage Gateway console, the Storage Gateway API, or the Storage Gateway Command Line Interface (CLI). The following procedures show you how to add, edit, and delete a tag on the console.

**To add a tag**

2. In the navigation pane, choose the resource you want to tag.
   
   For example, to tag a gateway, choose Gateways, and then choose the gateway you want to tag from the list of gateways.
3. Choose Tags, and then choose Add/edit tags.
4. In the Add/edit tags dialog box, choose Create tag.
5. Type a key for key and a value for value. For example, you can type Department for the key and Accounting for the value.

   **Note**
   
   You can leave the Value box blank.
6. Choose Create Tag to add more tags. You can add multiple tags to a resource.
7. When you're done adding tags, choose Save.

**To edit a tag**

2. Choose the resource whose tag you want to edit.
3. Choose Tags to open the Add/edit tags dialog box.
4. Choose the pencil icon next to the tag you want edit, and then edit the tag.
5. When you’re done editing the tag, choose Save.

To delete a tag
2. Choose the resource whose tag you want to delete.
3. Choose Tags, and then choose Add/edit tags to open the Add/edit tags dialog box.
4. Choose the X icon next to the tag you want to delete, and then choose Save.

Working with Open-Source Components for AWS Storage Gateway

The source code for certain open-source software components that are included with the AWS Storage Gateway software is available for download at the following locations:

- https://s3.amazonaws.com/aws-storage-gateway-terms/sources.tar for gateways deployed on VMware ESXi.
- https://s3.amazonaws.com/aws-storage-gateway-terms/sources_hyperv.tar for gateways deployed on Microsoft Hyper-V

This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit (http://www.openssl.org/).

The packages that make up the AWS Storage Gateway VM are tracked and monitored for security vulnerabilities. When updates are issued, they are applied to each gateway and the updated packages will increment their version number, although the major version number of the Linux distribution might not increment.

AWS Storage Gateway Limits

In this topic, you can find information about file share, volume, tape, configuration, and performance limits for Storage Gateway.

Topics
- Limits For File Shares (p. 292)
- Limits for Volumes (p. 293)
- Limits for Tapes (p. 293)
- Configuration and Performance Limits (p. 294)
- Recommended Local Disk Sizes For Your Gateway (p. 294)

Limits For File Shares

The following table lists limits for file shares.
Limits for Volumes

The following table lists limits for volumes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Cached Volumes</th>
<th>Stored Volumes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum size of a volume</td>
<td>32 TiB</td>
<td>16 TiB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you create a snapshot from a cached volume that is more than 16 TiB in size, you cannot restore it to an Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) volume; however, it can be restored to a Storage Gateway volume.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum number of volumes for a gateway</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total size of all volumes for a gateway</td>
<td>1,024 TiB</td>
<td>512 TiB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Limits for Tapes

The following table lists limits for tapes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Tape Gateway</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Minimum size of a virtual tape</td>
<td>100 GiB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum size of a virtual tape</td>
<td>2.5 TiB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum number of virtual tapes for a virtual tape library (VTL)</td>
<td>1,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total size of all tapes in a virtual tape library (VTL)</td>
<td>1 PiB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum number of virtual tapes in archive</td>
<td>No limit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Description | Tape Gateway
--- | ---
Total size of all tapes in a archive | No limit

## Configuration and Performance Limits

The following table lists limits for configuration and performance.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>File Gateway</th>
<th>Cached Volumes</th>
<th>Stored Volumes</th>
<th>Tape Gateway</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum upload rate</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>120 MB/s</td>
<td>120 MB/s</td>
<td>120 MB/s</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

The maximum upload rate was achieved by using 100 percent sequential write operations and 256 KB I/Os. Depending on your I/O mix and network conditions, the actual rate might be lower.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>File Gateway</th>
<th>Cached Volumes</th>
<th>Stored Volumes</th>
<th>Tape Gateway</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum download rate</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>20 MB/s</td>
<td>20 MB/s</td>
<td>20 MB/s</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Recommended Local Disk Sizes For Your Gateway

The following table recommends sizes for local disk storage for your deployed gateway.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gateway Type</th>
<th>Cache (Minimum)</th>
<th>Cache (Maximum)</th>
<th>Upload Buffer (Minimum)</th>
<th>Upload Buffer (Maximum)</th>
<th>Other Required Local Disks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>File gateway</td>
<td>150 GiB</td>
<td>16 TiB</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cached volume gateway</td>
<td>150 GiB</td>
<td>16 TiB</td>
<td>150 GiB</td>
<td>2 TiB</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stored volume gateway</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>150 GiB</td>
<td>2 TiB</td>
<td>1 or more for stored volume or volumes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tape gateway</td>
<td>150 GiB</td>
<td>16 TiB</td>
<td>150 GiB</td>
<td>2 TiB</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

You can configure one or more local drives for your cache and upload buffer, up to the maximum capacity. When adding cache or upload buffer to an existing gateway, it's important to create new disks in your host (hypervisor or Amazon EC2 instance). Don't change the size of existing disks if the disks have been previously allocated as either a cache or upload buffer.
API Reference for AWS Storage Gateway

In addition to using the console, you can use the AWS Storage Gateway API to programmatically configure and manage your gateways. This section describes the AWS Storage Gateway operations, request signing for authentication and the error handling. For information about the regions and endpoints available for AWS Storage Gateway, see Regions and Endpoints.

Note
You can also use the AWS SDKs when developing applications with AWS Storage Gateway. The AWS SDKs for Java, .NET, and PHP wrap the underlying AWS Storage Gateway API, simplifying your programming tasks. For information about downloading the SDK libraries, see Sample Code Libraries.

Topics
- AWS Storage Gateway Required Request Headers (p. 295)
- Signing Requests (p. 296)
- Error Responses (p. 298)
- Actions

AWS Storage Gateway Required Request Headers

This section describes the required headers that you must send with every POST request to AWS Storage Gateway. You include HTTP headers to identify key information about the request including the operation you want to invoke, the date of the request, and information that indicates the authorization of you as the sender of the request. Headers are case insensitive and the order of the headers is not important.

The following example shows headers that are used in the ActivateGateway operation.

```
POST / HTTP/1.1
Host: storagegateway.us-east-2.amazonaws.com
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.1
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE/20120425/us-east-2/
storagegateway/aws4_request, SignedHeaders=content-type;host;x-amz-date;x-amz-target,
Signature=9cd5a35b4d1d67d57e61f120f35102d6b3649066abbd4bf4bbcf05bd9f2f8fe2
x-amz-date: 20120912T120000Z
x-amz-target: StorageGateway_20120630.ActivateGateway
```

The following are the headers that must include with your POST requests to AWS Storage Gateway. Headers shown below that begin with "x-amz" are AWS-specific headers. All other headers listed are common header used in HTTP transactions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Header</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Authorization</td>
<td>The authorization header contains several of pieces of information about the request that enable AWS Storage Gateway to determine if the request is a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Header | Description
--- | ---
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC_SHA256 | valid action for the requester. The format of this header is as follows (line breaks added for readability):

```
Credentials=YourAccessKey/yyyyymmdd/region/storagegateway/aws4_request,
SignedHeaders=content-type;host;x-amz-date;x-amz-target,
Signature=CalculatedSignature
```

In the preceding syntax, you specify `YourAccessKey`, the year, month, and day (`yyyyymmdd`), the `region`, and the `CalculatedSignature`. The format of the authorization header is dictated by the requirements of the AWS V4 Signing process. The details of signing are discussed in the topic Signing Requests (p. 296).

**Content-Type** | Use `application/x-amz-json-1.1` as the content type for all requests to AWS Storage Gateway.

```
Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.1
```

**Host** | Use the host header to specify the AWS Storage Gateway endpoint where you send your request. For example, `storagegateway.us-east-2.amazonaws.com` is the endpoint for the US East (Ohio) region. For more information about the endpoints available for AWS Storage Gateway, see Regions and Endpoints.

```
Host: storagegateway.region.amazonaws.com
```

**x-amz-date** | You must provide the time stamp in either the HTTP `Date` header or the AWS `x-amz-date` header. (Some HTTP client libraries don't let you set the `Date` header.) When an `x-amz-date` header is present, the AWS Storage Gateway ignores any `Date` header during the request authentication. The `x-amz-date` format must be ISO8601 Basic in the `YYYYMMDD'T'HHMMSSZ` format. If both the `Date` and `x-amz-date` header are used, the format of the `Date` header does not have to be ISO8601.

```
x-amz-date: YYYYMMDD'T'HHMMSSZ
```

**x-amz-target** | This header specifies the version of the API and the operation that you are requesting. The target header values are formed by concatenating the API version with the API name and are in the following format.

```
x-amz-target: StorageGateway_APIversion.operationName
```

The `operationName` value (e.g. "ActivateGateway") can be found from the API list, API Reference for AWS Storage Gateway (p. 295).

---

### Signing Requests

AWS Storage Gateway requires that you authenticate every request you send by signing the request. To sign a request, you calculate a digital signature using a cryptographic hash function. A cryptographic
hash is a function that returns a unique hash value based on the input. The input to the hash function includes the text of your request and your secret access key. The hash function returns a hash value that you include in the request as your signature. The signature is part of the Authorization header of your request.

After receiving your request, AWS Storage Gateway recalculates the signature using the same hash function and input that you used to sign the request. If the resulting signature matches the signature in the request, AWS Storage Gateway processes the request. Otherwise, the request is rejected.

AWS Storage Gateway supports authentication using AWS Signature Version 4. The process for calculating a signature can be broken into three tasks:

- **Task 1: Create a Canonical Request**
  Rearrange your HTTP request into a canonical format. Using a canonical form is necessary because AWS Storage Gateway uses the same canonical form when it recalculates a signature to compare with the one you sent.

- **Task 2: Create a String to Sign**
  Create a string that you will use as one of the input values to your cryptographic hash function. The string, called the string to sign, is a concatenation of the name of the hash algorithm, the request date, a credential scope string, and the canonicalized request from the previous task. The credential scope string itself is a concatenation of date, region, and service information.

- **Task 3: Create a Signature**
  Create a signature for your request by using a cryptographic hash function that accepts two input strings: your string to sign and a derived key. The derived key is calculated by starting with your secret access key and using the credential scope string to create a series of Hash-based Message Authentication Codes (HMACs).

### Example Signature Calculation

The following example walks you through the details of creating a signature for ListGateways. The example could be used as a reference to check your signature calculation method. Other reference calculations are included in the Signature Version 4 Test Suite of the Amazon Web Services Glossary.

The example assumes the following:

- The time stamp of the request is "Mon, 10 Sep 2012 00:00:00" GMT.
- The endpoint is the US East (Ohio) region.

The general request syntax (including the JSON body) is:

```plaintext
POST / HTTP/1.1
Host: storagegateway.us-east-2.amazonaws.com
x-amz-Date: 20120910T000000Z
Authorization: SignatureToBeCalculated
Content-type: application/x-amz-json-1.1
x-amz-target: StorageGateway_20120630.ListGateways
{}
```

The canonical form of the request calculated for **Task 1: Create a Canonical Request (p. 297)** is:

```plaintext
POST / HTTP/1.1
Host: storagegateway.us-east-2.amazonaws.com
x-amz-Date: 20120910T000000Z
Authorization: SignatureToBeCalculated
Content-type: application/x-amz-json-1.1
```
The last line of the canonical request is the hash of the request body. Also, note the empty third line in the canonical request. This is because there are no query parameters for this API (or any AWS Storage Gateway APIs).

The string to sign for Task 2: Create a String to Sign (p. 297) is:

```
AWS4-HMAC-SHA256
20120910/us-east-2/storagegateway/aws4_request
92c0effa6f9224ac752ca179a04cecbde3038b0959666a8160ab452c9e51b3e
```

The first line of the string to sign is the algorithm, the second line is the time stamp, the third line is the credential scope, and the last line is a hash of the canonical request from Task 1.

For Task 3: Create a Signature (p. 297), the derived key can be represented as:

```
derived key = HMAC(HMAC(HMAC(HMAC("AWS4" + YourSecretAccessKey,"20120910"),"us-east-2"),"storagegateway"),"aws4_request")
```

If the secret access key, wJalrXUtnFEMI/K7MDENG/bPxRfiCYEXAMPLEKEY, is used, then the calculated signature is:

```
6d4c40b8f2257534dbdca9f326f147a0a7a419b63aff349d9d9c737c9a0f4c81
```

The final step is to construct the Authorization header. For the demonstration access key AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE, the header (with line breaks added for readability) is:

```
Authorization: AWS4-HMAC-SHA256 Credential=AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE/20120910/us-east-2/storagegateway/aws4_request,
SignedHeaders=content-type;host;x-amz-date;x-amz-target,
Signature=6d4c40b8f2257534dbdca9f326f147a0a7a419b63aff349d9d9c737c9a0f4c81
```

## Error Responses

### Topics

- Exceptions (p. 299)
- Operation Error Codes (p. 300)
- Error Responses (p. 312)

This section provides reference information about AWS Storage Gateway errors. These errors are represented by an error exception and an operation error code. For example, the error exception InvalidSignatureException is returned by any API response if there is a problem with the request signature. However, the operation error code ActivationKeyInvalid is returned only for the ActivateGateway API.
Depending on the type of error, AWS Storage Gateway may return only just an exception, or it may return both an exception and an operation error code. Examples of error responses are shown in the Error Responses (p. 312).

## Exceptions

The following table lists AWS Storage Gateway API exceptions. When an AWS Storage Gateway operation returns an error response, the response body contains one of these exceptions. The InternalServerError and InvalidGatewayRequestException return one of the operation error codes Operation Error Codes (p. 300) message codes that give the specific operation error code.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exception</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>HTTP Status Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IncompleteSignatureException</td>
<td>The specified signature is incomplete.</td>
<td>400 Bad Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InternalFailure</td>
<td>The request processing has failed due to some unknown error, exception or failure.</td>
<td>500 Internal Server Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InternalServerError</td>
<td>One of the operation error code messages Operation Error Codes (p. 300).</td>
<td>500 Internal Server Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InvalidAction</td>
<td>The requested action or operation is invalid.</td>
<td>400 Bad Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InvalidClientTokenId</td>
<td>The X.509 certificate or AWS Access Key ID provided does not exist in our records.</td>
<td>403 Forbidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InvalidGatewayRequestException</td>
<td>One of the operation error code messages in Operation Error Codes (p. 300).</td>
<td>400 Bad Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InvalidSignatureException</td>
<td>The request signature we calculated does not match the signature you provided. Check your AWS Access Key and signing method.</td>
<td>400 Bad Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MissingAction</td>
<td>The request is missing an action or operation parameter.</td>
<td>400 Bad Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MissingAuthenticationToken</td>
<td>The request must contain either a valid (registered) AWS Access Key ID or X.509 certificate.</td>
<td>403 Forbidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RequestExpired</td>
<td>The request is past the expiration date or the request date (either with 15 minute padding), or the request date occurs more than 15 minutes in the future.</td>
<td>400 Bad Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SerializationException</td>
<td>An error occurred during serialization. Check that your JSON payload is well-formed.</td>
<td>400 Bad Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServiceUnavailable</td>
<td>The request has failed due to a temporary failure of the server.</td>
<td>503 Service Unavailable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
AWS Storage Gateway User Guide
Operation Error Codes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exception</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>HTTP Status Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SubscriptionRequiredException</td>
<td>The AWS Access Key Id needs a subscription for the service.</td>
<td>400 Bad Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ThrottlingException</td>
<td>Rate exceeded.</td>
<td>400 Bad Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UnknownOperationException</td>
<td>An unknown operation was specified. Valid operations are listed in Operations in AWS Storage Gateway (p. 314).</td>
<td>400 Bad Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UnrecognizedClientException</td>
<td>The security token included in the request is invalid.</td>
<td>400 Bad Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ValidationException</td>
<td>The value of an input parameter is bad or out of range.</td>
<td>400 Bad Request</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Operation Error Codes

The following table shows the mapping between AWS Storage Gateway operation error codes and APIs that can return the codes. All operation error codes are returned with one of two general exceptions—`InternalServerError` and `InvalidGatewayRequestException`—described in Exceptions (p. 299).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation Error Code</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Operations That Return this Error Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ActivationKeyExpired</td>
<td>The specified activation key has expired.</td>
<td>ActivateGateway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivationKeyInvalid</td>
<td>The specified activation key is invalid.</td>
<td>ActivateGateway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivationKeyNotFound</td>
<td>The specified activation key was not found.</td>
<td>ActivateGateway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BandwidthThrottleScheduleNotFound</td>
<td>The specified bandwidth throttle was not found.</td>
<td>DeleteBandwidthRateLimit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CannotExportSnapshot</td>
<td>The specified snapshot cannot be exported.</td>
<td>CreateCachediSCSIVolume CreateStorediSCSIVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InitiatorNotFound</td>
<td>The specified initiator was not found.</td>
<td>DeleteChapCredentials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DiskAlreadyAllocated</td>
<td>The specified disk is already allocated.</td>
<td>AddCache AddUploadBuffer AddWorkingStorage CreateStorediSCSIVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DiskDoesNotExist</td>
<td>The specified disk does not exist.</td>
<td>AddCache AddUploadBuffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation Error Code</td>
<td>Message</td>
<td>Operations That Return this Error Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DiskSizeNotGigAligned</td>
<td>The specified disk is not gigabyte-aligned.</td>
<td>AddWorkingStorage, CreateStoredProcedureVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DiskSizeGreaterThanVolumeMaxSize</td>
<td>The specified disk size is greater than the maximum volume size.</td>
<td>CreateStoredProcedureVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DiskSizeLessThanVolumeSize</td>
<td>The specified disk size is less than the volume size.</td>
<td>CreateStoredProcedureVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DuplicateCertificateInfo</td>
<td>The specified certificate information is a duplicate.</td>
<td>ActivateGateway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation Error Code</td>
<td>Message</td>
<td>Operations That Return this Error Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GatewayInternalError</td>
<td>A gateway internal error occurred.</td>
<td>AddCache, AddUploadBuffer, AddWorkingStorage, CreateCachediSCSIVolume, CreateSnapshot, CreateStorediSCSIVolume, CreateSnapshotFromVolumeRecoveryPoint, DeleteBandwidthRateLimit, DeleteChapCredentials, DeleteVolume, DescribeBandwidthRateLimit, DescribeCache, DescribeCachediSCSIVolumes, DescribeChapCredentials, DescribeGatewayInformation, DescribeMaintenanceStartTime, DescribeSnapshotSchedule, DescribeStorediSCSIVolumes, DescribeWorkingStorage, ListLocalDisks, ListVolumes, ListVolumeRecoveryPoints, ShutdownGateway, StartGateway, UpdateBandwidthRateLimit, UpdateChapCredentials, UpdateMaintenanceStartTime, UpdateGatewaySoftwareNow, UpdateSnapshotSchedule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation Error Code</td>
<td>Message</td>
<td>Operations That Return this Error Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GatewayNotConnected</td>
<td>The specified gateway is not connected.</td>
<td>AddCache, AddUploadBuffer, AddWorkingStorage, CreateCachediSCSIVolume, CreateSnapshot, CreateStorediSCSIVolume, CreateSnapshotFromVolumeRecoveryPoint, DeleteBandwidthRateLimit, DeleteChapCredentials, DeleteVolume, DescribeBandwidthRateLimit, DescribeCache, DescribeCachediSCSIVolumes, DescribeChapCredentials, DescribeGatewayInformation, DescribeMaintenanceStartTime, DescribeSnapshotSchedule, DescribeStorediSCSIVolumes, DescribeWorkingStorage, ListLocalDisks, ListVolumes, ListVolumeRecoveryPoints, ShutdownGateway, StartGateway, UpdateBandwidthRateLimit, UpdateChapCredentials, UpdateMaintenanceStartTime, UpdateGatewaySoftwareNow, UpdateSnapshotSchedule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation Error Code</td>
<td>Message</td>
<td>Operations That Return this Error Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GatewayNotFound</td>
<td>The specified gateway was not found.</td>
<td>AddCache, AddUploadBuffer, AddWorkingStorage, CreateCachediSCSIVolume, CreateSnapshot, CreateSnapshotFromVolumeRecoveryPoint, CreateStorediSCSIVolume, DeleteBandwidthRateLimit, DeleteChapCredentials, DeleteGateway, DeleteVolume, DescribeBandwidthRateLimit, DescribeCache, DescribeCachediSCSIVolumes, DescribeChapCredentials, DescribeGatewayInformation, DescribeMaintenanceStartTime, DescribeSnapshotSchedule, DescribeStorediSCSIVolumes, DescribeWorkingStorage, ListLocalDisks, ListVolumes, ListVolumeRecoveryPoints, ShutdownGateway, StartGateway, UpdateBandwidthRateLimit, UpdateChapCredentials, UpdateMaintenanceStartTime, UpdateGatewaySoftwareNow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation Error Code</td>
<td>Message</td>
<td>Operations That Return this Error Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GatewayProxyNetworkConnectionBusy</td>
<td>The specified gateway proxy network connection is busy.</td>
<td>UpdateSnapshotSchedule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AddCache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AddUploadBuffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AddWorkingStorage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CreateCachediSCSIVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CreateSnapshot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CreateSnapshotFromVolumeRecoveryPoint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CreateStorediSCSIVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DeleteBandwidthRateLimit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DeleteChapCredentials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DeleteVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DescribeBandwidthRateLimit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DescribeCache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DescribeCachediSCSIVolumes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DescribeChapCredentials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DescribeGatewayInformation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DescribeMaintenanceStartTime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DescribeSnapshotSchedule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DescribeStorediSCSIVolumes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DescribeWorkingStorage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ListLocalDisks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ListVolumes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ListVolumeRecoveryPoints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ShutdownGateway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>StartGateway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>UpdateBandwidthRateLimit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>UpdateChapCredentials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>UpdateMaintenanceStartTime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>UpdateGatewaySoftwareNow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>UpdateSnapshotSchedule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation Error Code</td>
<td>Message</td>
<td>Operations That Return this Error Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InternalError</td>
<td>An internal error occurred.</td>
<td>ActivateGateway, AddCache, AddUploadBuffer, AddWorkingStorage, CreateCachediSCSIVolume, CreateSnapshot, CreateSnapshotFromVolumeRecoveryPoint, CreateStorediSCSIVolume, DeleteBandwidthRateLimit, DeleteChapCredentials, DeleteGateway, DeleteVolume, DescribeBandwidthRateLimit, DescribeCache, DescribeCachediSCSIVolumes, DescribeChapCredentials, DescribeGatewayInformation, DescribeMaintenanceStartTime, DescribeSnapshotSchedule, DescribeStorediSCSIVolumes, DescribeWorkingStorage, ListLocalDisks, ListGateways, ListVolumes, ListVolumeRecoveryPoints, ShutdownGateway, StartGateway, UpdateBandwidthRateLimit, UpdateChapCredentials, UpdateMaintenanceStartTime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation Error Code</td>
<td>Message</td>
<td>Operations That Return this Error Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UpdateGatewayInformation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UpdateGatewaySoftwareNow</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UpdateSnapshotSchedule</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation Error Code</td>
<td>Message</td>
<td>Operations That Return this Error Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InvalidParameters</td>
<td>The specified request contains invalid parameters.</td>
<td>ActivateGateway, AddCache, AddUploadBuffer, AddWorkingStorage, CreateCachediSCSIVolume, CreateSnapshot, CreateSnapshotFromVolumeRecoveryPoint, CreateStorediSCSIVolume, DeleteBandwidthRateLimit, DeleteChapCredentials, DeleteGateway, DeleteVolume, DescribeBandwidthRateLimit, DescribeCache, DescribeCachediSCSIVolumes, DescribeChapCredentials, DescribeGatewayInformation, DescribeMaintenanceStartTime, DescribeSnapshotSchedule, DescribeStorediSCSIVolumes, DescribeWorkingStorage, ListLocalDisks, ListGateways, ListVolumes, ListVolumeRecoveryPoints, ShutdownGateway, StartGateway, UpdateBandwidthRateLimit, UpdateChapCredentials, UpdateMaintenanceStartTime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation Error Code</td>
<td>Message</td>
<td>Operations That Return this Error Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LocalStorageLimitExceeded</td>
<td>The local storage limit was exceeded.</td>
<td>AddCache, AddUploadBuffer, AddWorkingStorage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LunInvalid</td>
<td>The specified LUN is invalid.</td>
<td>CreateStorediSCSIVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MaximumVolumeCountExceeded</td>
<td>The maximum volume count was exceeded.</td>
<td>CreateCachediSCSIVolume, CreateStorediSCSIVolume, DescribeCachediSCSIVolumes, DescribeStorediSCSIVolumes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NetworkConfigurationChanged</td>
<td>The gateway network configuration has changed.</td>
<td>CreateCachediSCSIVolume, CreateStorediSCSIVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation Error Code</td>
<td>Message</td>
<td>Operations That Return this Error Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| NotSupported         | The specified operation is not supported. | ActivateGateway  
AddCache  
AddUploadBuffer  
AddWorkingStorage  
CreateCachediSCSIVolume  
CreateSnapshot  
CreateSnapshotFromVolumeRecoveryPoint  
CreateStorediSCSIVolume  
DeleteBandwidthRateLimit  
DeleteChapCredentials  
DeleteGateway  
DeleteVolume  
DescribeBandwidthRateLimit  
DescribeCache  
DescribeCachediSCSIVolumes  
DescribeChapCredentials  
DescribeGatewayInformation  
DescribeMaintenanceStartTime  
DescribeSnapshotSchedule  
DescribeStorediSCSIVolumes  
DescribeWorkingStorage  
ListLocalDisks  
ListGateways  
ListVolumes  
ListVolumeRecoveryPoints  
ShutdownGateway  
StartGateway  
UpdateBandwidthRateLimit  
UpdateChapCredentials  
UpdateMaintenanceStartTime |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation Error Code</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Operations That Return this Error Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OutdatedGateway</td>
<td>The specified gateway is out of date.</td>
<td>ActivateGateway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SnapshotInProgressException</td>
<td>The specified snapshot is in progress.</td>
<td>DeleteVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SnapshotIdInvalid</td>
<td>The specified snapshot is invalid.</td>
<td>CreateCachediSCSIVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CreateStorediSCSIVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StagingAreaFull</td>
<td>The staging area is full.</td>
<td>CreateCachediSCSIVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CreateStorediSCSIVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TargetAlreadyExists</td>
<td>The specified target already exists.</td>
<td>CreateCachediSCSIVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CreateStorediSCSIVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TargetInvalid</td>
<td>The specified target is invalid.</td>
<td>CreateCachediSCSIVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CreateStorediSCSIVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DeleteChapCredentials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DescribeChapCredentials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>UpdateChapCredentials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TargetNotFound</td>
<td>The specified target was not found.</td>
<td>CreateCachediSCSIVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CreateStorediSCSIVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DeleteChapCredentials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DescribeChapCredentials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DeleteVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>UpdateChapCredentials</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Error Responses

When there is an error, the response header information contains:

- Content-Type: application/x-amz-json-1.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation Error Code</th>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Operations That Return this Error Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UnsupportedOperationForGatewayType</td>
<td>The specified operation is not valid for the type of the gateway.</td>
<td>AddCache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AddWorkingStorage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CreateCachediSCSIVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CreateSnapshotFromVolumeRecoveryPoint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CreateStorediSCSIVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DeleteSnapshotSchedule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DescribeCache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DescribeCachediSCSIVolumes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DescribeStorediSCSIVolumes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DescribeUploadBuffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DescribeWorkingStorage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ListVolumeRecoveryPoints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VolumeAlreadyExists</td>
<td>The specified volume already exists.</td>
<td>CreateCachediSCSIVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CreateStorediSCSIVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VolumeIdInvalid</td>
<td>The specified volume is invalid.</td>
<td>DeleteVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VolumeInUse</td>
<td>The specified volume is already in use.</td>
<td>DeleteVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VolumeNotFound</td>
<td>The specified volume was not found.</td>
<td>CreateSnapshot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CreateSnapshotFromVolumeRecoveryPoint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DeleteVolume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DescribeCachediSCSIVolumes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DescribeSnapshotSchedule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DescribeStorediSCSIVolumes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>UpdateSnapshotSchedule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VolumeNotReady</td>
<td>The specified volume is not ready.</td>
<td>CreateSnapshot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CreateSnapshotFromVolumeRecoveryPoint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Error Responses**
Error Responses

- An appropriate 4xx or 5xx HTTP status code

The body of an error response contains information about the error that occurred. The following sample error response shows the output syntax of response elements common to all error responses.

```
{
  "_type": "String",
  "message": "String",
  "error":
    {
      "errorCode": "String",
      "errorDetails": "String"
    }
}
```

The following table explains the JSON error response fields shown in the preceding syntax.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>__type</td>
<td>One of the exceptions from Exceptions (p. 299).</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>error</td>
<td>Contains API-specific error details. In general errors (i.e., not specific to any API), this error information is not shown.</td>
<td>Collection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>errorCode</td>
<td>One of the operation error codes.</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>errorDetails</td>
<td>This field is not used in the current version of the API.</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>message</td>
<td>One of the operation error code messages.</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Error Response Examples**

The following JSON body is returned if you use the DescribeStoriediSCSIVolumes API and specify a gateway ARN request input that does not exist.

```
{
  "_type": "InvalidGatewayRequestException",
  "message": "The specified volume was not found.",
  "error":
    {
      "errorCode": "VolumeNotFoundException"
    }
}
```

The following JSON body is returned if AWS Storage Gateway calculates a signature that does not match the signature sent with a request.
{  
"__type": "InvalidSignatureException",
"message": "The request signature we calculated does not match the signature you provided."
}

Operations in AWS Storage Gateway

For a list of AWS Storage Gateway operations, see Actions in the AWS Storage Gateway API Reference.
## Document History for AWS Storage Gateway

The following table describes important changes to the documentation since the last release of the *AWS Storage Gateway User Guide*.

- **API version**: 2013-06-30
- **Latest documentation update**: April 04, 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Change</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Date Changed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Support for S3 One Zone_IA storage class</td>
<td>For file gateways, you can now choose the S3 One Zone_IA as the default storage class for your file shares. This storage class enables you to store your object data in a single Availability Zone in Amazon S3. For more information, see <a href="#">Creating a File Share</a>.</td>
<td>In this release</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New region</td>
<td>Tape Gateway is now available in the Asia Pacific (Singapore) region. For detailed information, see <a href="#">Regions</a></td>
<td>April 03, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support for refresh cache notification, requester pays and canned ACLs for Amazon S3 buckets.</td>
<td>File gateways now enable you to get notified when the gateway finishes refreshing the cache for your S3 bucket. For more information, see <a href="#">RefreshCache.html</a> in the <em>AWS Storage Gateway API Reference</em>. File gateways now enable the requester or reader instead of bucket owner to pay for access charges. File gateways now enable you to give full control to the owner of the Amazon S3 bucket that maps to the file NFS file share. For more information, see <a href="#">Creating a File Share</a>.</td>
<td>March 01, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support for Dell EMC NetWorker V9.x</td>
<td>Tape gateways now support Dell EMC NetWorker V9.x. You can now use Dell EMC NetWorker V9.x to back up your data to Amazon S3 and archive directly to Amazon Glacier. For more information, see <a href="#">Testing Your Setup by Using Dell EMC NetWorker</a>.</td>
<td>February 27, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New region</td>
<td>AWS Storage Gateway is now available in the EU (Paris) region. For detailed information, see <a href="#">Regions</a>.</td>
<td>December 18, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support for file upload notification and guessing of the MIME type</td>
<td>File gateways now enable you to get notification when all files written to your NFS file share have been uploaded to Amazon S3. For more information, see <a href="#">NotifyWhenUploaded</a> in the <em>AWS Storage Gateway API Reference</em>. File gateways now enable guessing of the MIME type for uploaded objects based on file extensions. For more information, see <a href="#">Creating a File Share</a>.</td>
<td>November 21, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Date Changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support for VMware ESXi Hypervisor version 6.5</td>
<td>AWS Storage Gateway now supports VMware ESXi Hypervisor version 6.5. This is in addition to version 4.1, 5.0, 5.1, 5.5, and 6.0. For more information, see Supported Hypervisors and Host Requirements (p. 16).</td>
<td>In this release September 13, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compatibility with Commvault 11</td>
<td>Tape gateways are now compatible with Commvault 11. You can now use Commvault to back up your data to Amazon S3 and archive directly to Amazon Glacier. For more information, see Testing Your Setup by Using Commvault (p. 58).</td>
<td>September 12, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File gateway support for Microsoft Hyper-V hypervisor</td>
<td>You can now deploy a file gateway on a Microsoft Hyper-V hypervisor. For information, see Supported Hypervisors and Host Requirements (p. 16).</td>
<td>June 22, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support for three to five hour tape retrieval from archive</td>
<td>For a tape gateway, you can now retrieve your tapes from archive in three to five hours. You can also determine the amount of data written to your tape from your backup application or your virtual tape library (VTL). For more information, see Viewing Tape Usage (p. 121).</td>
<td>May 23, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New region</td>
<td>AWS Storage Gateway is now available in the Asia Pacific (Mumbai) Region. For detailed information, see Regions (p. 9).</td>
<td>May 02, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Updates to file share settings</td>
<td>File gateways now add mount options to the file share settings. You can now set squash and read-only options for your file share. For more information, see Creating a File Share (p. 24).</td>
<td>March 28, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support for cache refresh for file shares</td>
<td>File gateways now can find objects in the Amazon S3 bucket that were added or removed since the gateway last listed the bucket's contents and cached the results. For more information, see RefreshCache in the API Reference.</td>
<td>March 28, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support for cloning a volume</td>
<td>For cached volume gateways, AWS Storage Gateway now supports the ability to clone a volume from an existing volume. For more information, see Cloning a Volume (p. 100).</td>
<td>March 16, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support for file gateways on Amazon EC2</td>
<td>AWS Storage Gateway now provides the ability to deploy a file gateway in Amazon EC2. You can launch a file gateway in Amazon EC2 using the Storage Gateway Amazon Machine Image (AMI) now available as a community AMI. For information about how to create a file gateway and deploy it on an EC2 instance, see Creating a Gateway (p. 19). For information about how to launch a file gateway AMI, see Deploying File Gateway on an Amazon EC2 Host (p. 249). In addition, file gateway now supports for HTTP proxy configuration. For more information, see Routing Your On-Premises Gateway Through a Proxy (p. 177).</td>
<td>February 08, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Date Changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compatibility with Arcserve 17</td>
<td>Tape gateway is now compatible with Arcserve 17. You can now use Arcserve to back up your data to Amazon S3 and archive directly to Amazon Glacier. For more information, see Testing Your Setup by Using Arcserve Backup r17.0 (p. 56).</td>
<td>January 17, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New region</td>
<td>AWS Storage Gateway is now available in the EU (London) region. For detailed information, see Regions (p. 9).</td>
<td>December 13, 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New region</td>
<td>AWS Storage Gateway is now available in the Canada (Central) region. For detailed information, see Regions (p. 9).</td>
<td>December 08, 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support for File gateway</td>
<td>In addition to volume gateways and tape gateway, AWS Storage Gateway now provides File Gateway. File Gateway combines a service and virtual software appliance, enabling you to store and retrieve objects in Amazon S3 using industry-standard file protocols such as Network File System (NFS). The gateway provides access to objects in Amazon S3 as files on an NFS mount point.</td>
<td>November 29, 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backup Exec 16</td>
<td>Tape gateway is now compatible with Backup Exec 16. You can now use Backup Exec 16 to back up your data to Amazon S3 and archive directly to Amazon Glacier. For more information, see Testing Your Setup by Using Backup Exec (p. 52).</td>
<td>November 7, 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compatibility with Micro Focus (HPE) Data Protector 9.x</td>
<td>Tape gateway is now compatible with Micro Focus (HPE) Data Protector 9.x. You can now use HPE Data Protector to back up your data to Amazon S3 and archive directly to Amazon Glacier. For more information, see Testing Your Setup by Using Micro Focus (HPE) Data Protector (p. 68).</td>
<td>November 2, 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New region</td>
<td>AWS Storage Gateway is now available in the US East (Ohio) region. For detailed information, see Regions (p. 9).</td>
<td>October 17, 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWS Storage Gateway console redesign</td>
<td>The AWS Storage Gateway Management Console has been redesigned to make it easier to configure, manage, and monitor your gateways, volumes, and virtual tapes. The user interface now provides views that can be filtered and provides direct links to integrated AWS services such as CloudWatch and Amazon EBS. For more information, see Sign Up for AWS Storage Gateway (p. 9).</td>
<td>August 30, 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compatibility with Veeam Backup &amp; Replication V9 Update 2 or later</td>
<td>Tape gateway is now compatible with Veeam Backup &amp; Replication V9 Update 2 or later (that is, version 9.0.0.1715 or later). You can now use Veeam Backup Replication V9 Update 2 or later to back up your data to Amazon S3 and archive directly to Amazon Glacier. For more information, see Testing Your Setup by Using Veeam Backup &amp; Replication (p. 87).</td>
<td>August 15, 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Date Changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Longer volume and snapshot IDs</td>
<td>AWS Storage Gateway is introducing longer IDs for volumes and snapshots. You can enable the longer ID format for your volumes, snapshots, and other supported AWS resources. For more information, see Understanding AWS Storage Gateway Resources and Resource IDs (p. 289).</td>
<td>April 25, 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New region</td>
<td>Tape gateway is now available in the Asia Pacific (Seoul) region. For more information, see Regions (p. 9).</td>
<td>March 21, 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support for storage up to 512 TiB in size for stored volumes</td>
<td>For stored volumes, you can now create up to 32 storage volumes up to 16 TiB in size each, for a maximum of 512 TiB of storage. For more information, see Stored Volumes Architecture (p. 5) and AWS Storage Gateway Limits (p. 292). Total size of all tapes in a virtual tape library is increased to 1 PiB. For more information, see AWS Storage Gateway Limits (p. 292). You can now set the password for your VM local console on the AWS Storage Gateway Console. For information, see Setting the Local Console Password from the Storage Gateway Console (p. 176).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other gateway updates and enhancements to the AWS Storage Gateway local console</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compatibility with Dell EMC NetWorker 8.x</td>
<td>Tape gateway is now compatible with Dell EMC NetWorker 8.x. You can now use Dell EMC NetWorker to back up your data to Amazon S3 and archive directly to Amazon Glacier. For more information, see Testing Your Setup by Using Dell EMC NetWorker (p. 65).</td>
<td>February 29, 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support for VMware ESXi Hypervisor version 6.0 and Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 iSCSI initiator</td>
<td>AWS Storage Gateway now supports the VMware ESXi Hypervisor version 6.0 and the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 iSCSI initiator. For more information, see Supported Hypervisors and Host Requirements (p. 16) and Supported iSCSI Initiators (p. 16). This release includes this improvement: The documentation now includes a Managing Your Activated Gateway section that combines management tasks that are common to all gateway solutions. Following, you can find instructions on how you can manage your gateway after you have deployed and activated it. For more information, see Managing Your Gateway (p. 91).</td>
<td>October 20, 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Date Changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support for storage up to 1,024 TiB in size for cached volumes</td>
<td>For cached volumes, you can now create up to 32 storage volumes at up to 32 TiB each for a maximum of 1,024 TiB of storage. For more information, see Cached Volumes Architecture (p. 3) and AWS Storage Gateway Limits (p. 292).</td>
<td>September 16, 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support for the VMXNET3 (10 GbE) network adapter type in VMware ESXi hypervisor</td>
<td>If your gateway is hosted on a VMware ESXi hypervisor, you can reconfigure the gateway to use the VMXNET3 adapter type. For more information, see Configuring Network Adapters for Your Gateway (p. 188).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performance enhancements</td>
<td>The maximum upload rate for AWS Storage Gateway has increased to 120 MB a second, and the maximum download rate has increased to 20 MB a second. For more information, see Configuration and Performance Limits (p. 294).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miscellaneous enhancements and updates to the AWS Storage Gateway local console</td>
<td>The AWS Storage Gateway local console has been updated and enhanced with additional features to help you perform maintenance tasks. For more information, see Configuring Your Gateway Network (p. 180).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support for tagging</td>
<td>AWS Storage Gateway now supports resource tagging. You can now add tags to gateways, volumes, and virtual tapes to make them easier to manage. For more information, see Tagging Storage Gateway Resources (p. 290).</td>
<td>September 2, 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compatibility with Quest (formerly Dell) NetVault Backup 10.0</td>
<td>Tape gateway is now compatible with Quest NetVault Backup 10.0. You can now use Quest NetVault Backup 10.0 to back up your data to Amazon S3 and archive directly to Amazon Glacier. For more information, see Testing Your Setup by Using Quest NetVault Backup (p. 62).</td>
<td>June 22, 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Date Changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support for 16 TiB storage volumes for stored volumes gateway setups</td>
<td>AWS Storage Gateway now supports 16 TiB storage volumes for stored volumes gateway setups. You can now create 12 16 TiB storage volumes for a maximum of 192 TiB of storage. For more information, see Stored Volumes Architecture (p. 5).</td>
<td>June 3, 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support for system resource checks on the AWS Storage Gateway local</td>
<td>You can now determine whether your system resources (virtual CPU cores, root volume size, and RAM) are sufficient for your gateway to function properly. For more information, see Viewing Your Gateway System Resource Status (p. 186) or Viewing Your Gateway System Resource Status (p. 186).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>console</td>
<td>AWS Storage Gateway now supports the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 iSCSI initiator. For more information, see Requirements (p. 10).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support for the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 iSCSI initiator</td>
<td>This release includes the following AWS Storage Gateway improvements and updates:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• From the AWS Storage Gateway console, you can now see the date and time the last successful software update was applied to your gateway. For more information, see Managing Gateway Updates Using the AWS Storage Gateway Console (p. 164).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• AWS Storage Gateway now provides an API you can use to list iSCSI initiators connected to your storage volumes. For more information, see ListVolumeInitiators in the API reference.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support for Microsoft Hyper-V hypervisor versions 2012 and 2012 R2</td>
<td>AWS Storage Gateway now supports Microsoft Hyper-V hypervisor versions 2012 and 2012 R2. This is in addition to support for Microsoft Hyper-V hypervisor version 2008 R2. For more information, see Supported Hypervisors and Host Requirements (p. 16).</td>
<td>April 30, 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compatibility with Symantec Backup Exec 15</td>
<td>Tape gateway is now compatible with Symantec Backup Exec 15. You can now use Symantec Backup Exec 15 to back up your data to Amazon S3 and archive directly to Amazon Glacier. For more information, see Testing Your Setup by Using Backup Exec (p. 52).</td>
<td>April 6, 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAP authentication support for storage volumes</td>
<td>AWS Storage Gateway now supports configuring CHAP authentication for storage volumes. For more information, see Creating a Volume (p. 34).</td>
<td>April 2, 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support for VMware ESXi Hypervisor version 5.1 and 5.5</td>
<td>AWS Storage Gateway now supports VMware ESXi Hypervisor versions 5.1 and 5.5. This is in addition to support for VMware ESXi Hypervisor versions 4.1 and 5.0. For more information, see Supported Hypervisors and Host Requirements (p. 16).</td>
<td>March 30, 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Date Changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support for Windows CHKDSK utility</td>
<td>AWS Storage Gateway now supports the Windows CHKDSK utility. You can use this utility to verify the integrity of your volumes and fix errors on the volumes. For more information, see Troubleshooting Volume Issues (p. 231).</td>
<td>March 04, 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Integration with AWS CloudTrail to capture API calls</td>
<td>AWS Storage Gateway is now integrated with AWS CloudTrail. AWS CloudTrail captures API calls made by or on behalf of AWS Storage Gateway in your AWS account and delivers the log files to an Amazon S3 bucket that you specify. For more information, see Logging AWS Storage Gateway API Calls by Using AWS CloudTrail (p. 147). This release includes the following AWS Storage Gateway improvement and update: • Virtual tapes that have dirty data in cache storage (that is, that contain content that has not been uploaded to AWS) are now recovered when a gateway's cached drive changes. For more information, see Recovering a Virtual Tape From An Unrecoverable Gateway (p. 235).</td>
<td>December 16, 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compatibility with additional backup software and medium changer</td>
<td>Tape gateway is now compatible with the following backup software: • Symantec Backup Exec 2014 • Microsoft System Center 2012 R2 Data Protection Manager • Veeam Backup &amp; Replication V7 • Veeam Backup &amp; Replication V8 You can now use these four backup software products with the Storage Gateway virtual tape library (VTL) to back up to Amazon S3 and archive directly to Amazon Glacier. For more information, see Testing Your Gateway Setup (p. 51). AWS Storage Gateway now provides an additional medium changer that works with the new backup software. This release includes miscellaneous AWS Storage Gateway improvements and updates.</td>
<td>November 3, 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EU (Frankfurt) region</td>
<td>AWS Storage Gateway is now available in the EU (Frankfurt) region. For detailed information, see Regions (p. 9).</td>
<td>October 23, 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Date Changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Content restructure</td>
<td>Created a Getting Started section that is common to all gateway solutions. Following, you can find instructions for you to download, deploy, and activate a gateway. After you deploy and activate a gateway, you can proceed to further instructions specific to stored volumes, cached volumes, and tape gateway setups. For more information, see Creating a Tape Gateway (p. 42).</td>
<td>May 19, 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compatibility with Symantec Backup Exec 2012</td>
<td>Tape gateway is now compatible with Symantec Backup Exec 2012. You can now use Symantec Backup Exec 2012 to back up your data to Amazon S3 and archive directly to Amazon Glacier. For more information, see Testing Your Setup by Using Backup Exec (p. 52).</td>
<td>April 28, 2014</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Support for Windows Server Failover Clustering | • AWS Storage Gateway now supports connecting multiple hosts to the same volume if the hosts coordinate access by using Windows Server Failover Clustering (WSFC). However, you can't connect multiple hosts to that same volume without using WSFC.  
• AWS Storage Gateway now enables you to manage storage connectivity directly through your ESX host. This provides an alternative to using initiators resident in the guest OS of your VMs.  
• AWS Storage Gateway now provides support for performing configuration tasks in the AWS Storage Gateway local console. For information about performing configuration tasks on gateways deployed on-premises, see Performing Common Maintenance Tasks on the VM Local Console (p. 175) or Performing Common Maintenance Tasks on the VM Local Console (p. 175). For information about performing configuration tasks on gateways deployed on an EC2 instance, see Performing Maintenance Tasks on the Amazon EC2 Gateway Local Console (p. 191) or Performing Maintenance Tasks on the Amazon EC2 Gateway Local Console (p. 191). | January 31, 2014 |
| Support for virtual tape library (VTL) and introduction of API version 2013-06-30 | AWS Storage Gateway connects an on-premises software appliance with cloud-based storage to integrate your on-premises IT environment with the AWS storage infrastructure. In addition to volume gateways (cached volumes and stored volumes), AWS Storage Gateway now supports gateway–virtual tape library (VTL). You can configure tape gateway with up to 10 virtual tape drives per gateway. Each virtual tape drive responds to the SCSI command set, so your existing on-premises backup applications will work without modification. For more information, see the following topics in the AWS Storage Gateway User Guide.  
• For an architectural overview, see Tape Gateways (p. 6).  
• To get started with tape gateway, see Creating a Tape Gateway (p. 42). | November 5, 2013 |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Change</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Date Changed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Support for Microsoft Hyper-V</td>
<td>AWS Storage Gateway now provides the ability to deploy an on-premises gateway on the Microsoft Hyper-V virtualization platform. Gateways deployed on Microsoft Hyper-V have all the same functionality and features as the existing on-premises storage gateway. To get started deploying a gateway with Microsoft Hyper-V, see Supported Hypervisors and Host Requirements (p. 16).</td>
<td>April 10, 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support for deploying a gateway on Amazon EC2</td>
<td>AWS Storage Gateway now provides the ability to deploy a gateway in Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2). You can launch a gateway instance in Amazon EC2 using the AWS Storage Gateway AMI available in AWS Marketplace. To get started deploying a gateway using the AWS Storage Gateway AMI, see Deploying a Volume or Tape Gateway on an Amazon EC2 Host (p. 248).</td>
<td>January 15, 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support for cached volumes and introduction of API Version 2012-06-30</td>
<td>In this release, AWS Storage Gateway introduces support for cached volumes. Cached volumes minimize the need to scale your on-premises storage infrastructure, while still providing your applications with low-latency access to their active data. You can create storage volumes up to 32 TiB in size and mount them as iSCSI devices from your on-premises application servers. Data written to your cached volumes is stored in Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3), with only a cache of recently written and recently read data stored locally on your on-premises storage hardware. Cached volumes allow you to utilize Amazon S3 for data where higher retrieval latencies are acceptable, such as for older, infrequently accessed data, while maintaining storage on-premises for data where low-latency access is required. In this release, AWS Storage Gateway also introduces a new API version that, in addition to supporting the current operations, provides new operations to support cached volumes. For more information on the two AWS Storage Gateway solutions, see How AWS Storage Gateway Works (Architecture) (p. 2). You can also try a test setup. For instructions, see Creating a Tape Gateway (p. 42).</td>
<td>October 29, 2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Date Changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>API and IAM support</td>
<td>In this release, AWS Storage Gateway introduces API support as well as support for AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM).</td>
<td>May 9, 2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>API support</strong>—You can now programmatically configure and manage your AWS Storage Gateway resources. For more information about the APIs, see API Reference for AWS Storage Gateway (p. 295) in the AWS Storage Gateway User Guide.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>IAM support</strong>—AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) enables you create users and manage user access to your AWS Storage Gateway resources by means of IAM policies. For examples of IAM policies, see Authentication and Access Control for AWS Storage Gateway (p. 202). For more information about IAM, see AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) detail page.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Static IP support</td>
<td>You can now specify a static IP for your local gateway. For more information, see Configuring Your Gateway Network (p. 180).</td>
<td>March 5, 2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New guide</td>
<td>This is the first release of AWS Storage Gateway User Guide.</td>
<td>January 24, 2012</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>